



COMBO

Owner's Manual

Contents

Emergency numbers		
For emergency service call the Vauxhall Incident Manager		0800 55 33 88 (Free Linkline)*
Vauxhall Assistance General Enquiries		0845 7565 565
You will need to provide:	Vehicle registration number	Model and colour of your Vauxhall
	Contact telephone number	Details of your precise location

* Calls may be chargeable from mobile phones

Introduction	2
Keys, doors and windows	6
Seats, restraints	31
Storage	57
Instruments and controls	75
Lighting	110
Infotainment system	119
Climate control	203
Driving and operating	217
Vehicle care	301
Service and maintenance	342
Technical data	347
Customer information	356
Index	364

Introduction

Fuel	Designation	<input type="text"/>		
Engine oil	Grade	<input type="text"/>		
	Viscosity	<input type="text"/>		
Tyre pressure	Tyre size		Front	Rear
	Summer tyres	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>
	Winter tyres	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>
Weights	Gross vehicle weight rating	<input type="text"/>		
	- Kerb weight, basic model	<input type="text"/>		
	= Loading	<input type="text"/>		

Vehicle specific data

Please enter your vehicle's data on the previous page to keep it easily accessible.

Refer to the sections "Service and maintenance", "Technical data", the vehicle's identification plate and national registration documents.

Introduction

Your vehicle is a designed combination of advanced technology, safety, environmental friendliness and economy.

This Owner's Manual provides you with all the necessary information to enable you to drive your vehicle safely and efficiently.

Make sure your passengers are aware of the possible risk of accident and injury which may result from improper use of the vehicle.

You must always comply with the specific laws and regulations of the country that you are in. These laws may differ from the information in this Owner's Manual.

Disregarding the description given in this manual may affect your warranty.

When this Owner's Manual refers to a workshop visit, we recommend your Vauxhall Authorised Repairer.

All Vauxhall Authorised Repairers provide first-class service at reasonable prices. Experienced mechanics trained by Vauxhall work according to specific Vauxhall instructions.

The customer literature pack should always be kept ready to hand in the vehicle.

Using this manual

- This manual describes all options and features available for this model. **Certain descriptions, including those for display and menu functions, may not apply to your vehicle due to model variant, country specifications, special equipment or accessories.**
- The "In brief" section will give you an initial overview.

- The table of contents at the beginning of this manual and within each section shows where the information is located.
- The index will enable you to search for specific information.
- This Owner's Manual depicts left-hand drive vehicles. Operation is similar for right-hand drive vehicles.
- The Owner's Manual uses the engine identifier code. The corresponding sales designation and engineering code can be found in the section "Technical data".
- Directional data, e.g. left or right, or front or back, always relate to the direction of travel.
- Displays may not support your specific language.
- Display messages and interior labelling are written in **bold** letters.

Propulsion types

Internal combustion engine (ICE) vehicle

ICE vehicles are propelled by an internal combustion engine - diesel or petrol - only.


Battery electric vehicle (BEV)

BEVs are propelled by an electric engine only.


The high voltage battery is charged using a charging cable and additionally by engine braking.

Danger, Warnings and Cautions

Danger

Text marked ** Danger** provides information on risk of fatal injury. Disregarding this information may endanger life.

Warning

Text marked ** Warning** provides information on risk of accident or injury. Disregarding this information may lead to injury.

Caution

Text marked **Caution** provides information on possible damage to the vehicle. Disregarding this information may lead to vehicle damage.

Symbols

Page references are indicated with ⇨. ⇨ means "see page".

Page references and index entries refer to the indented headings given in the section table of content.

Thank you for choosing a Vauxhall.

We wish you many hours of pleasurable driving.

Your Vauxhall Team

Keys, doors and windows

Keys, locks	6
Keys	6
Radio remote control	7
Electronic key system	8
Central locking system	10
Automatic locking	14
Child locks	14
Doors	15
Sliding door	15
Rear doors	16
Load compartment	18
Vehicle security	20
Anti-theft locking system	20
Anti-theft alarm system	20
Immobiliser	23
Exterior mirrors	23
Convex shape	23
Electric adjustment	23
Folding mirrors	24
Heated mirrors	24
Interior mirrors	25
Manual anti-dazzle	25
Automatic anti-dazzle	25

Child surveillance mirror	25
Rear view display	26
Windows	26
Windscreen	26
Power windows	27
Rear windows	29
Heated rear window	29
Heated windscreen	29
Sun visors	30
Roller blinds	30
Roof	30
Glass panel	30

Keys, locks

Keys

Caution
Do not attach heavy or bulky items to the ignition key.

Replacement keys

The key number is specified on a detachable tag.

The key number must be quoted when ordering replacement keys as it is a component of the immobiliser system.

Locks ⇨ 338.

Central locking ⇨ 10.

Starting the engine ⇨ 220.

Radio remote control ⇨ 7.

Electronic key ⇨ 8.

The code number of the adapter for the locking wheel nuts is specified on a card. It must be quoted when ordering a replacement adapter.

Wheel changing ⇨ 329.

Key with foldaway key section

⚠ Danger

Never remove the key from ignition switch during driving as this will cause, depending on version, steering wheel lock.

Caution

Do not attach heavy or bulky items to the ignition key.






Press button to extend. To fold the key, first press the button.

Lock cylinders




Designed to free-wheel if they are forcefully rotated without the correct key or if the correct key is not fully inserted. To reset, insert the correct key only half way and turn cylinder until its slot is vertical, remove key then re-insert it. If the cylinder still free-wheels, insert the key only half way and turn the key through 180° and repeat operation.

Radio remote control



-  : locks the vehicle
-  : switches on/off the peripheral lighting
-  : unlocks the vehicle



-  : locks the vehicle
-  : long press unlocks and opens the tailgate
-  : unlocks the vehicle

Depending on the version, the radio remote control enables a operation of the following functions:

- central locking system ⇨ 10
- anti-theft locking system ⇨ 20
- anti-theft alarm system ⇨ 20
- tailgate unlocking ⇨ 10

- power windows ⇨ 27
- mirrors folding ⇨ 24
- vehicle locator lighting ⇨ 118
- peripheral lighting ⇨ 118

The remote control has a range of up to several metres, but may also be much less due to external influences. The hazard warning flashers confirm operation.

Handle with care, protect from moisture and high temperatures and avoid unnecessary operation.

Replacing battery in radio remote control

Replace the battery as soon as the range reduces.



Batteries do not belong in household waste. They must be disposed of at an appropriate recycling collection point.



1. Remove the back cover from the remote control.
2. Extract the flat battery from its location.
3. Replace battery with a battery of the same type. Pay attention to the installation position.
4. Clip the back cover in place.

Fault

If the central locking system cannot be operated with the radio remote control, the cause may be one of the following:

- Fault in radio remote control.
- Electronic key is out of reception range.
- The battery voltage is too low.
- Overload of the central locking system by operating at frequent intervals, the power supply is interrupted for a short time.
- Interference from higher-power radio waves from other sources.

Manual unlocking ⇨ 10.

Electronic key system

⚠ Warning

The electronic key can affect a pacemaker.

Keep the electronic key away from the breast.



Depending on the version, the electronic key system enables a keyless operation of the following functions:

- central locking system ⇨ 10
- tailgate unlocking
- ignition switching on and starting the engine ⇨ 220
- headlight activation

The electronic key simply needs to be on the driver's person.

Additionally, the electronic key includes the functionality of the radio remote control ⇨ 7.

Handle with care, protect from moisture and high temperatures and avoid unnecessary operation.

Notice

To save battery power, the keyless functions are set to stand-by after 21 days of non-use. To reactivate the functions, press a button on the electronic key.

Replacing battery in electronic key

Replace the battery as soon as the system no longer operates properly or the range is reduced.



Batteries do not belong in household waste. They must be disposed of at an appropriate recycling collection point.



1. Remove the cover.
2. Extract the flat battery from its location.
3. Replace battery with a battery of the same type. Pay attention to the installation position.
4. Clip the cover in place.

Fault

If the central locking cannot be operated or the engine cannot be started, the cause may be one of the following:

- Fault in electronic key.
- Electronic key is out of reception range.
- The battery voltage is too low.
- Overload of the central locking system by operating at frequent intervals, the power supply is interrupted for a short time.
- Interference from higher-power radio waves from other sources.

To rectify the cause of the fault, change the position of the electronic key.

Manual unlocking ⇨ 10.

Central locking system

Unlocks and locks doors, load compartment and fuel filler flap.

A pull on an interior door handle unlocks and opens the respective door.

Notice


In the event of an accident in which airbags or belt pretensioners are deployed, the vehicle is automatically unlocked.

Notice

A short time after unlocking with the remote control the doors are locked automatically if no door has been opened. A precondition is that the setting is activated in the vehicle personalisation ⇨ 107.

Selective unlocking of cabin and load compartment

Selective unlocking allows you to unlock either the doors of the cabin and the fuel filler flap or the load compartment, i.e., sliding doors, rear door / tailgate. Selective unlocking has to be configured.

Graphic Info Display: Switch on ignition. Press  more than 2 seconds. An audible signal is given and a message is displayed in the Graphic Info Display.

Colour Info Display: Select the relevant setting in the Vehicle personalisation.

Vehicle personalisation ⇨ 107.



Remote control operation

Unlocking





Press .

Unlocking mode can be set. Two settings are selectable:

- All doors and load compartment will be unlocked by pressing .
- Only the driver's door and the passenger door will be unlocked by pressing .

Unlocking the load compartment

Press  or press  two times to unlock the load compartment only, i.e., sliding doors and rear doors or tailgate.

Locking


Close doors and the load compartment.



Press .

If the vehicle is not closed properly, the central locking system will not work.

Confirmation

Operation of the central locking system is confirmed by the hazard warning flashers. A precondition is that the setting is activated in the vehicle personalisation  107.

Electronic key system operation

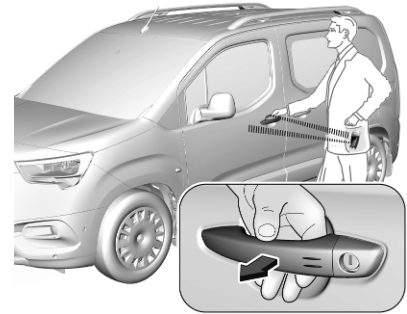
This system allows automatic vehicle locking and unlocking simply by detection of the electronic key. The electronic key must be outside the vehicle.

Notice

If the vehicle is not closed properly or the electronic key remains in the vehicle, locking will not be permitted. If the vehicle is equipped with an anti-theft alarm system, a warning chime sounds after a few seconds.

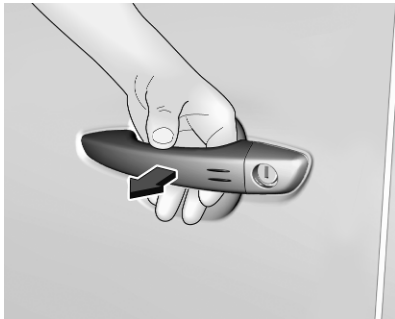
Notice

The electronic key may not operate if placed close to electronic devices such as mobile phones or laptop computers.



The electronic key must be outside the vehicle, within a range of approx. one metre of the relevant door side.

Unlocking



Pass a hand behind the door handle of one of the front doors or the rear door to unlock the vehicle or press the middle tailgate button.

Keep the hand behind the door handle or keep the tailgate button pressed to open the windows.

Unlocking mode can be set in the vehicle personalisation menu in the Info Display. Two settings are selectable:

- All doors, load compartment and fuel filler flap will be unlocked by passing a hand behind one of the front door handles or the handle

of the rear door. If the vehicle is equipped with a tailgate, press the tailgate button.

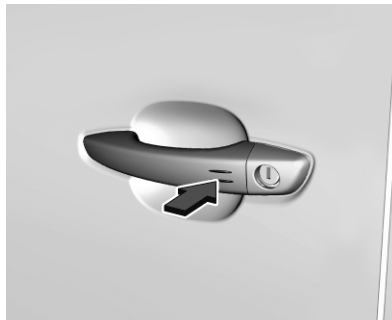
- Only the front doors and the fuel filler flap will be unlocked by passing a hand behind one of front door handles.

Vehicle personalisation ↗ 107.

Unlocking the load compartment

Only the load compartment, i.e., the rear door or the tailgate, will be unlocked by passing a hand behind the rear door handle or pressing the tailgate button.

Locking



Press with a finger or thumb on one of the door handles (at the markings) or press the tailgate button.

All doors, load compartment and fuel filler flap will be locked.

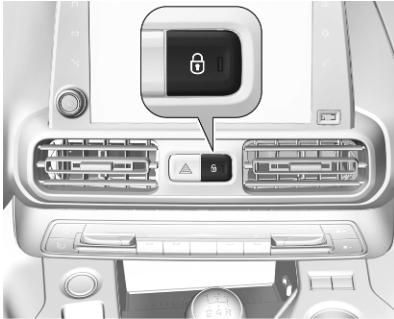
If the vehicle is not closed properly, the electronic key remains in the vehicle or the ignition is not off, locking will not be permitted.

Confirmation


Operation of central locking system is confirmed by the hazard warning flashers.

Central locking button

Locks or unlocks all doors and the load compartment from inside the passenger compartment. If the vehicle is equipped with electronic key system, the fuel filler flap is locked or unlocked, too.



Press  to lock. The LED in the button illuminates.

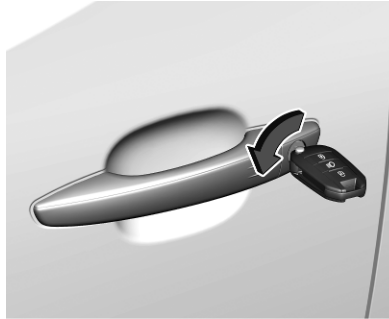
Press  again to unlock. The LED in the button extinguishes.

Operation with the key in case of a central locking system fault

In case of a fault, e.g. vehicle battery or remote control / electronic key battery is discharged, the driver's door can be locked or unlocked with the mechanical key.

Manual unlocking

Electronic key: press and hold the latch to extract the integral key.

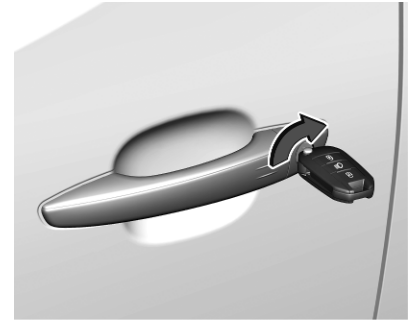


Manually unlock the driver's door by inserting and turning the key in the lock cylinder. With working central locking system the vehicle will be unlocked.

Without a working central locking system, the other doors can be opened by pulling the interior handle. The load compartment and fuel filler flap will possibly not be unlocked.

By switching on the ignition, the anti-theft locking system is deactivated.

Manual locking



Manually lock the left front door by inserting and turning the key in the lock cylinder. With working central locking system the vehicle will be locked.

To lock the other doors if the central locking system is not working:

- Make sure the child lock is not activated
- Remove the black cover by using a key and turning clockwise.


- Insert key carefully and move to the inner side of the door without turning the key.
- Remove key and attach black cover.

The fuel filler flap and tailgate are possibly not locked.


Automatic locking

Automatic locking after driving off

This system allows automatic locking of the doors and the tailgate as soon as the speed of the vehicle exceeds 6 mph.

If one of the doors or the tailgate is open, the automatic central locking does not take place. This is signalled by the sound of the locks rebounding, accompanied by illumination of  in the instrument cluster, an audible signal and the display of an alert message.



This function can be activated or deactivated at any time. With the ignition on, press  until an audible signal starts and a corresponding message is displayed.

The state of the system stays in memory when switching off the ignition.

Automatic relock after unlocking

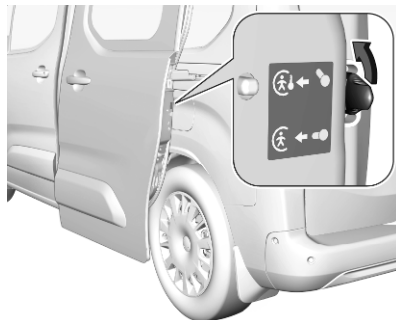
This feature automatically locks all doors, load compartment and fuel filler flap a short time after unlocking with the remote control or electronic key, provided no door has been opened.

Child locks

Warning

Use the child locks whenever children are occupying the rear seats.

Mechanical child locks




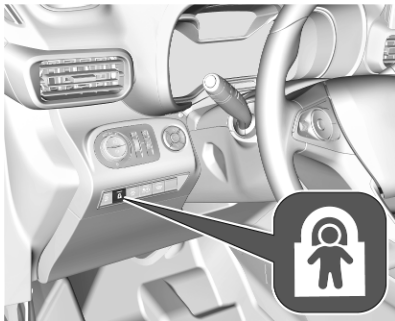
Turn the child lock in the rear door to the vertical position. The door cannot be opened from the inside.

To deactivate, turn the child lock to the horizontal position.

Electric child locks




Depending on version, the  button may be located in the driver's door or below the light switch.




Remotely operated system to prevent opening of the rear doors via the interior door handles and the use of the rear power windows.

Switching on

Press . The indicator light of the button comes on, accompanied by a confirmation message. This indicator light remains on until the child lock is switched off.

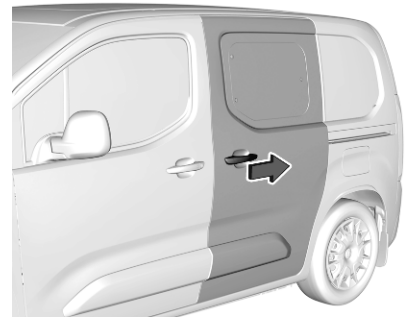
Switching off

Press  again. The indicator light on button goes off, accompanied by a confirmation message. This indicator light remains on while child lock is switched on.

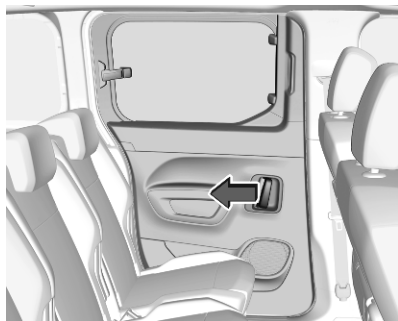
Doors

Sliding door

Opening



After unlocking, pull the outside door handle and slide the door towards the rear beyond the point of resistance.



To open from inside push the handle and slide the door towards the rear beyond the point of resistance.

Closing

To close from outside pull the door handle and slide the door towards the front until it locks.

To close from inside push the handle and slide the door beyond the point of resistance. Then, use the shaped recess at the top of the door pillar to slide the door towards the front until it locks.

Caution

Ensure the sliding side door is fully closed and secure before driving the vehicle.

Caution

To avoid damage, do not attempt to operate the sliding side door when the fuel filler flap is open.

⚠ Danger

Do not drive with the sliding side door open or ajar, e.g. when transporting bulky objects, since toxic exhaust gases, which cannot be seen or smelled, could enter the vehicle. This can cause unconsciousness and even death.

Refuelling ⇨ 294.

Rear doors

Unlock the rear doors with the remote control or by turning the key in the rear door lock cylinder.

Central locking ⇨ 10.

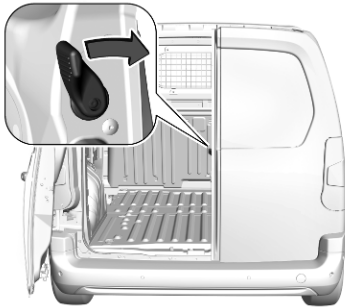
Always open the left hand door before the right hand door.



To open the left hand rear door, pull the exterior handle.



The door is opened from inside the vehicle by pulling the interior handle.



The right hand rear door is released using the lever.

⚠ Warning

The rear lights may be obscured if the rear doors are open and the vehicle is parked on the roadside. Make other road users aware of the vehicle, by using a warning triangle or other equipment specified in the road traffic regulations.



The doors are retained in the 90° position by locking stays. To open the doors to 180°, push the latch and swing open to the desired position.

Before closing the doors ensure that the locking stays are in the 90° position.

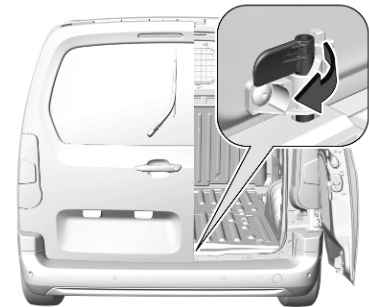
⚠ Warning

Ensure extended opening doors are secured when fully opened. Opened doors may slam closed due to the force of the wind!

Always close the right hand door before the left hand door.

Central locking system ⇨ 10.

Driving with an open load compartment



In exceptional cases only, it is possible to drive with the right-hand rear door open, e.g. if long objects need to be transported. Open the left-hand followed by the right-hand rear door, then close the left-hand rear door and lock it.

⚠ Danger

Engine exhaust gases contain poisonous carbon monoxide, which is colourless and odourless and could be fatal if inhaled.

When driving with an open load compartment, exhaust gases could enter the vehicle. Open the windows.

Notice

Do not use the left-hand rear door to hold objects in place.

If possible, secure objects with lashing straps attached to lashing eyes ↪ 65.

Caution

Always make sure that the load in the vehicle is securely stowed when driving with an open load compartment.

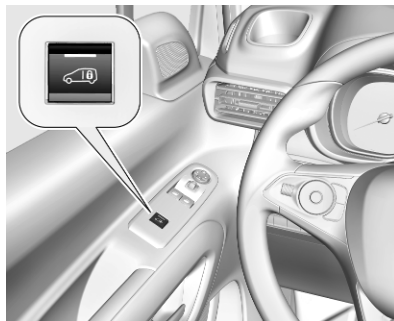
For further information, refer to "Loading information" ↪ 73.


Always comply with local or national regulations.

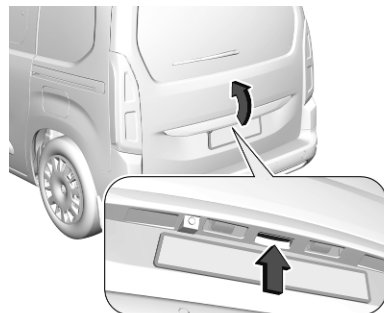
Load compartment

Tailgate

Opening



Depending on the version, press  to unlock the tailgate.



After unlocking, press the middle tailgate button and open the tailgate.

Closing



Use the interior handle.

Do not push the middle tailgate button whilst closing as this will unlock the tailgate again.

Central locking system ⇨ 10.

General hints for operating tailgate

⚠ Danger

Do not drive with the tailgate open or ajar, e.g. when transporting bulky objects, since toxic exhaust

gases, which cannot be seen or smelled, could enter the vehicle. This can cause unconsciousness and even death.

Caution

Before opening the tailgate, check overhead obstructions, e.g. a garage door, to avoid damage to the tailgate. Always check the moving area above and behind the tailgate.

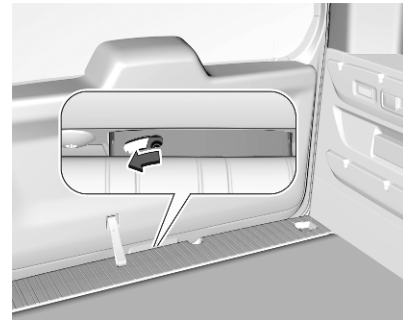
Notice

The installation of certain heavy accessories onto the tailgate may affect its ability to remain open.

Notice

At low outside temperatures the tailgate may not open fully by itself. In this case lift the tailgate manually to its normal end position.

Emergency tailgate opening from inside the vehicle



An access hole between the door and the floor enables the tailgate latch to be released using a suitable tool. Push lever to the left to unlock and open the tailgate.

Rear window

The rear window can be opened to give access to the load compartment without opening the tailgate.

The tailgate and the rear window cannot be opened at the same time.

Opening

After unlocking, press the right tailgate button and open the rear window.

Closing

Press on the centre of the rear window until it is fully closed.

Vehicle security**Anti-theft locking system****⚠ Warning**


Do not use the system if there are people in the vehicle! The doors cannot be unlocked from the inside.

The system deadlocks all the doors. All doors must be closed otherwise the system cannot be activated.

Unlocking the vehicle disables the mechanical anti-theft locking system. This is not possible with the central locking button.

Activating

Simple key: Insert the key and turn it clockwise twice within 5 seconds.

Remote control: Press  on the radio remote control twice within five seconds.

Electronic key: Press twice with a finger or thumb on one of the door handles (at the markings) within five seconds

Anti-theft alarm system


The anti-theft alarm system is combined with the central locking system.


It monitors:

- doors, tailgate, bonnet
- passenger compartment including adjoining load compartment

Activation

Ignition must be switched off. All doors must be closed and the electronic key must not remain in the vehicle. Otherwise the system cannot be activated.

- Radio remote control: Monitoring of doors, tailgate and bonnet is activated 5 seconds after locking the vehicle by pressing . Monitoring of passenger compartment including adjoining

load compartment is activated 45 seconds after locking the vehicle by pressing .

- Electronic key system: Monitoring of doors, tailgate and bonnet is activated 5 seconds after locking the vehicle by pressing with a finger or thumb on one of the front door handles at the markings. Monitoring of passenger compartment including adjoining load compartment is activated 45 seconds after locking the vehicle by pressing with a finger or thumb on one of the front door handles at the markings.

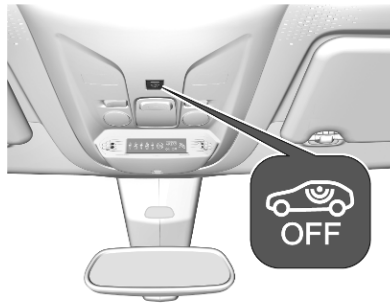
Activation is confirmed by the flashing of the status LED and coming on of the turn lights for a short time.

If a door or the tailgate is not correctly closed and the vehicle is locked via remote control or electronic key system, the vehicle remains unlocked. However, the anti-theft alarm system will be activated after 45 seconds.


Notice

Changes to the vehicle interior such as the use of seat covers and open windows, could impair the function of passenger compartment monitoring.

Activation without monitoring of passenger compartment



Switch off the monitoring of passenger compartment when animals are being left in the vehicle, because of high volume ultrasonic signals or movements triggering the alarm. Also switch off when the vehicle is on a ferry or train.

1. Switch of ignition.
2. Press  within the next 10 seconds until the LED of the button illuminates constantly.
3. Get out of the vehicle.
4. Lock the vehicle immediately by using the remote control, pressing with a finger or thumb on one of the door handles (at the markings) or pressing the tailgate button.


Activation is indicated by the flashing of the status LED.

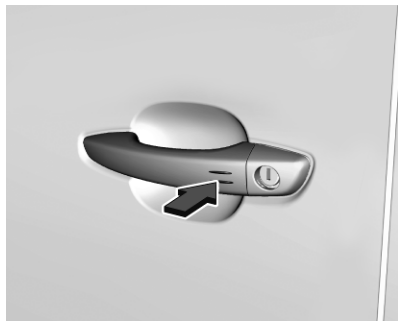
Indication

LED in the central locking button flashes if the anti-theft alarm system is activated.

Seek the assistance of a workshop in the event of faults.

Deactivation

Radio remote control: Unlocking the vehicle by pressing  deactivates the anti-theft alarm system.



Electronic key system: Unlocking the vehicle by pressing on one of the front door handles at the markings deactivates the anti-theft alarm system.

The electronic key must be outside the vehicle, within a range of approx. one metre of the relevant door side.



The system is not deactivated by unlocking the driver's door with the key or with the central locking button in the passenger compartment.


Notice

If the vehicle is unlocked and no door is opened, the vehicle is automatically relocked after 30 seconds. In this case, the anti-theft alarm will be reactivated, too.

Alarm

When triggered, the alarm horn sounds and the hazard warning lights flash simultaneously. The number and duration of alarm signals are stipulated by legislation.

The anti-theft alarm system can be deactivated by pressing , by pressing on one of the front door handles at the markings with electronic key system. The LED of the  button will extinguish and the turn lights flash for a short time.

A triggered alarm, which has not been interrupted by the driver, will be indicated by the rapid flashing of the LED of the  button. If the ignition is switched on, the flashing stops immediately

If the vehicle's battery is to be disconnected (e.g. for maintenance work), the alarm siren must be

deactivated as follows: switch the ignition on then off, then disconnect the vehicle's battery within 15 s

If the battery has been reconnected (e.g. after maintenance work), wait for 10 minutes to restart the engine.

Locking the vehicle without activation of the anti-theft alarm

Lock the vehicle by inserting and turning the integrated key of the remote control or the electronic key system in the lock cylinder of the driver's door.

Malfunction of the remote control

Unlock the vehicle by inserting and turning the integrated key of the remote control or the electronic key system in the lock cylinder of the driver's door.

Open the driver's door.

The horn of the anti-theft alarm will sound.

Switch on ignition.

The horn will stop sounding and the status LED extinguishes.

Immobiliser

The system is part of the ignition switch and checks whether the vehicle is allowed to be started with the key being used.

The immobiliser is activated automatically after the key has been removed from the ignition switch.

Notice

Radio Frequency Identification (RFID) tags may cause interference with the key. Do not have it placed near the key when starting the vehicle.

Notice

The immobiliser does not lock the doors. Always lock the vehicle after leaving it ⇨ 10.

Switch on the anti-theft alarm system ⇨ 20.

Emergency operation of electronic key ⇨ 219.

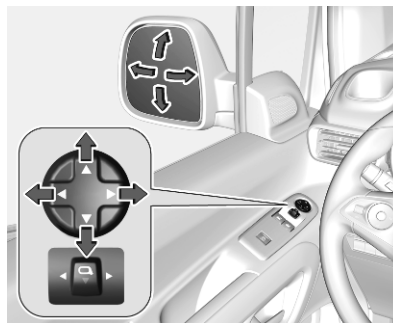
Exterior mirrors


Convex shape

The shape of the mirror makes objects appear smaller, which will affect the ability to estimate distances.

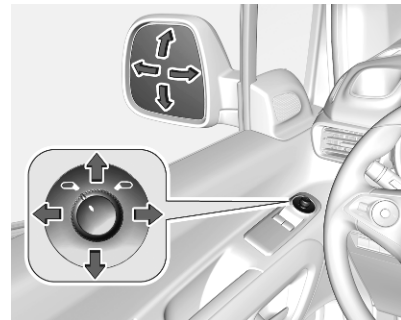
Side blind spot alert ⇨ 270.



Electric adjustment



Select the relevant exterior mirror by pushing the mirror button  to the left or right.

Adjust the respective mirror by the fourway control.



Select the relevant exterior mirror by turning the control to left  or right  mirror symbol .

Adjust respective mirror by tilting the fourway control.

Folding mirrors



For pedestrian safety, the exterior mirrors will swing out of their normal mounting position if they are struck with sufficient force. Reposition the mirror by applying slight pressure to the mirror housing.

Electric folding



Pull the mirror button  rearwards. Both exterior mirrors will fold.

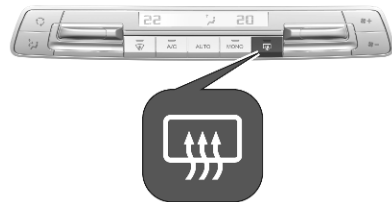
Pull the mirror button rearwards again to return both exterior mirrors to their original position.



If an electrically folded mirror is manually extended, pulling mirror button rearwards will only electrically extend the other mirror.

Automatic folding

When the vehicle is unlocked, the mirrors swing to their normal mounting position. When the vehicle is locked, the mirrors are folded down.

Heated mirrors



Depending on the version, heating is operated by pressing  or .

The heating switches off automatically after a certain time depending on the outside temperature.

Heated rear window ⇨ 29.

Interior mirrors

Manual anti-dazzle



To reduce dazzle, adjust the lever on the underside of the mirror housing.

Automatic anti-dazzle



Dazzle from following vehicles is automatically reduced, when driving in the dark.

Child surveillance mirror



A child surveillance mirror allows to observe the rear seats. The mirror can be adjusted.

Rear view display



The rear view display can show three different views:


- close rear view
- passenger side view
- standard rear view


The standard rear view is displayed by default.

Rear view camera ↗ 276

Passenger side camera ↗ 272



To switch between the views, press .

To switch the rear view display on or off, press .

Windows

Windscreen

Windscreen stickers



Do not attach stickers such as toll road stickers or similar on the windscreen in the area of the interior mirror. Keep the sensor free from dust, dirt and ice. Otherwise, the detection zone of the rain sensor / light sensor and the view area of the camera in the mirror housing could be restricted.

Sensors ↗ 80, ↗ 111

Windscreen replacement

Caution

If the vehicle has a front-looking camera sensor for the driver assistance systems, it is very important that any windscreen replacement is performed accurately according to Vauxhall specifications. Otherwise, these systems may not work properly and there is a risk of unexpected behaviour and / or messages from these systems.

Power windows

⚠ Warning

Take care when operating the power windows. Risk of injury, particularly to children.

If there are children on the rear seats, switch on the child safety system for the power windows.

Keep a close watch on the windows when closing them. Ensure that nothing becomes trapped in them as they move.

Switch on ignition to operate power windows.



Operate the switch for the respective window by pushing to open or pulling to close.

Pushing or pulling gently to the first detent: window moves up or down as long as the switch is operated.

Pushing or pulling firmly to the second detent then releasing: window moves up or down automatically with safety

function enabled. To stop movement, operate the switch once more in the same direction.

Safety function



This function depends upon version. If the window glass encounters resistance above the middle of the window during automatic closing, it is immediately stopped and opened again.

Override safety function

In the event of closing difficulties due to frost or the like, switch on the ignition, then pull the switch to the first detent and hold. The window moves up without safety function enabled. To stop movement, release the switch.

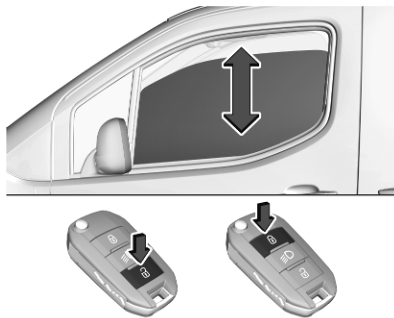
Child safety system for rear windows





Press  to deactivate rear door power windows; the LED illuminates. To activate, press  again.

Operating windows from outside

The windows can be operated remotely from outside the vehicle.



Press and hold  to open windows.
Press and hold  to close windows.
Release button to stop window movement.

Overload

If the windows are repeatedly operated within short intervals, the window operation is disabled for some time.

Initialising the power windows

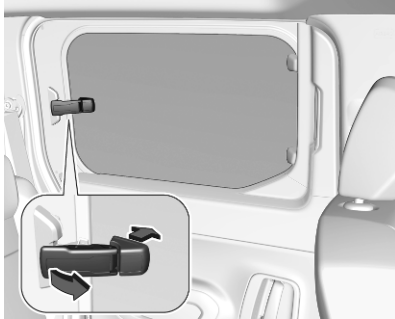
If the windows cannot be closed automatically (e.g. after disconnecting the vehicle battery), a warning message is displayed in the Driver Information Centre.

Vehicle messages ⇨ 106.

Activate the window electronics as follows:


1. Close doors.
2. Switch on ignition.
3. Pull switch until the window is closed and keep pulling for additional two seconds.
4. Push switch until the window is completely open and keep pushing for additional two seconds.
5. Repeat for each window.

Rear windows




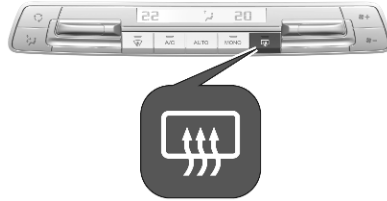
To partially open the rear windows, tilt the lever and push it fully to lock the windows in the open position.

Heated rear window

Operated by pressing  together with heated exterior mirrors.

The heating switches off automatically after a certain time depending on the outside temperature.

Depending on climate control system,  is located at a different position.

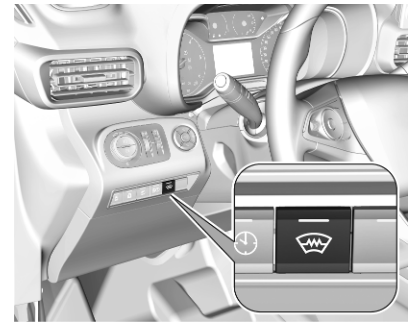


Heated windshield




This function heats the windscreen along its bottom and along the driver's side of the windscreen.

Thus, the function allows a fast detaching of the windscreen wiper blades if they are frozen to the windscreen. Additionally, an accumulation of snow caused by the operation of the windscreen wipers is prevented.



Heating is operated by pressing . LED in button illuminates.

The heating works only with freezing outside temperatures and switches off automatically after a certain time depending on the outside temperature.

Pressing  again switches off the heating operation. LED in button is extinguished.

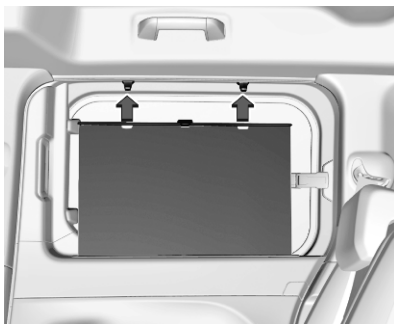
Sun visors

The sun visors can be folded down or swivelled to the side to prevent dazzling.

If the sun visors have integral mirrors, the mirror covers should be closed when driving.

A ticket holder is located on the backside of the sun visor.

Roller blinds




To reduce sunlight at the second row seats, pull the blind upwards using the grip and engage it at the top of the door frame.


Roof

Glass panel

Sunblind



Press  at the rear: the sunblind is opened as long as the switch is operated.

Press  at the front: the sunblind is closed as long as the switch is operated.

Seats, restraints

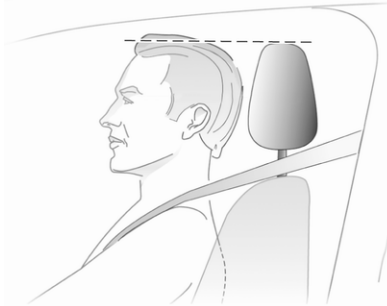
Head restraints	31
Front seats	32
Seat position	32
Seat adjustment	33
Seat folding	34
Armrest	36
Heating	36
Rear seats	37
Second row seats	37
Third row seats	38
Seat belts	41
Three-point seat belt	42
Airbag system	44
Front airbag system	47
Side airbag system	48
Curtain airbag system	48
Airbag deactivation	49
Child restraints	50
Child restraint systems	50
Child restraint installation locations	54

Head restraints

Position

⚠ Warning

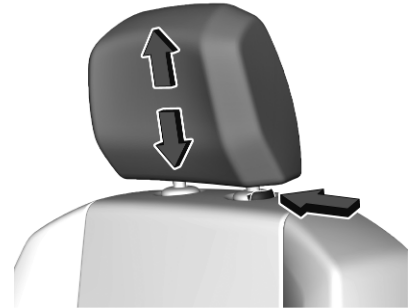
Only drive with the head restraint set to the proper position.



The upper edge of the head restraint should be at upper head level. If this is not possible for extremely tall people, set to highest position, and set to lowest position for small people.

Adjustment

Head restraints on front seats



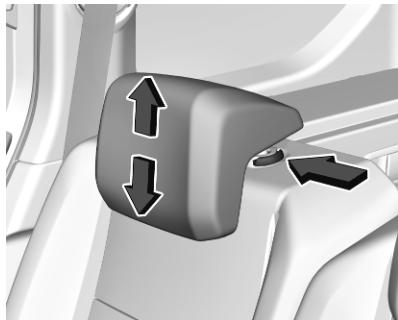
Height adjustment

Pull the head restraint upwards or press catch and push it downwards.

Removal

Press catch, pull the respective head restraint upwards and remove.

Head restraints on rear seats



Height adjustment

Pull the head restraint upwards or push it downwards.

Removal

Press catch, pull the respective head restraint upwards and remove.

Front seats

Seat position

⚠ Warning

Only drive with the seat correctly adjusted.

⚠ Warning

Never adjust seats while driving as they could move uncontrollably.

⚠ Danger

Do not sit closer than 25 cm to the steering wheel, to permit safe airbag deployment.

⚠ Warning

Never store any objects under the seats.



- Sit with buttocks as far back against the backrest as possible. Adjust the distance between the seat and the pedals so that legs are slightly angled when pressing the pedals. Slide the front passenger seat as far back as possible.
- Set seat height high enough to have a clear field of vision on all sides and of all display instruments. There should be at least one hand of clearance between head and the roof frame. Your thighs should rest lightly on the seat without pressing into it.

- Sit with shoulders as far back against the backrest as possible. Set the backrest rake so that it is possible to easily reach the steering wheel with arms slightly bent. Maintain contact between shoulders and the backrest when turning the steering wheel. Do not angle the backrest too far back. We recommend a maximum rake of approx. 25°.
- Adjust seat and steering wheel in a way that the wrist rests on top of the steering wheel while the arm is fully extended and shoulders are on the backrest.
- Adjust the steering wheel ↻ 79.
- Adjust the head restraint ↻ 31.
- Adjust the lumbar support so that it supports the natural shape of the spine.

Seat adjustment

Drive only with engaged seats and backrests.

Longitudinal adjustment



Pull the handle, slide the seat, then release the handle. Try to move the seat back and forth to ensure that the seat is locked in place.



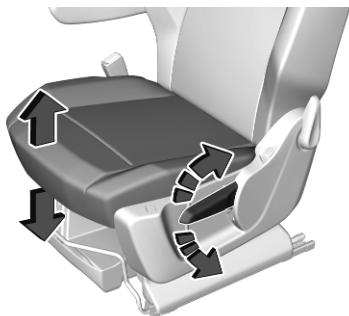
Depending on version, pull the lever of the passenger seat and slide the seat, then release the handle.

Backrest inclination



Push the lever, adjust inclination and release the lever. Do not lean on backrest when adjusting.

Seat height



Lever pumping motion

up : seat higher

down : seat lower

Lumbar support



Turn the handwheel to suit personal requirements.

Seat folding

Depending on version, the front passenger seat can be folded flat to the table position.

Folding single seat front passenger side

Slide the front passenger seat as far back as possible, to avoid contact with the instrument panel during folding.

Push the head restraint down or remove it before folding backrest ⇨ 31.

Depending on version, remove the armrest ⇨ 36.



Push lever, fold backrest fully forwards and release the lever. Then push the backrest down further until it is completely flat.

Unfolding single seat front passenger side

To restore the seat to the upright position, pull up the backrest as far as it will go.

Pull the lever and raise backrest fully then release the lever.

Folding bench seat front passenger side



Fold down the centre backrest by pulling the loop.



Fold down the outer backrest by pulling the loop. Swing the backrest forwards until the seat is lowered on the vehicle floor.

When retracted, the maximum weight on the backrest is 50 kg.



To lift the seat cushion pull the lever and raise the seat cushion against the backrest until it locks.

Storage cargo management system
 ⇨ 66.

Storage load compartment grille
 ⇨ 69.

Unfolding bench seat front passenger side

To restore the backrest to the upright position, pull up the seat till it is engaged.

To restore the seat cushion to the original position, push the lever and lower the seat cushion till it is engaged.

⚠ Warning

When the front passenger seat is in the folded position, the front passenger airbag system must be deactivated.

Airbag deactivation ⇨ 49.

Armrest



The armrest can be folded up.




To remove the armrest fold it up, push and turn it to the position shown in the picture.

Then pull off the armrest from the backrest.

To fit the armrest engage it in the backrest. Push and fold the armrest in the upright position. Pull the armrest out a bit and fold it downwards.


Heating



Activate seat heating by pressing  for the respective front seat.

The LED in the button illuminates to indicate activation.

The heating works only when the outside temperature is below 20 °C.

Pressing  once more deactivates seat heating.

Stop-start system ⇨ 222.

Rear seats

Second row seats

Depending on the equipment, the rear seat backrest is divided into two or three parts. All parts can be folded down.

Before folding rear seat backrests, execute the following if necessary:

- Move front seats forward.
- Remove the load compartment cover ⇨ 63.

Folding the seats

1. Push the head restraint downwards ⇨ 31.
2. Check that the outer seat belts are lying correctly on the backrests.



3. Pull the release lever on one or both outer sides and fold down the backrests onto the seat cushion.



4. Depending on version, fold down the centre backrest by pulling the loop.



5. Alternatively fold seat backrests from the load compartment: pull lever on left or right sidewall of the load compartment to fold the rear seat backrests.

⚠ Warning

Take care when operating the rear backrests from the load compartment. The backrest is

folded with considerable power. Risk of injury, particularly to children.

Ensure that nothing is attached to the rear seats or located on the seat cushion.

⚠ Warning

Always make sure that the load in the vehicle is securely stowed. Otherwise objects can be thrown around inside the vehicle and cause personal injury or damage to the load or vehicle.

Unfolding the seats

To fold up, raise the backrests and guide them into an upright position until they engage audibly.



The backrests are properly engaged when the red mark near the release lever is no longer visible.

⚠ Warning

When folding up, ensure that backrests are securely locked in position before driving. Failure to do so may result in personal injury or damage to the load or vehicle in the event of hard braking or a collision.

Third row seats

⚠ Warning

When rear seats or backrests are being adjusted or folded, keep hands and feet away from the moving area.

Never adjust seats while driving as they could move uncontrollably.

Drive only with engaged seats and backrests.

⚠ Warning

When installing the rear seats, ensure that the seat assembly is properly located on the anchor points, the locks are fully engaged, and the backrest is returned to the correct position.

Failure to do so may result in personal injury in the event of hard braking or a collision.

⚠ Warning

Always make sure that the load in the vehicle is securely stowed. Otherwise objects can be thrown around inside the vehicle and cause personal injury or damage to the load or vehicle.

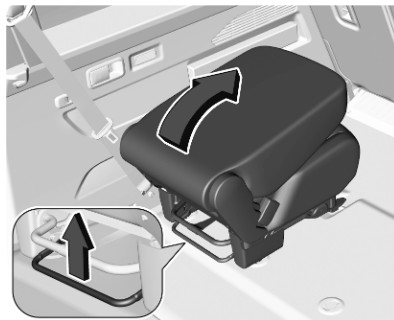
Depending on version, the load compartment area can be increased by folding up or removing the third row seats.

Folding the seats

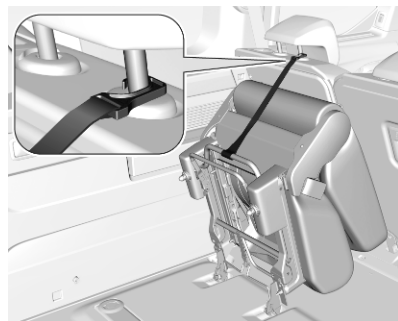
1. Push the head restraint downwards and if necessary fold down the seats of the second row.
Head restraints ⇨ 31
Folding the seats of the second row ⇨ 37



2. Pull the lever and fold down the backrest onto the seat cushion.



3. Pull the handle and tilt the entire seat forwards.



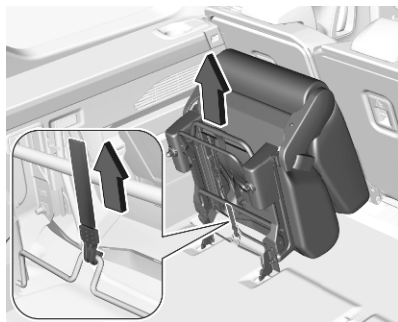
4. Secure the folded seat in the upright position by attaching the strap to one of the pillars of the head restraint in front of the folded seat.

Unfolding the seats

1. Ensure that the seat belts do not obstruct the unfolding manoeuvre.
2. Remove the strap and lower the seat assembly to the floor, ensuring the rear support is located on the anchor point and securely latched into position.
3. Raise the backrest and adjust the head restraint.

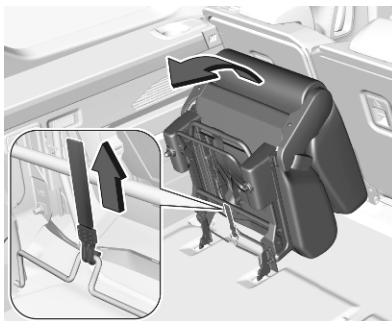
Removing the seats

1. Push the head restraint downwards and if necessary fold down the seats of the second row.
Head restraints ⇨ 31
Folding the seats of the second row ⇨ 37
2. Pull the lever and fold down the backrest onto the seat cushion.
Pull the handle and tilt the entire seat forwards (refer to "Folding the seats" above).



3. Pull the loop to disengage the locks and remove the seat assembly from the floor anchor points.

Installing the seats



1. Attach the seat assembly front supports to the front anchor points.
2. Fold the seat backwards to the floor to fix its rear anchor point.
3. Raise the backrest and adjust the head restraint.

Longitudinal seat adjustment



Pull the handle, slide the seat, then release the handle. Try to move the seat back and forth to ensure that the seat is locked in place.

Seat belts



The seat belts are locked during heavy acceleration or deceleration of the vehicle, holding the occupants in the seat position. Therefore the risk of injury is considerably reduced.

⚠ Warning

Fasten seat belt before each trip. In the event of an accident, people not wearing seat belts endanger their fellow occupants and themselves.

Seat belts are designed to be used by only one person at a time.

Child restraint system ⇨ 50.

Periodically check all parts of the seat belt system for damage, soiling and proper functionality.

Have damaged components replaced. After an accident, have the seat belts and triggered seat belt pretensioners replaced by a workshop.


Notice

Make sure that the seat belts are neither damaged by shoes or sharp-edged objects nor trapped. Prevent dirt from getting into the seat belt retractors.

Notice

Use the belt buckle intended for the respective seat belt when fastening in order to ensure proper functionality.

Seat belt reminder

Each seat is equipped with a seat belt reminder, indicated by a control indicator  for the respective seat in the roof console ⇨ 92.

Seat belt force limiters


Stress on the body is reduced by the gradual release of the seat belt during a collision.

Seat belt pretensioners

In the event of a head-on, rear-end or side-on collision of a certain severity, the front seat belts and the outer second row seat belts are tightened by seat belt pretensioners.

⚠ Warning

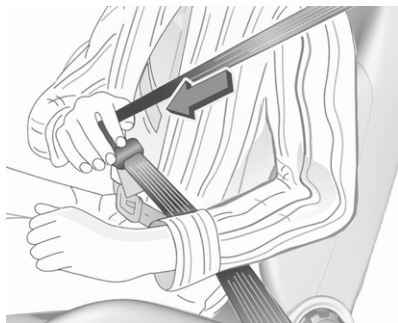
Incorrect handling (e.g. removal or fitting of seat belts) can trigger the seat belt pretensioners.

Deployment of the seat belt pretensioners is indicated by continuous illumination of control indicator  ⇨ 92.

Triggered seat belt pretensioners must be replaced by a workshop. Seat belt pretensioners can only be triggered once.

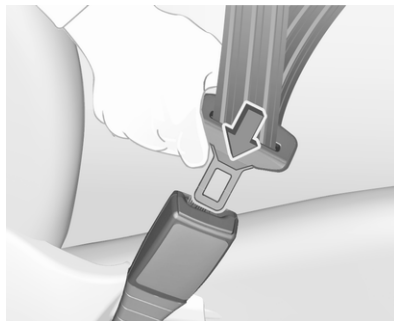
Notice

Do not affix or install accessories or other objects that may interfere with the operation of the seat belt pretensioners. Do not make any modifications to seat belt pretensioner components as this will invalidate the vehicle operating permit.

Three-point seat belt**Fasten**

Withdraw the seat belt from the retractor, guide it untwisted across the body and insert the latch plate into

the buckle. Make sure the seat belt lies across the shoulder and fits tightly to the body while driving.



Loose or bulky clothing prevents the belt from fitting snugly. Do not place objects such as handbags or mobile phones between the seat belt and your body.

⚠ Warning

The seat belt must not rest against hard or fragile objects in the pockets of your clothing.

Seat belt reminder   92,  99.

Unfasten

To release seat belt, press red button on seat belt buckle and guide the seat belt back.

Centre seat belt of the second seat row

The centre seat is equipped with a particular three-point seat belt.



Pull latch plates with the seat belt out of seat belt holder in the roof.



Insert lower latch plate into left-hand buckle (1) at the centre seat. Guide the upper latch plate with the seat belt over the lap area and the shoulder (do not twist) and insert it into right-hand buckle (2) at centre seat.

To unfasten the seat belt, first press the button on the right-hand buckle (2) and remove upper latch plate. Then press the button on the left-hand buckle (1) and remove lower latch plate. The seat belt retracts automatically.

Using seat belts while pregnant



⚠ Warning

The lap belt must be positioned as low as possible across the pelvis to prevent pressure on the abdomen.

Airbag system

The airbag system consists of a number of individual systems depending on the scope of equipment.

When triggered the airbags inflate within milliseconds. They also deflate so quickly that it is often unnoticeable during the collision.

⚠ Warning

The airbag system deploys in an explosive manner, repairs must be performed by skilled personnel only.

⚠ Warning

Adding accessories that change the vehicle's frame, bumper system, height, front end or side sheet metal, may keep the airbag system from working properly. The operation of the airbag system can also be affected by changing any parts of the front seats, seat belts,

airbag sensing and diagnostic module, steering wheel, instrument panel, inner door seals including the speakers, any of the airbag modules, ceiling or pillar trim, front sensors, side impact sensors or airbag wiring.

⚠ Warning

Keep the area in which the airbag inflates clear of obstructions.

Notice


The airbag systems and belt pretensioner control electronics are located in the centre console. Do not put any magnetic objects in this area.

Do not affix any objects onto the airbag covers and do not cover them with other materials. Have damaged covers replaced by a workshop.

Each airbag is triggered only once. Have deployed airbags replaced by a workshop. Furthermore, it may be necessary to have the steering

wheel, the instrument panel, parts of the panelling, the door seals, handles and the seats replaced.

Do not make any modifications to the airbag system as this will invalidate the vehicle operating permit.

Control indicator  for airbag systems ⇨ 92.

Child restraint systems on front passenger seat with airbag systems



EN: NEVER use a rearward-facing child restraint on a seat protected by an ACTIVE AIRBAG in front of it; DEATH or SERIOUS INJURY to the CHILD can occur.

DE: Nach hinten gerichtete Kindersitze NIEMALS auf einem Sitz verwenden, der durch einen davor befindlichen AKTIVEN AIRBAG geschützt ist, da dies den TOD oder SCHWERE VERLETZUNGEN DES KINDES zur Folge haben kann.

FR: NE JAMAIS utiliser un siège d'enfant orienté vers l'arrière sur un siège protégé par un COUSSIN GONFLABLE ACTIF placé devant lui, sous peine d'infliger des BLESSURES GRAVES, voire MORTELLES à l'ENFANT.

ES: NUNCA utilice un sistema de retención infantil orientado hacia atrás en un asiento protegido por un AIRBAG FRONTAL ACTIVO. Peligro de MUERTE o LESIONES GRAVES para el NIÑO.

RU: ЗАПРЕЩАЕТСЯ устанавливать детское удерживающее устройство лицом назад на сиденье автомобиля,

оборудованном фронтальной подушкой безопасности, если ПОДУШКА НЕ ОТКЛЮЧЕНА! Это может привести к СМЕРТИ или СЕРЬЕЗНЫМ ТРАВМАМ РЕБЕНКА.

NL: Gebruik NOOIT een achterwaarts gericht kinderzitje op een stoel met een ACTIEVE AIRBAG ervoor, om DODELIJK of ERNSTIG LETSEL van het KIND te voorkomen.

DA: Brug ALDRIG en bagudvendt autostol på et forsæde med AKTIV AIRBAG, BARNET kan komme i LIVSFARE eller komme ALVORLIGT TIL SKADE.

SV: Använd ALDRIG en bakåtvänd barnstol på ett säte som skyddas med en framförvarande AKTIV AIRBAG. DÖDSFALL eller ALLVARLIGA SKADOR kan drabba BARNET.

FI: ÄLÄ KOSKAAN sijoita taaksepäin suunnattua lasten turvaistuinta istuimelle, jonka edessä on AKTIIVINEN TURVATYYNYY, LAPSI VOI KUOLLA tai VAMMAUTUA VAKAVASTI.

NO: Bakovervendt barnesikringsutstyr må ALDRI brukes på et sete med AKTIV KOLLISJONSPUTE foran, da det kan føre til at BARNET utsettes for LIVSFARE og fare for ALVORLIGE SKADER.

PT: NUNCA use um sistema de retenção para crianças voltado para trás num banco protegido com um AIRBAG ACTIVO na frente do mesmo, poderá ocorrer a PERDA DE VIDA ou FERIMENTOS GRAVES na CRIANÇA.

IT: Non usare mai un sistema di sicurezza per bambini rivolto all'indietro su un sedile protetto da AIRBAG ATTIVO di fronte ad esso: pericolo di MORTE o LESIONI GRAVI per il BAMBINO!

EL: ΠΟΤΕ μη χρησιμοποιείτε παιδικό κάθισμα ασφαλείας με φορά προς τα πίσω σε κάθισμα που προστατεύεται από μετωπικό ΕΝΕΡΓΟ ΑΕΡΟΣΑΚΟ, διότι το παιδί μπορεί να υποστεί ΘΑΝΑΣΙΜΟ ή ΣΟΒΑΡΟ ΤΡΑΥΜΑΤΙΣΜΟ.

PL: NIE WOLNO montować fotelika dziecięcego zwróconego tyłem do kierunku jazdy na fotelu, przed którym znajduje się WŁĄCZONA PODUSZKA POWIETRZNA.

Niezastosowanie się do tego zalecenia może być przyczyną ŚMIERCI lub POWAŻNYCH OBRAŻEŃ u DZIECKA.

TR: Arkaya bakan bir çocuk emniyet sistemini KESİNLİKLE önünde bir AKTİF HAVA YASTIĞI ile korunmakta olan bir koltukta kullanmayınız. ÇOCUK ÖLEBİLİR veya AĞIR ŞEKİLDE YARALANABİLİR.

UK: НИКОЛИ не використовуйте систему безпеки для дітей, що встановлюється обличчям назад, на сидінні з УВІМКНЕНОЮ ПОДУШКОЮ БЕЗПЕКИ, інакше це може призвести до СМЕРТІ чи СЕРІОЗНОГО ТРАВМУВАННЯ ДИТИНИ.

HU: SOHA ne használjon hátrafelé néző biztonsági gyerekülést előlről AKTÍV LÉGZSÁKKAL védett ülésen, mert a GYERMEK HALÁLÁT vagy KOMOLY SÉRÜLÉSÉT okozhatja.

HR: NIKADA nemojte koristiti sustav zadržavanja za djecu okrenut prema natrag na sjedalu s AKTIVNIM ZRAČNIM JASTUKOM ispred njega, to bi moglo dovesti do SMRTI ili OZBILJNIH OZLJEDA za DIJETE.

SL: NIKOLI ne nameščajte otroškega varnostnega sedeža, obrnjenega v nasprotni smeri vožnje, na sedež z AKTIVNO ČELNO ZRAČNO BLAZINO, saj pri tem obstaja nevarnost RESNIH ali SMRTNIH POŠKODB za OTROKA.

SR: NIKADA ne koristiti bezbednosni sistem za decu u kome su deca okrenuta unazad na sedištu sa AKTIVNIM VAZDUŠNIM JASTUKOM ispred sedišta zato što DETE može da NASTRADA ili da se TEŠKO POVREDI.

MK: НИКОГАШ не користете детско седиште свртено наназад на седиште заштитено со АКТИВНО ВОЗДУШНО ПЕРНИЧЕ пред него, зато што детето може ДА ЗАГИНЕ или да биде ТЕШКО ПОВРЕДЕНО.

BG: НИКОГА не използвайте детска седалка, гледаща назад, върху седалка, която е защитена

чрез АКТИВНА ВЪЗДУШНА ВЪЗГЛАВНИЦА пред нея - може да се стигне до СМЪРТ или СЕРИОЗНО НАРАНЯВАНЕ на ДЕТЕТО.

RO: Nu utilizați NICIODATĂ un scaun pentru copil îndreptat spre partea din spate a mașinii pe un scaun protejat de un AIRBAG ACTIV în fața sa; acest lucru poate duce la DECESUL sau VĂTĂMAREA GRAVĂ a COPILULUI.

CS: NIKDY nepoužívejte dětský zádržný systém instalovaný proti směru jízdy na sedadle, které je chráněno před sedadlem AKTIVNÍM AIRBAGEM. Mohlo by dojít k VÁŽNĚMU PORANĚNÍ nebo ÚMRTÍ DÍTĚTE.

SK: NIKDY nepoužívajte detskú sedačku otočenú vzad na sedadle chránenom AKTÍVNÝM AIRBAGOM, pretože môže dôjsť k SMRTI alebo VÁŽNYM ZRANENIAM DIEŤAŤA.

LT: JOKIU BŪDU nemontuokite atgal atgręžtos vaiko tvirtinimo sistemas sėdynėje, prieš kurią įrengta AKTYVI ORO PAGALVĖ, nes VAIKAS GALI ŽŪTI arba RIMTAI SUSIŽALOTI.

LV: NEKĀDĀ GADĪJUMĀ neizmantojiet uz aizmuguri vērstu bērnu sēdekļi sēdvietā, kas tiek aizsargāta ar tās priekšā uzstādītu AKTĪVU DROŠĪBAS SPILVENU, jo pretējā gadījumā BĒRNS var gūt SMAGAS TRAUMAS vai IET BOJĀ.

ET: ĀRGE kasutage tahapoole suunatud lapseturvaistet istmel, mille ees on AKTIIVSE TURVAPADJAGA kaitstud iste, sest see võib põhjustada LAPSE SURMA või TÕSISE VIGASTUSE.

MT: QATT tuža tražzin għat-ťfal li jħares lejn in-naħa ta' wara fuq sit protett b' AIRBAG ATTIV quddiemu; dan jista' jikkawħa l-MEWT jew GRIEħI SERJI lit-TFAL.

GA: Ná húsáid srian sábháilteachta linbh cúil RIAMH ar shuíochán a bhfuil mála aeir ag feidhmiú os a chomhair. Tá baol BÁIS nó GORTÚ DONA don PHÁISTE ag baint leis.

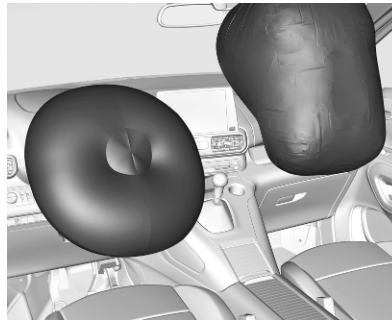
Additionally, for safety reasons a forward-facing child restraint system must only be used subject to the instructions and restrictions in the table ⇨ 54.

The airbag label is located on both sides of the front passenger sun visor. Airbag deactivation ⇨ 49.

Front airbag system

The front airbag system consists of one airbag in the steering wheel and one in the roof on the front passenger side. These can be identified by the word **AIRBAG**.

The front airbag system is triggered in the event of a front-end impact of a certain severity. The ignition must be switched on.



The inflated airbags cushion the impact, thereby reducing the risk of injury to the upper body and head of the front seat occupants considerably.

⚠ Warning

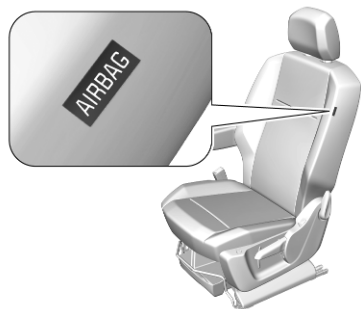
Optimum protection is only provided when the seat is in the proper position.

Seat position ⇨ 32.

Keep the area in which the airbag inflates clear of obstructions.

Fit the seat belt correctly and engage securely. Only then is the airbag able to protect.

Side airbag system



The side airbag system consists of an airbag in each front seat backrest. This can be identified by the word **AIRBAG**.

The side airbag system is triggered in the event of a side impact of a certain severity. The ignition must be switched on.



The inflated airbags cushion the impact, thereby reducing the risk of injury to the upper body and pelvis in the event of a side-on collision considerably.

Warning

Keep the area in which the airbag inflates clear of obstructions.

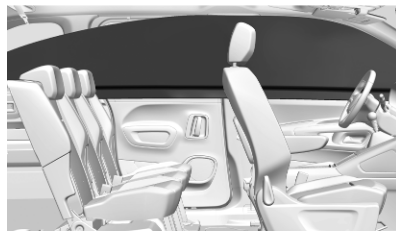
Notice

Only use protective seat covers that have been approved for the vehicle. Be careful not to cover the airbags.

Curtain airbag system

The curtain airbag system consists of an airbag in the roof frame on each side. This can be identified by the word **AIRBAG** on the roof pillars.

The curtain airbag system is triggered in the event of a side-on impact of a certain severity. The ignition must be switched on.



The inflated airbags cushion the impact, thereby reducing the risk of injury to the head in the event of a side-on impact considerably.

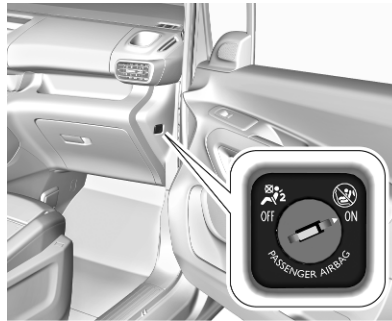
⚠ Warning

Keep the area in which the airbag inflates clear of obstructions.

The hooks on the handles in the roof frame are only suitable for hanging up light articles of clothing, without coat hangers. Do not keep any items in these clothes.




Airbag deactivation

The front passenger airbag system must be deactivated for child restraint system on the passenger seat according to the instructions in the table ↻ 54. The side airbag and curtain airbag systems, the belt pretensioners and all driver airbag systems will remain active.



The front passenger airbag system can be deactivated via a key-operated switch on the passenger side of the instrument panel.

Use the ignition key to choose the position:


- OFF  : front passenger airbag is deactivated and will not inflate in the event of a collision, control indicator OFF  illuminates continuously in the centre console
- ON  : front passenger airbag is active


⚠ Danger

Deactivate passenger airbag only in combination with the use of a child restraint system, subject to the instructions and restrictions in the table ↻ 54.

Otherwise, there is a risk of fatal injury for a person occupying a seat with a deactivated front passenger airbag.



If the control indicator  illuminates for approx. 60 seconds after the ignition is switched on, the front passenger airbag system will inflate in the event of a collision.

If the control indicator  illuminates after the ignition is switched on, the front passenger airbag system is deactivated. It stays on while the airbag is deactivated.


If both control indicators are illuminated at the same time, there is a system failure. The status of the system is not discernible, therefore no person is allowed to occupy the front passenger seat. Contact a workshop immediately.

Consult a workshop immediately if neither of the two control indicators are illuminated.

In the event of a fault a warning message is displayed in the Driver Information Centre and warning chime will sound.

Change status only when the vehicle is stopped with the ignition off.

Status remains until the next change.

Control indicator for airbag deactivation  93.


Child restraints

Child restraint systems

Danger

Make sure that children below sufficient size and weight are protected using a suitable child restraint system. Never place a child on the lap.

Danger

If using a rear-facing child restraint system on the front passenger seat, the airbag system for the front passenger seat must be deactivated. This also applies to certain forward-facing child restraint systems as indicated in the tables  54.

Airbag deactivation  49.

Airbag label  44.

We recommend a child restraint system which is tailored specifically to the vehicle. For further information, contact your workshop.

In case of any interference of the child restraint system with vehicle seat head restraint, adjust or remove the corresponding head restraint ↗ 31.

When a child restraint system is being used, pay attention to the following usage and installation instructions and also those supplied with the child restraint system. The given restrictions in the table refer to a test body, which is the maximum envelope of all existing child restraint systems. Make sure that the front seats do not interfere with the used child restraint system.

Always comply with local or national regulations. In some countries, the use of child restraint systems is forbidden on certain seats.

Only drive with the driver seat correctly adjusted ↗ 32.

Child restraint systems can be fastened with:

- Three-point seat belt
- ISOFIX brackets
- Top-tether

Three-point seat belt

Child restraint systems can be fastened by using a three-point seat belt. After fastening the child restraint system the seat belt has to be tightened ↗ 54.

ISOFIX brackets



Fasten vehicle-approved ISOFIX child restraint systems to the ISOFIX brackets. Specific vehicle ISOFIX child restraint system positions are marked in the ISOFIX table ↗ 54.

The ISOFIX brackets are located below the i-Size symbol in the seat cover.

An i-Size child restraint system is an universal ISOFIX child restraint system according UN Regulation No. 129.

All i-Size child restraint systems can be used on any vehicle seat suitable for i-Size, i-Size table ↗ 54.


Either a Top-tether strap or a support leg must be used in addition to the ISOFIX brackets.

A support leg must be placed firmly on the floor. Positioning the support leg in a footwell storage is not permitted.



i-Size child seats and vehicle seats with i-Size approval are marked with i-Size symbol, see illustration.

Top-tether anchors

Top-tether anchors are marked with the symbol  for a child seat.



In addition to the ISOFIX brackets, fasten the Top-tether strap to the Top-tether anchors.

Third row seats ⇨ 38.

ISOFIX child restraint systems of universal category positions are marked in the table by IUF ⇨ 54.

Selecting the right system

The rear seats are the most convenient location to fasten a child restraint system.

Children should travel facing rearwards in the vehicle as long as possible. This makes sure that the child's backbone, which is still very weak, is under less strain in the event of an accident. Do not use forward facing child restraint system at all seats when child's weight is below 13 kg.

Suitable are child restraint systems that comply with valid UN ECE regulations. Check local laws and regulations for mandatory use of child restraint systems.

The following child restraints are recommended for the following weight classes:

- **Group 0+:**
Römer Baby-Safe Plus with ISOFIX base for children up to 13 kg
- **Group I:**
Römer Duo Plus ISOFIX with ISOFIX and Top-tether for children from 9 kg to 18 kg
- **Group II, Group III:**
Römer Kidfix XP with or without ISOFIX for children from 15 kg to 36 kg
- **Group III:** Graco Booster for children from 22 kg to 36 kg

Ensure that the child restraint system to be installed is compatible with the vehicle type.

Child seat at the front: Adjust the front passenger seat to the highest and fully back longitudinal position with the backrest straightened.

Child seat at the rear: Move the vehicle's front seat forward and straighten the backrest so that the

legs of the child in the forward facing or the rearward facing child seat do not touch the vehicle's front seat.

Please follow the child restraint system manufacturer's instructions to install the corresponding child restraint system in the vehicle.

For semi-universal or vehicle specific child restraint system (ISOFIX or belted child restraint system), see the vehicle list provided in the user manual of the child restraint system.

Ensure that the mounting location of the child restraint system within the vehicle is correct, see following table.

Allow children to enter and exit the vehicle only on the side facing away from the traffic.

When the child restraint system is not in use, secure the seat with a seat belt or remove it from the vehicle.

Notice

Do not affix anything on the child restraint systems and do not cover them with any other materials.

A child restraint system which has been subjected to stress in an accident must be replaced.

Child restraint installation locations

Installation of universal, ISOFIX and i-Size child seats

As required by European regulations, this table gives the options for installing child seats secured using the seat belt and universally approved as well as the larger ISOFIX and i-Size child seats on seat positions equipped with ISOFIX mountings in the vehicle.

Yes : Suitable for fitment of the designated category of the child restraint system.

No : Not suitable for fitment of the designated category of the child restraint system.

	Front passenger seat	Second row outer seats	Second row centre seat	Third row seats
Position compatible with a universal child seat ¹⁾	Yes ^{2) 3) 4) 5)}	Yes ^{6) 7)}	Yes	Yes ^{6) 7)}
Position compatible with an i-Size child seat	No	Yes	Yes	No
Position equipped with a top-tether fixing	No	Yes	Yes	No
Carrycot type of child seat	No	No	No	No
Rearward facing ISOFIX child seat	No	R3 ^{6) 7)}	R3 ^{6) 7)}	No

	Front passenger seat	Second row outer seats	Second row centre seat	Third row seats
Forward facing ISOFIX child seat	No	F3 ^{6) 7)}	F3 ^{6) 7)}	No
Booster child seat	No	B3 ^{6) 8)}	B3 ^{6) 8)}	No

- 1) Universal child seat: child seat that can be installed in all vehicles using the seat belt.
- 2) To install a rearward facing child seat at this seat position, the front passenger's airbag must be deactivated OFF.
- 3) Only a forward facing child seat is authorised at this seat position with the front passenger's airbag activated ON.
- 4) Move the vehicle seat forwards as far as necessary and adjust the seat backrest as far as necessary to a vertical position to ensure that the belt runs forwards from the upper anchorage point.
- 5) Adjust the seat backrest as far as necessary to a vertical position to ensure that the seat belt is tight on the buckle side.
- 6) Move the respective front seat ahead of the child restraint system forwards as far as necessary.
- 7) Adjust the respective headrest as necessary or remove if required.
- 8) Adjust the seat backrest of the respective seat ahead of the child restraint system as far as necessary to a vertical position to have enough space for the feet of the child.

Rules:

- A position that is i-Size compatible is also compatible for R1, R2 and F2X, F2, B2.
- A position that is R3 compatible is also compatible for R1, R2 and R2X.
- A position that is R2 compatible is also compatible for R1.
- A position that is F3 compatible is also compatible for F2X and F2.
- A position that is B3 compatible is also compatible for B2.

Size of child restraint fixture (1, 2, 3):

- R1 means rearward facing child restraint fixture for mass group 0 up to 10 kg and mass group 0+ up to 13 kg, age around 0-1 year.
- R2 means reduced size of rearward facing child restraint fixture for mass group 0+ up to 13 kg and mass group 1 from 9 to 18 kg, age around 2-4 years.

- R3 means full size of rearward facing child restraint fixture for mass group 0+ up to 13 kg and mass group 1 from 9 to 18 kg, age around 2-4 years.
- F2, F2X mean reduced height of forward facing child restraint fixture for mass group 1 from 9 to 18 kg, age around 6-7 years.
- F3 means full height of forward facing child restraint fixture for mass group 1 from 9 to 18 kg, age around 7-10 years.

Storage

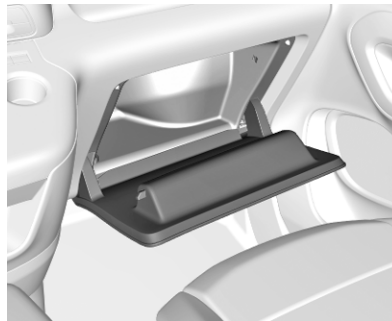
Storage compartments	57
Glovebox	57
Cupholders	57
Front storage	58
Overhead console	59
Underseat storage	60
Centre console storage	61
Footwell storage	61
Load compartment	62
Ladder flap	62
Load compartment cover	63
Lashing eyes	65
Cargo management system	66
Safety net	67
Load compartment grille	69
Warning triangle	71
First aid kit	72
Roof rack system	72
Roof rack	72
Loading information	73
Overload indicator	74

Storage compartments

⚠ Warning

Do not store heavy or sharp objects in the storage compartments.

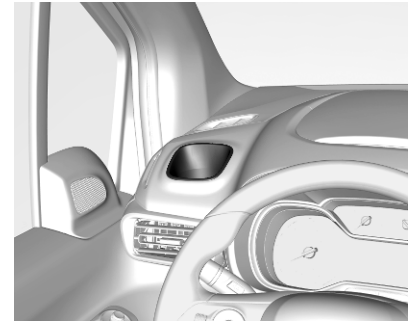
Glovebox



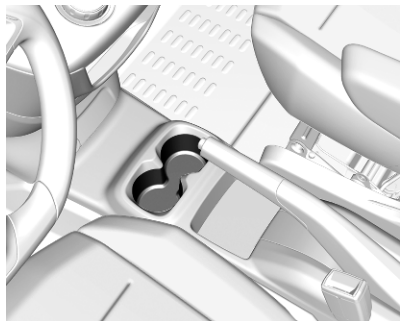
To open the glovebox pull the handle.
The glovebox should be closed whilst driving.

Cupholders

Front cupholder



Cup holders are located at the sides of the instrument panel.



Cupholders may be located in the centre console.

Rear cupholder



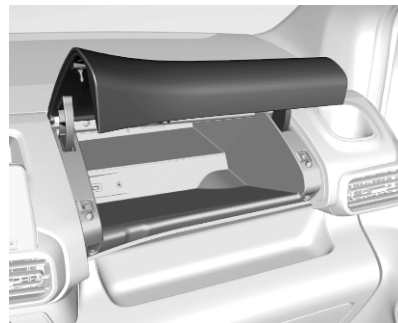
Additional cup holders may be located in the foldaway tables on the backrests of the front seats. Fold up the table.

Do not place any hard or heavy objects on the table.



Cupholders for the third row seats are located in the sides of the load compartment.

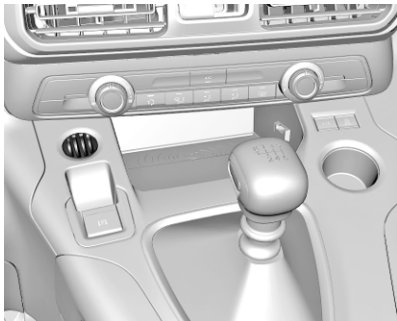
Front storage



A storage compartment is located on top of the instrument panel.



A storage compartment is located above the Instrument cluster.



A coin holder is located on the instrument panel.

Folding the centre seatback



The front centre passenger seat backrest has a document tray.
Seat folding ⇨ 34.

⚠ Warning

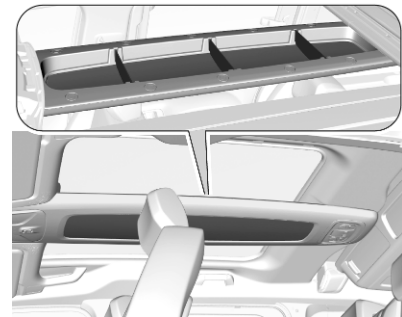
When the front centre passenger seat is in the folded position, the front passenger airbag system must be deactivated.

Airbag deactivation ⇨ 49.

Overhead console



Store only lightweight items such as paperwork or maps.



The separation of the four compartments can be taken out.

The maximum permitted load is 6 kg.

⚠ Warning

Secure objects to prevent them from falling out and causing injury.



Slide the flaps to open.

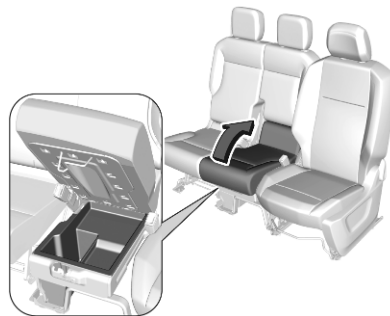
Close whilst driving. The maximum permitted load is 10 kg.



Pull handle to open.

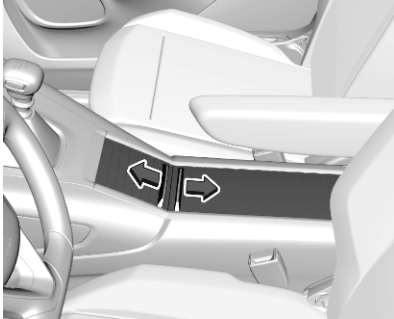
Close whilst driving. The maximum permitted load is 10 kg.

Underseat storage



There may be a storage box under the centre bench seat. Lift up the seat cushion by pulling the handle. The storage box can be locked by a padlock.

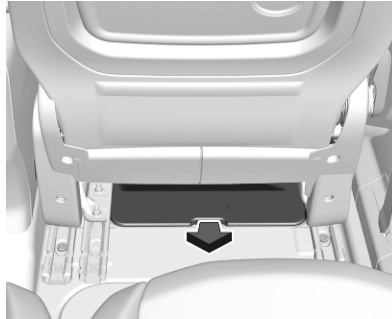
Centre console storage



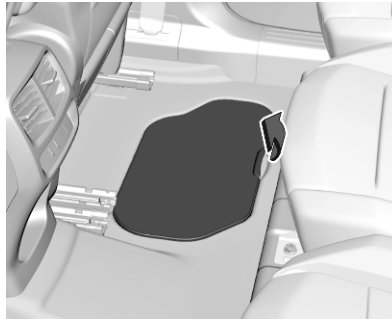
A storage box may be located in the centre console. Press cover to open. A 12 V power outlet is located behind the storage cover.

Footwell storage

The footwell storages can be accessed from the rear seats.



Vehicle tools may be located in the stowage compartments underneath the front seats ↻ 321.



Depending on version, there are two stowage compartments in the rear footwell.

Load compartment

Depending on version, the load compartment area can be increased by folding up or removing the third row seats. The seat backrests of the second row can be folded forward separately. Additionally, the backrest of the passenger seat can be folded.

Depending on the loading, only single seats or backrests can be folded.

Folding passenger seat ⇨ 34

Folding second row seats ⇨ 37

Folding or removing third row seats ⇨ 37

Ladder flap

The ladder flap is available for transporting long loads.

Opening the ladder flap



1. Press the lever and disengage the spring clip from the retainer by pulling.
2. Lift the ladder flap.



3. Move past the point of resistance to lock the ladder flap with the props.

Support bar

Rest long loads on the support bar.



1. Push the lever to the top.
2. Push the support bar a bit to the front and then guide it down to the door pillar.
3. Hold the long load in the angled position.
4. Move the support bar below the load to its original position. Fix it by pressing the lever downwards past the point of resistance.

The rear doors will only lock when the support bar is installed.

5. Secure the loads firmly. The side supports can be used as hooking points.

Closing the ladder flap

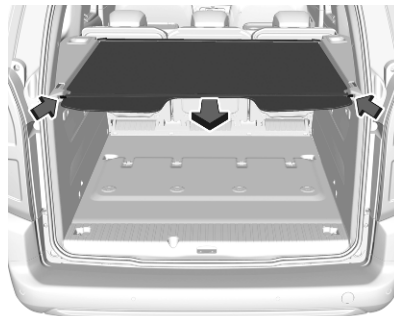
1. Check that the support bar is properly locked.
2. Lower the ladder flap.
3. Fix the spring clip in its retainer.

Load compartment cover

Rear luggage cover

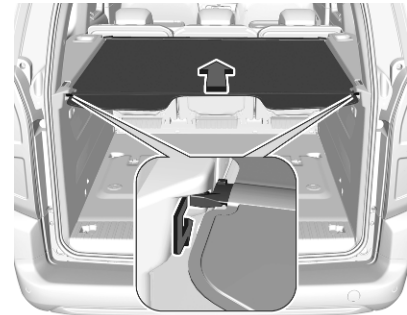
Do not place any objects on the cover.

Closing the cover



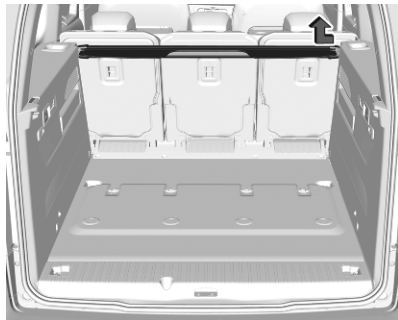
Pull the load compartment cover towards the rear and engage it in the side brackets.

Opening the cover



Remove load compartment cover from side brackets. Guide the cover until it is fully rolled up.

Removing the cover



Open the load compartment cover.
Compress the load compartment cover at one side and lift it up.
Remove the load compartment cover.

Stowing in the load compartment



If the load compartment cover is not used, stow it in the load compartment. It can be stowed behind the second or third row seats.

Fitting the cover

Insert the load compartment cover into the recess at one side. Compress the cover at the other side and engage it in the recess.

Rear parcel shelf

Do not place any excessively heavy or sharp-edged objects on the rear parcel shelf. The maximum load permissible is 25 kg. With high loads install the safety net behind the rear seats ⇨ 67.

Installing the rear parcel shelf



The rear parcel shelf can be installed in two positions.

Fit the parcel shelf by engaging in the retainers on both sides.

Lifting the rear parcel shelf



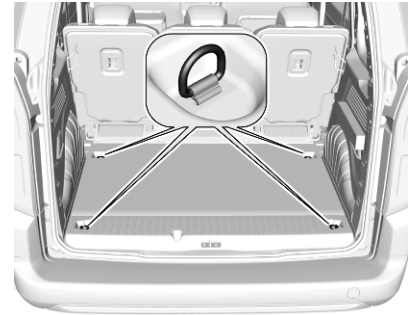
The rear parcel shelf may be folded up from the rear, allowing greater flexibility in the load compartment.

Stowing in the load compartment



Set up the folded cover upright behind the rear seat backrests.

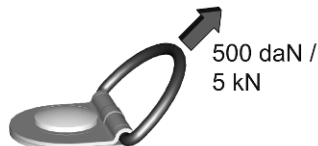
Lashing eyes



The lashing eyes are designed to secure items against slippage, e.g. using lashing straps or luggage net.



Lashing eyes may be located on the vehicle floor and / or in the sidewall. The number and location of the lashing eyes may vary depending on the vehicle.



The maximum force applied to the lashing eyes should not exceed 500 daN / 5 kN / 5000 N.

Depending on country, the maximum force may be shown on a label.

Notice

Specifications on the label always have priority over those given in this manual.

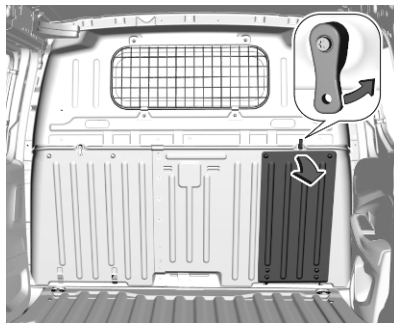
Cargo management system

Depending on version, a partition behind the front seats protects the driver and front passengers against the risk of load movement.

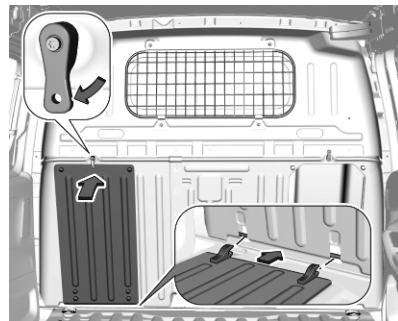
There may be a flap in the partition behind the passenger seat which can be removed to accommodate long objects. A protective cover is provided in the vehicle to assure safe transportation.

If the outer passenger seat backrest is folded down and the partition flap is open, the centre seat has to stay free.

Removing the flap



1. Release the locking device, lower the flap and then remove it.
2. Stow the flap behind the driver's seat.

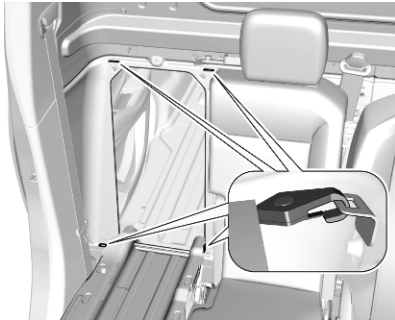


Turn the locking device upwards. Put the hinges of the flap in their housing, lift the flap and close the locking device.

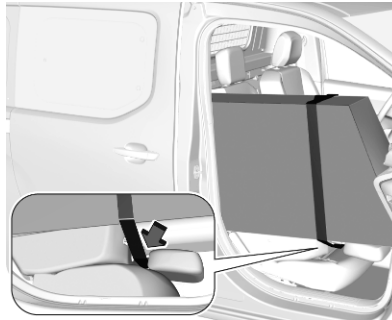
Fitting the protective cover

The protective cover must be installed whenever the outer passenger seat backrest is folded down and the partition flap is open.

1. Fold the outer passenger seat backrest ↺ 34.



2. Attach the four snap hooks of the cover on the corresponding lashing eye.
3. Pull the head restraint from the folded backrest, leaving two notches visible on the head restraint rod ↗ 31.
4. Load the objects.



5. Pass the strap of the cover around the head restraint. Tension the strap by pulling at the loose end.

With fitted protective cover the maximum load on the folded backrest is 100 kg.

Safety net

Depending on version, the safety net can be installed behind the rear seats or, if the rear seat backrests are folded, behind the front seats.

Passengers must not be transported behind the safety net.

Installation

Behind the rear seats



- There are installation openings on both sides in the roof frame above the rear seats. Open the covers and suspend and engage rod of net at one side, compress rod and suspend and engage at the other side.



- Attach the hooks of safety net straps in the lashing eyes behind the rear seats.
Tension both straps by pulling at the loose end.
- Rear seat backrests must be raised up.

Behind the front seats

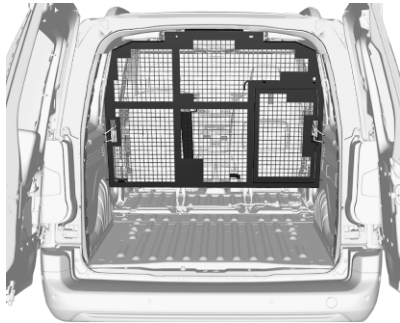


- There are installation openings on both sides in the roof frame above the front seats. Open the covers and suspend and engage rod of net at one side, compress rod and suspend and engage at the other side.

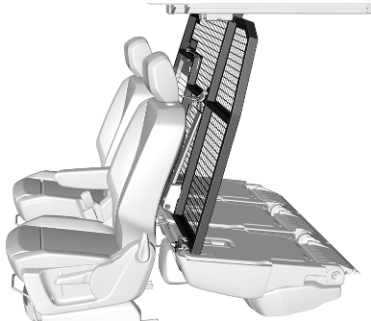


- Wind one strap around the bar located under the front driver seat cushion. The other one wind around the bar of the passenger seat. Then secure each hook to the corresponding strap.
Tension both straps by pulling at the loose end.
- Push down head restraints and fold down rear seat backrests ↻ 62.

Load compartment grille



Depending on version a partition protects the driver and passengers against the risk of load movement.



The partition can be placed behind the front or rear seats.

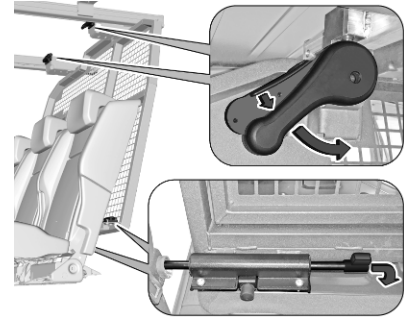


There is a flap in the partition which can be opened to accommodate long objects. A protective cover is provided in the vehicle to assure safe transportation.

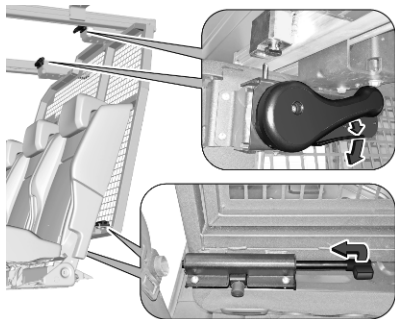
If the side seat backrest is folded down and the partition flap is open the centre seat has to stay free.

If the backrest of the rear seat is lowered and the flap open to transport long objects, the front passenger seat has to stay free.

Moving the partition



1. Release the four locking devices on the top and the bottom of the partition.
2. To be placed behind the front seats fold down the rear seat backrests ↷ 37



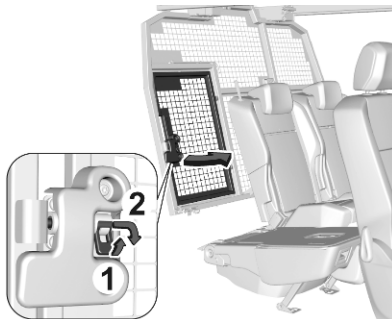
3. Move the partition and lock the four locking devices on the top and the bottom.

⚠ Warning

Take care when operating the bottom locking devices. Risk of pinching.

Opening the flap

1. Depending on the positioning of the partition and the length of the load fold down the outer rear seat backrest and / or passenger seat backrest ↪ 34, 37



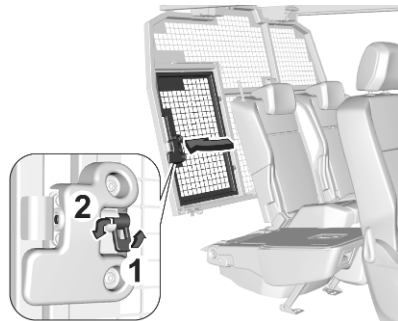
2. Release the locking device of the flap and open the flap.



3. Secure the flap with the rod.

Closing the flap

1. Fix the rod in the bracket.



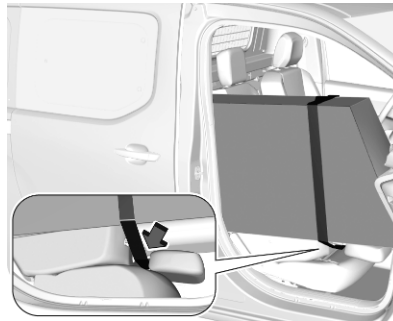
2. Close the flap and lock the locking device.
3. Restore the seats to the upright position ↪ 34, 37

Fitting the protective cover

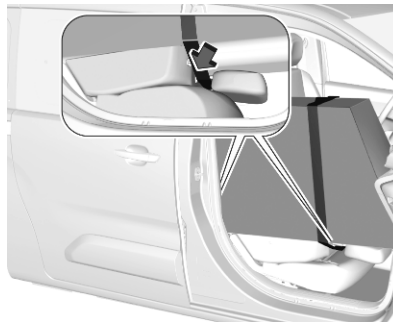
The protective cover must be installed whenever the side seat backrest is folded down and the partition flap is open.



1. Attach the four snap hooks of the cover on the corresponding lashing eye.
2. Pull the head restraint from the folded backrest, leaving two notches visible on the head restraint rod ↗ 31.
3. Load the objects.



4. Pass the strap of the cover around the head restraint. Tension the strap by pulling at the loose end.

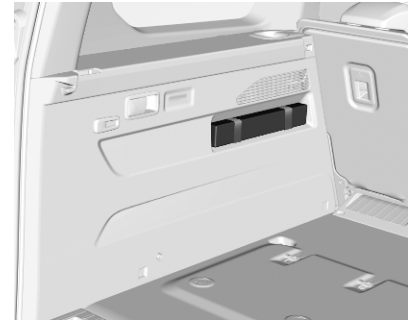


If the loading is stored on the front and rear seat at the passenger

side pass one strap on each head restraint.

With fitted protective cover the maximum load on each of the folded backrests is 100 kg.

Warning triangle



Depending on version, the warning triangle can be stowed in the load compartment. Secure it with the elastic straps.

First aid kit



Depending on version, the first aid kit can be stowed in the load compartment.

Roof rack system

Roof rack

For safety reasons and to avoid damage to the roof, the vehicle approved roof rack system is recommended. For further information contact your workshop.

Follow the installation instructions and remove the roof rack when not in use.

Mounting roof rack

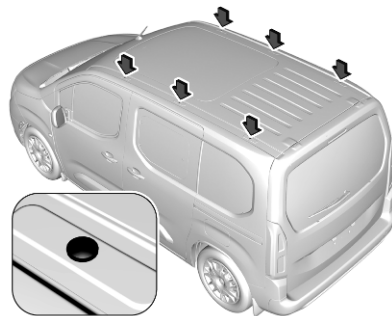
Vehicles with roof railing



Mounting points are located at the bottom of the roof railing.

Fasten the roof rack according to the installation instructions delivered with the roof rack.

Vehicles without roof railing

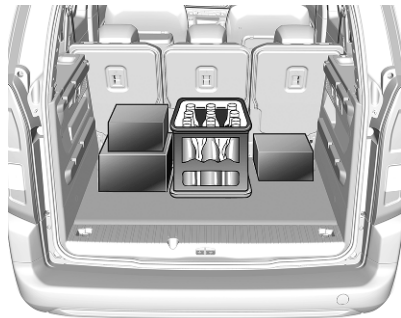


To fasten a roof rack, unscrew the caps in the roof strips. Insert the mounting provisions, as instructed, in the retainer.

Loading information

⚠ Warning

Always make sure that the load in the vehicle is securely stowed. Otherwise objects can be thrown around inside the vehicle and cause personal injury or damage to the load or car.



- Heavy objects in the load compartment should be placed against the seat backrests. Make sure that the backrests are

securely engaged. If objects can be stacked, heavier objects should be placed at the bottom.

- Prevent sliding of loose objects by securing them with straps attached to the lashing eyes ⇨ 65.
- Do not allow the load to protrude above the upper edge of the backrests.
- Do not place any objects on the rear luggage cover or the instrument panel, and do not cover the sensor on top of the instrument panel.
- The load must not obstruct the operation of the pedals, parking brake and gear selector, or hinder the freedom of movement of the driver. Do not place any unsecured objects in the interior.
- Do not drive with an open load compartment.
- The payload is the difference between the permitted gross vehicle weight (see identification plate ⇨ 347) and the EC kerb weight.

To calculate the payload, enter the data for your vehicle in the weights table at the front of this manual.

The EC kerb weight includes weights for the driver (68 kg), luggage (7 kg) and all fluids (fuel tank 90% full).

Optional equipment and accessories increase the kerb weight.

- Driving with a roof load increases the sensitivity of the vehicle to cross-winds and has a detrimental effect on vehicle handling due to the vehicle's higher centre of gravity. Distribute the load evenly and secure it properly with retaining straps. Adjust the tyre pressure and vehicle speed according to the load conditions. Check and retighten the straps frequently. Do not drive faster than 75 mph. The permissible roof load is:


- 80 kg for vehicles with roof railing
- 100 kg for vehicles without roof railing and with two roof racks
- 150 kg for vehicles without roof railing and with three roof racks, except vehicles with seven seats
- 100 kg for vehicles without roof railing and with three roof racks and seven seats




The roof load is the combined weight of the roof rack and the load.

Overload indicator

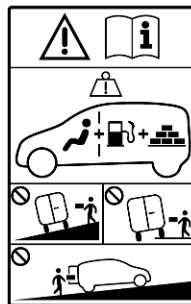
The overload indicator checks whether the vehicle is overloaded. The function is designed to help avoiding overload and the consequent risks such as unstable road behaviour, tyre blowout, premature wear etc.



If an overcharge is imminent, **ON** and  are illuminated.

If the vehicle is overloaded, **ON**,  and  are illuminated. In addition,  is illuminated in the instrument cluster.

Activation



Notice

For optimal operation, park the vehicle on a horizontal surface.

Do not park the vehicle on a slope.

Do not park the vehicle with the wheels on the pavement.

The system is activated automatically each time the engine is started. In addition, the system can be activated manually by pressing **ON** in the loading area. After activation, the system operates for five minutes.

Instruments and controls

Instrument panel overview 77

Controls 79

Steering wheel adjustment 79

Steering wheel controls 79

Heated steering wheel 79

Horn 80

Pedestrian safety alert 80

Windscreen wiper and washer .. 80

Rear window wiper and

washer 82

Outside temperature 82

Clock 83

Power outlets 83

Inductive charging 84

Cigarette lighter 85

Ashtrays 85

Warning lights, gauges and indicators 86

Speedometer 86

Odometer 86

Trip odometer 86

Tachometer 87

Fuel gauge 87

High voltage battery gauge 87

Power indicator gauge 88

Engine coolant temperature

gauge 88

Engine oil level monitor 88

Service display 89

Control indicators 90

Turn lights 91

Seat belt reminder 92

Airbag and belt tensioners 92

Airbag deactivation 93

Charging system 93

Malfunction indicator light 93

Service vehicle soon 93

Stop engine 94

System check 94

Brake and clutch system 94

Parking brake 94

Electric parking brake 94

Electric parking brake fault 94

Antilock brake system (ABS) 95

Gear shifting 95

Overload indicator 95

Descent control system 95

Lane keep assist 95

Electronic Stability Control and

Traction Control system 95

Engine coolant temperature 96

Preheating 96

Exhaust filter 96

AdBlue 96

Deflation detection system 96

Engine oil pressure 97

Low fuel 97

Charging cable connected 97

Vehicle ready 97

Reduced engine power 97

Autostop 97

Exterior light 98

High beam 98

Low beam 98

High beam assist 98

LED headlights 98

Front fog lights 98

Rear fog light 98

Rain sensor 98

Cruise control 98

Adaptive cruise control 98

Pedestrian safety alert fault 98

Side blind spot alert 99

Active emergency braking 99

Speed limiter 99

Door open 99

Displays 99

Driver Information Centre 99

Info Display 102

Head-up display 103

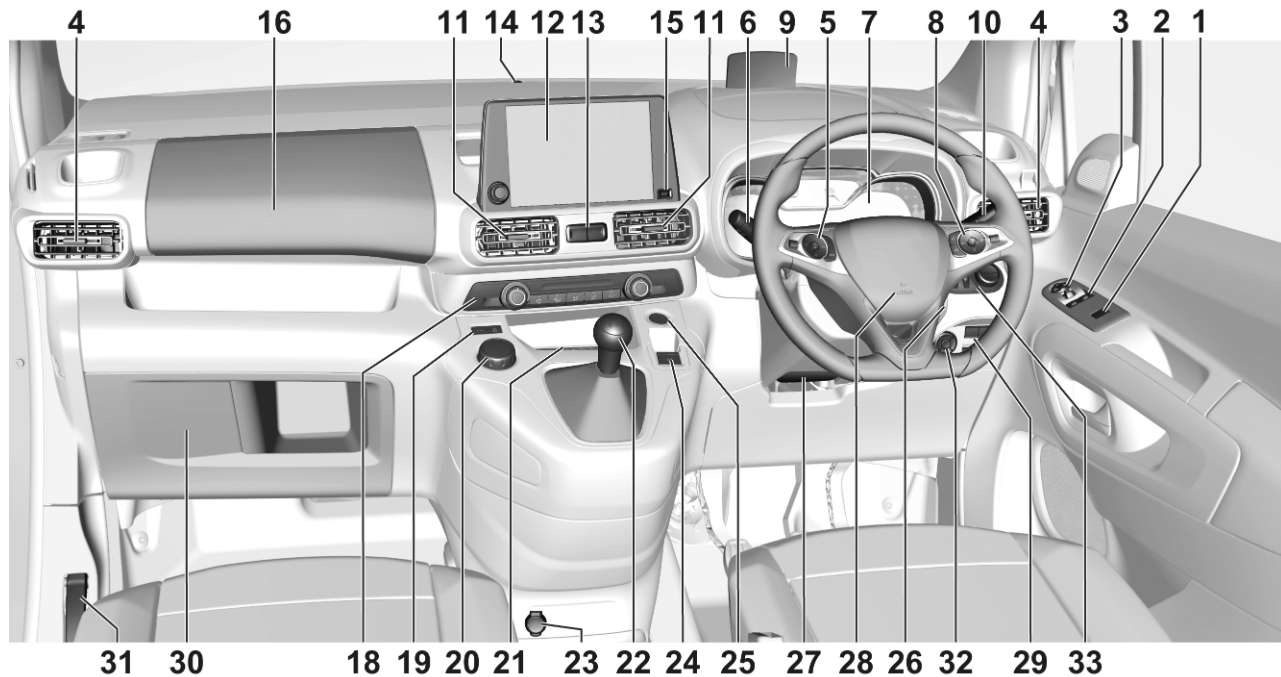
Rear view display 105

Vehicle messages 106

Warning chimes 106

Vehicle personalisation	107
Telematics services	108
Emergency call	108
Vauxhall Connect	108

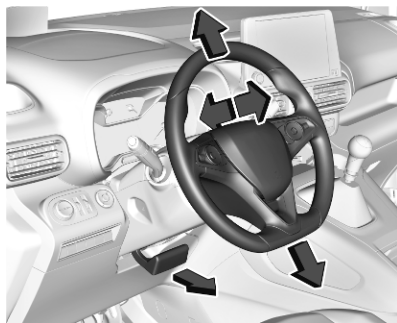
Instrument panel overview



- | | | |
|--|---|--|
| <p>1 Electric child locks 14</p> <p>Unlocking tailgate 18</p> <p>Child safety system for rear windows 27</p> <p>2 Power windows 27</p> <p>3 Exterior mirrors 23</p> <p>4 Side air vents 214</p> <p>5 Cruise control 246</p> <p>Speed limiter 248</p> <p>Adaptive cruise control 246</p> <p>6 Turn lights 114</p> <p>Headlight flash 112</p> <p>High beam 111</p> <p>High beam assist 111</p> <p>Exit lighting 117</p> <p>Parking lights 115</p> <p>Buttons for Driver Information Centre 99</p> <p>7 Instruments 86</p> <p>Driver Information Centre 99</p> <p>8 Infotainment controls</p> | <p>9 Head-up display 103</p> <p>10 Windscreen wiper and washer, rear wiper and washer 80</p> <p>11 Air vents 214</p> <p>12 Info Display 102</p> <p>13 Hazard warning flashers 113</p> <p>Central locking system 10</p> <p>14 Sun sensor 207</p> <p>15 USB charging port 83</p> <p>16 Storage 57</p> <p>18 Climate control system 204</p> <p>19 Electronic Stability Control and Traction Control 242</p> <p>Eco mode</p> <p>Descent control system 243</p> <p>20 Selective ride control 244</p> <p>21 Inductive charging 84</p> <p>22 Manual transmission 236</p> <p>Automatic transmission 233</p> <p>23 Power outlet 83</p> <p>24 Electric parking brake 238</p> <p>25 Power button 219</p> | <p>26 Ignition switch 218</p> <p>27 Steering wheel adjustment . . 79</p> <p>28 Horn 80</p> <p>29 Parking assist / Advanced parking assist 263</p> <p>Electric child locks 14</p> <p>Eco button for stop-start system 222</p> <p>Lane keep assist 280</p> <p>Tyre deflation detection system 323</p> <p>Parking heater 211</p> <p>30 Fuse box 320</p> <p>31 Bonnet release lever 305</p> <p>32 Head-up display 103</p> <p>33 Light switch 110</p> <p>Front / rear fog lights 114</p> <p>Instrument illumination 115</p> |
|--|---|--|

Controls

Steering wheel adjustment



Unlock lever, adjust steering wheel, then engage lever and ensure it is fully locked.

Do not adjust steering wheel unless vehicle is stationary and steering wheel lock has been released.

Steering wheel controls



Cruise control and speed limiter are operated via the controls on the left side of the steering wheel.

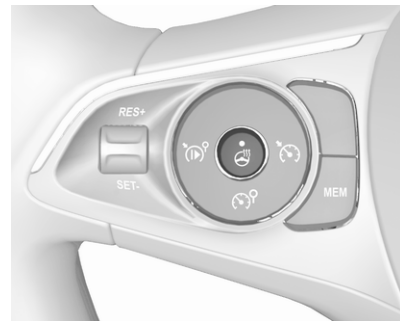
Additionally, adaptive cruise control can be set by using the controls on the left side of the steering wheel.


Infotainment system can be operated via the controls on the right side of the steering wheel.

Further information is available in the Infotainment system section.

Driver assistance systems ⇨ 246.

Heated steering wheel



Activate heating by pressing . Activation is indicated by the LED in the button.

The heating works only when the outside temperature is below 20 °C.

Heating is operational when the engine is running and during an Autostop.

Stop-start system ⇨ 222.

Horn



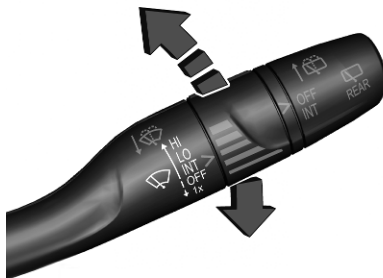
Press .

Pedestrian safety alert

The sound of the pedestrian safety alert is generated to indicate the vehicle presence to pedestrians. It is active up to 19 mph.

Windscreen wiper and washer

Windscreen wiper with adjustable wiper frequency



HI : fast
LO : slow
INT : interval wiping
OFF : off

For a single wipe when the windscreen wiper is off, press the lever down to position **1x**.

Do not use if the windscreen is frozen.

Switch off in car washes.

To activate interval wiping mode the next time ignition is switched on, press the lever downwards to position **OFF** and back to **INT**.

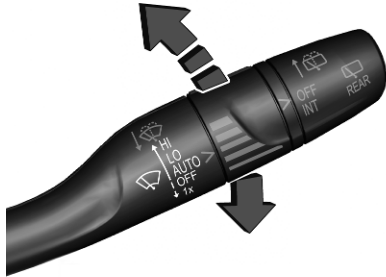
Adjustable wiper frequency



Wiper lever in position **INT**.

Turn the adjuster wheel to adjust the desired wipe frequency.

Windscreen wiper with rain sensor



- HI** : fast
LO : slow
AUTO : automatic wiping with rain sensor
OFF : off

In **AUTO** position, the rain sensor detects the amount of water on the windscreen and automatically regulates the frequency of the windscreen wiper. If ignition is switched off, automatic wiping mode is deactivated. To activate automatic wiping mode the next time ignition is

switched on, press the lever downwards to position **OFF** and back to **AUTO**.

For a single wipe when the windscreen wiper is off, press the lever downwards to position **1x**.

Do not use if the windscreen is frozen.

Switch off in car washes.

Adjustable sensitivity of the rain sensor



Turn the adjuster wheel to adjust the sensitivity.

Make sure the sensor is not blocked
 ⇨ 26, ⇨ 77.

Control indicator  ⇨ 80.

Windscreen washer



Pull lever. Washer fluid is sprayed onto the windscreen and the wiper wipes a few times.

Washer fluid ⇨ 308.

Rear window wiper and washer

Rear window wiper



OFF : off

INT : intermittent operation

Do not use if the rear window is frozen.

Switch off in car washes.

The rear window wiper comes on automatically when the windscreen wiper is switched on and reverse gear is engaged.

Activation or deactivation of this function can be changed in the Vehicle personalisation menu ↗ 107.

Rear window washer



Push lever.

Washer fluid is sprayed onto the rear window and the wiper wipes a few times.

The rear window washer system is deactivated when the fluid level is low.

Washer fluid ↗ 308.

Outside temperature

A drop in temperature is indicated immediately and a rise in temperature after a time delay.



Illustration shows an example.

If outside temperature drops to 3 °C, a warning message is displayed in the Driver Information Centre.

Warning

The road surface may already be icy even though the display indicates a few degrees above 0 °C.

Clock

Date and time are shown in the Info Display.

The adjustment of date and time is described in the Infotainment system section.

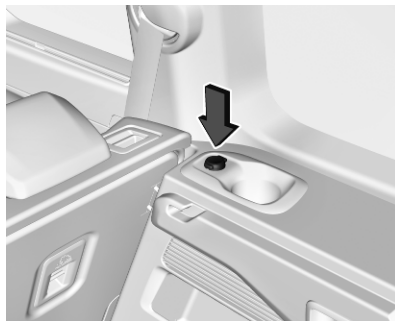
Info Display ⇨ 102.

Power outlets



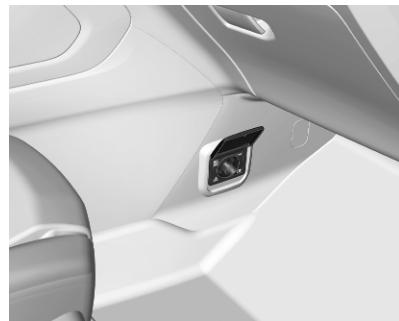
A 12 V power outlet is located behind the storage cover. Push cover upwards to open.

Depending on the version, the 12 V power outlet may be freely accessible.



At the right side of the load compartment, another 12 V power outlet may be located.

Do not exceed the maximum power consumption of 120 W.



A 230 V power outlet may be located on the lower side of the centre console in the front passenger compartment.

Do not exceed the maximum power consumption of 150 W.

With ignition off, the power outlets are deactivated. Additionally the power outlets are deactivated in the event of low vehicle battery voltage.

Electrical accessories that are connected must comply with the electromagnetic compatibility requirements laid down in DIN VDE 40 839.

Do not connect any current-delivering accessories, e.g. electrical charging devices or batteries.

Do not damage the outlet by using unsuitable plugs.

Stop-start system ⇨ 222.

USB ports



A USB port is located in the instrument panel next to the Info Display.



A further USB port may be located in the rear console.

The USB ports are prepared for charging external devices and provide a data connection to the Infotainment system. For further information, see Infotainment system section.

Notice

The sockets must always be kept clean and dry.

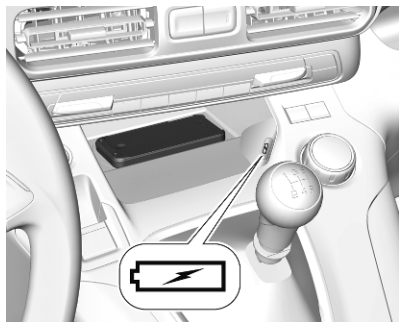
Inductive charging

⚠ Warning

Inductive charging can affect the operation of implanted pacemakers or other medical devices. If applicable, seek medical advice before using the inductive charging device.

⚠ Warning

Remove any metal objects from the charging device before charging a mobile device, as these objects could become very hot.



The portable device to be charged must be compatible with the Qi standard, either by design or by using a compatible holder or shell. The charging zone is identified by the Qi symbol.

To charge a device, the ignition must be switched on.

To charge a mobile device:

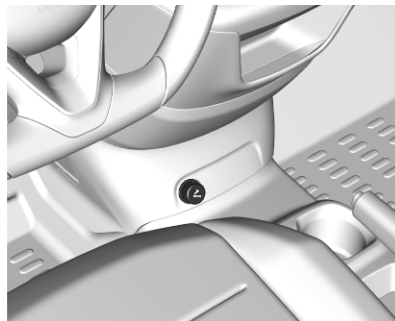
1. Remove all objects from the charging device.
2. Place the mobile device with the display facing upwards on the charging device in the storage.

Charging status is indicated in the LED: illuminates green, when mobile device is charging.

Protective cover for the mobile device could have impact on the inductive charging.

In the event that the mobile device is not charging properly, rotate it 180° and place it on the charging device again.

Cigarette lighter



The cigarette lighter is freely accessible.

Depending on version, the cigarette lighter may be located behind the storage cover. Press cover to open.

Press in cigarette lighter. It switches off automatically once the element is glowing. Pull out cigarette lighter.

Ashtrays

Caution

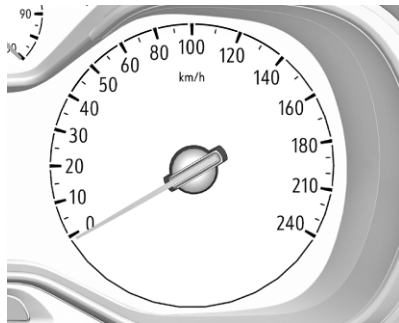
To be used only for ash and not for combustible rubbish.



A portable ashtray can be placed in the cupholders.

Warning lights, gauges and indicators

Speedometer



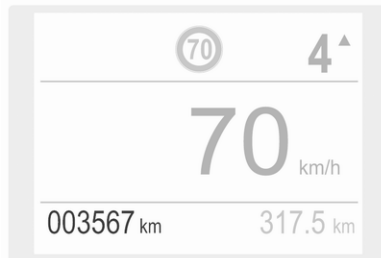
Indicates vehicle speed.

Depending on version there are different variants.

Odometer

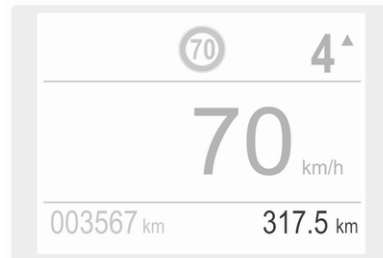
The total recorded distance is displayed in miles.

Driver Information Centre



Trip odometer

The recorded distance since the last reset is displayed in the Driver Information Centre.



Monochrome display

Trip odometer counts up to 9,999.9 miles without automatic reset.

Press **000** for 2 seconds to reset trip odometer.

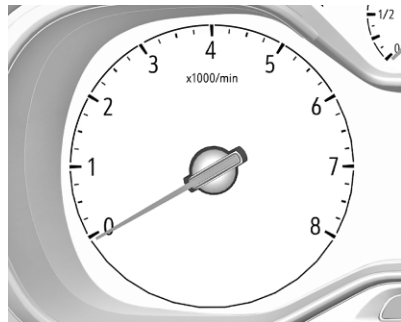
Colour display

Trip odometer counts up to 1,999.9 miles and resets then automatically.

Press **000** for 2 seconds to reset trip odometer.

The trip / fuel information menu provides additionally two trip counter \rightarrow 99.

Tachometer



Displays the engine speed.

Drive in a low engine speed range for each gear as much as possible.

A red marker indicates the beginning of the warning zone of excessive revolutions. For Diesel engines, the warning zone starts at 5000 revolutions per minute. For petrol engines, the warning zone starts at 7000 revolutions per minute.

Caution

If the needle is beyond the red marker, the maximum permitted engine speed is exceeded. Engine at risk.

Fuel gauge



Displays the fuel level.

Control indicator ● illuminates if the fuel level is low.

Never run the fuel tank dry.

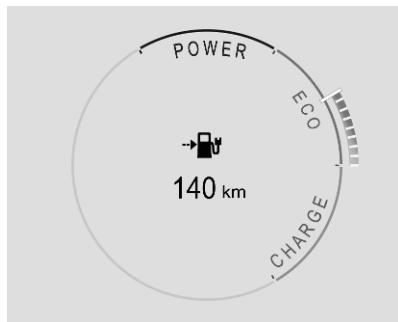
Because of the fuel remaining in the tank, the top-up quantity may be less than the specified fuel tank capacity.

High voltage battery gauge



Displays the high voltage battery state of charge.

Power indicator gauge



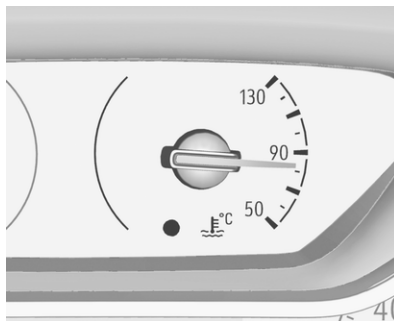
The power indicator gauge informs about the current energy situation of the vehicle.

Charge : Battery is being charged with energy resulting from braking or deceleration of the vehicle

Eco : An optimum in energy is accessible in all driving modes

Power : Vehicle is driven in a dynamic driving style with focus on performance

Engine coolant temperature gauge



Displays the coolant temperature.

- 50 : engine operating temperature not yet reached
- 90 : normal operating temperature
- 130 : temperature too high

Control indicator ● illuminates if coolant temperature is too high. Switch off engine immediately.



Caution

If engine coolant temperature is too high, stop vehicle, switch off engine. Danger to engine. Check coolant level.

Engine oil level monitor

The state of the engine oil level is displayed in the Driver Information Centre for a few seconds following the service information after switching on the ignition.

A proper state of engine oil level is indicated by the message **Oil level correct**.

If engine oil level is low,  flashes and **Oil level incorrect** is indicated, accompanied by . Confirm engine oil level by using the oil dipstick and top up engine oil respectively.

Engine oil ⇨ 306.

A fault of measurement is indicated by the message **Oil level measurement invalid**. Check engine oil level manually by using the dipstick.


Service display


The service system informs when to change the engine oil and filter or a vehicle service is required. Based on driving conditions, the interval at which an engine oil and filter change is required can vary considerably.


Service information ⇨ 342.

A required service due is displayed in the Driver Information Centre for seven seconds after switching on the ignition.

If no service is required for the next 1800 miles or more no service information appears in the display.

If service is required within the next 1800 miles, the remaining distance or time duration is indicated for several seconds. Simultaneously  illuminates permanently as reminder.


If service is required in less than 600 miles,  flashes and then illuminates permanently. Remaining distance or time duration is indicated for several seconds.

Overdue service is indicated by a message in the Driver Information Centre which indicates the overdue distance.  flashes and then illuminates permanently until service is executed.

Reset of service interval

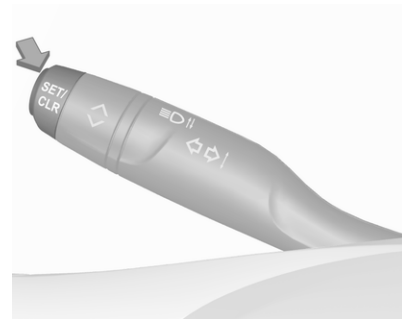
After each service, the service indicator must be reset to ensure proper functionality. It is recommended to seek the assistance of a workshop.

If service is executed by yourself, operate as following:

- switch off ignition
- press and hold button CHECK
- switch on ignition, the distance indication begins a countdown
- when the display indicates =0, release the button  disappears

Depending on version, operate as following:

- switch off ignition



- press and hold **SET / CLR**
- switch on ignition, the distance indication begins a countdown
- when the display indicates =0, release **SET / CLR**

The symbol  disappears.

Retrieving service information



To retrieve the status of the service information at any time press button **CHECK**. Depending on version, press **Check** in the vehicle settings menu. The service information is displayed for a few seconds.

Service information ⇨ 342.

Control indicators

The control indicators described are not present in all vehicles. The description applies to all instrument versions. Depending on the equipment, the position of the control indicators may vary. When the

ignition is switched on, most control indicators will illuminate briefly as a functionality test.

The control indicator colours mean:

- red : danger, important reminder
- yellow : warning, information, fault
- green : confirmation of activation
- blue : confirmation of activation
- white : confirmation of activation
- grey : system paused, at least one system limitation has been detected

Control indicators are located in the Driver Information Centre.









Driver Information Centre ⇨ 99.












Overview
















The numbers in the overview table indicate what to do, when a control indicator illuminates or flashes.






- 1 : only for information
- 2 : information and warning
- 3 : seek the assistance of a workshop
- 4 : stop engine and seek the assistance of a workshop

- 5 : have the cause of the fault remedied immediately by a workshop
- 6 : stop vehicle, do not continue the journey and seek the assistance of a workshop

- | | | |
|--|---|----------------------------------|
|  | 1 | Turn signal ⇨ 91 |
|  | 2 | Seat belt reminder ⇨ 92 |
|  | 5 | Airbag and belt tensioners ⇨ 92 |
|  | 1 | Airbag deactivation ⇨ 93 |
|  | 4 | Charging system ⇨ 93 |
|  | 5 | Malfunction indicator light ⇨ 93 |
|  | 5 | Service vehicle soon ⇨ 93 |
| STOP | 4 | Stop engine ⇨ 94 |
|  | 4 | System check ⇨ 94 |

	6	Brake and clutch system ⇨ 94
	1 /	Parking brake ⇨ 94
	5	Electric parking brake ⇨ 94
	2	Antilock brake system (ABS) ⇨ 95
	1	Gear shifting ⇨ 95
	2	Lane keep assist ⇨ 95
	2 /	Electronic Stability Control and Traction Control system ⇨ 95
	5	
	1	Preheating ⇨ 96
	2 /	Exhaust filter ⇨ 96
	3	
	1	AdBlue ⇨ 96
	2 /	Deflation detection system ⇨ 96
	3	
	4	Engine oil pressure ⇨ 97

	●	2	Low fuel ⇨ 97
	●	4	Engine coolant temperature high ⇨ 96
	(A)	1	Autostop ⇨ 97
	➤	1	Exterior light ⇨ 98
	D	1	Low beam ⇨ 98
	D	1	High beam ⇨ 98
	D	1	High beam assist ⇨ 98
		2	Descent control system ⇨ 95
	D	1	Front fog lights ⇨ 98
	‡	1	Rear fog light ⇨ 98
	ALFO	1	Rain sensor ⇨ 98
	A ^B	2	Side blind spot alert ⇨ 99
	CC	2	Cruise control ⇨ 98
	CL	2	Speed limiter ⇨ 99
	(E)	2 /	Active emergency braking ⇨ 258
		3	

	2	Door open ⇨ 99
	1	Overload indicator ⇨ 95
	2	Charging cable connected ⇨ 97
READY	1	Vehicle ready ⇨ 97
	2	Reduced engine power ⇨ 98
	3	Pedestrian safety alert fault ⇨ 98

Turn lights

⇨ illuminates or flashes green.

Illuminates briefly

The parking lights are switched on.

Flashes


Turn lights or the hazard warning flashers are activated.

Rapid flashing: failure of a turn light or associated fuse, failure of turn light on trailer.



Bulb replacement ⇨ 313.

Turn lights ⇨ 114.

Seat belt reminder

 illuminates or flashes in the instrument cluster. Additionally, there is an indication in the roof console. The big symbols refer to the seat belts of the front seats, the small symbols refer to the second row rear seats.




- When the ignition is switched on,  in the instrument cluster and the symbols in the roof console come on for a short time. For the front seats,  in the instrument

cluster and the symbols in the roof console illuminate until seat belt is fastened.

- When driving faster than 12 mph and a seat belt is unfastened, the symbol in the roof console for the respective seat flashes and a chime is audible. For the second row rear seats, this only applies if at least one rear seat belt was previously fastened.

Additionally,  illuminates in the instrument cluster.


After two minutes the chime goes off and  in the roof console illuminates constantly until the seat belt of the respective seat is fastened.

Airbag and belt tensioners

 illuminates red.

When the ignition is switched on, the control indicator illuminates for approx. four seconds. If it does not illuminate, does not extinguish after four seconds or illuminates whilst driving, there is a fault in the airbag

system. Seek the assistance of a workshop. The airbags and belt pretensioners may fail to trigger in the event of an accident.

Deployment of the belt pretensioners or airbags is indicated by continuous illumination of .

Warning

Have the cause of the fault remedied immediately by a workshop.

Belt pretensioners ⇨ 41.

Airbag system ⇨ 44.

Airbag deactivation



 **ON** illuminates yellow.

The front passenger airbag is activated.

 **OFF** illuminates yellow.

The front passenger airbag is deactivated.

Airbag deactivation ⇨ 49.

Charging system


 illuminates red.

Illuminates when the ignition is switched on and extinguishes shortly after the engine starts.

Illuminates when the engine is running

Stop, switch off engine. Vehicle battery is not charging. Engine cooling may be interrupted. The brake servo unit may cease to be effective. Seek the assistance of a workshop.

Malfunction indicator light

 illuminates or flashes yellow.

Illuminates when the ignition is switched on and extinguishes shortly after the engine starts.

Illuminates when the engine is running

Fault in the emission control system. The permitted emission limits may be exceeded. Seek the assistance of a workshop immediately.

Flashes when the engine is running

Fault that could lead to catalytic converter damage. Ease up on the accelerator until the flashing stops. Seek the assistance of a workshop immediately.

Service vehicle soon

 /  illuminates yellow.



Illuminates briefly when the ignition is switched on.

May illuminate together with other control indicators and a corresponding message in the Driver Information Centre.

Seek the assistance of a workshop immediately.



Illuminates permanently when the ignition is switched on.

A fault of the electric engine or the high voltage battery has been detected.

Seek the assistance of a workshop immediately.

Stop engine

STOP illuminates red.

Illuminates briefly when the ignition is switched on.

Illuminates together with other control indicators, accompanied by a warning chime and a corresponding message in the Driver Information Centre.

Stop engine immediately and seek the assistance of a workshop.

System check

 illuminates yellow or red.

Illuminates yellow

A minor engine fault has been detected.

Illuminates red

A major engine fault has been detected.

Stop engine as soon as possible and seek the assistance of a workshop.

Brake and clutch system

 illuminates red.

The brake and clutch fluid level is too low.

Warning

Stop. Do not continue your journey. Consult a workshop.

Parking brake

 illuminates red.

Illuminates when the manual parking brake is applied and ignition is switched on ⇨ 238.

Electric parking brake

 illuminates or flashes red.

Illuminates

Electric parking brake is applied ⇨ 238.

Flashes

Electric parking brake is not applied automatically. The application or the release is faulty.

Warning

Have the cause of the fault remedied immediately by a workshop.

 illuminates yellow.

Illuminates

Automatic operation is deactivated or faulty. Activate automatic operation again or have the cause remedied by a workshop in the event of a fault.

Automatic operation ⇨ 238.

Electric parking brake fault

 illuminates yellow.

Illuminates

Electric parking brake has a fault ⇨ 238.

⚠ Warning

Have the cause of the fault remedied immediately by a workshop.

Antilock brake system (ABS)

 illuminates yellow.

Illuminates for a few seconds after the ignition is switched on. The system is ready for operation when the control indicator extinguishes.

If the control indicator does not extinguish after a few seconds, or if it illuminates while driving, there is a fault in the ABS. The brake system remains operational but without ABS regulation.

Antilock brake system ⇨ 238.

Gear shifting

▲ or ▼ with a number beside it is indicated when gearshifting is recommended for fuel saving reasons.

Overload indicator

 illuminates.

Illuminates when the overload indicator detects an exceeding of the maximum authorised weight ⇨ 74.

Descent control system

 illuminates or flashes green.


Illuminates green

The system is switched on and ready to operate.

Flashes green

The system is in operation.

Lane keep assist

 illuminates green or yellow, or flashes yellow.

Illuminates green

The system is switched on and ready to operate.

Illuminates yellow


The system approaches a detected lane marking without using the turn light in that direction.

Flashes yellow

The system recognizes that the lane is departed significantly.

Lane keep assist ⇨ 280.

Electronic Stability Control and Traction Control system

 illuminates or flashes yellow.

Illuminates

A fault in the system is present. Continued driving is possible. Driving stability, however, may deteriorate depending on road surface conditions.

Have the cause of the fault remedied by a workshop.

Flashes

The system is actively engaged. Engine output may be reduced and the vehicle may be braked automatically to a small degree.

Electronic Stability Control and Traction Control system ↪ 242.

Selective ride control ↪ 244.

Engine coolant temperature

● illuminates red.

Illuminates when the engine is running

Stop, switch off engine.

Caution
Coolant temperature too high.

Check coolant level immediately ↪ 307.


If there is sufficient coolant, consult a workshop.

Preheating

☞ illuminates yellow.

Preheating of diesel engine is activated. Only activates when outside temperature is low. Start the engine when control indicator extinguishes.

Exhaust filter

☞ or  illuminates yellow, accompanied by a message in the Driver Information Centre.

The exhaust filter requires cleaning.

Continue driving until the control indicator extinguishes.

Illuminates temporarily

Start of saturation of the exhaust filter. Start cleaning process as soon as possible by driving at a vehicle speed of at least 40 mph.

Illuminates constantly

Indication of a low additive level. Seek the assistance of a workshop.

Exhaust filter ↪ 226.

AdBlue

 flashes or illuminates yellow.

Illuminates yellow

The remaining driving range is between 500 miles and 1500 miles.

Flashes yellow

The remaining driving range is between 0 miles and 500 miles.

AdBlue level is low. Refill AdBlue soon to avoid prevention of the engine start.

AdBlue ↪ 227.

Deflation detection system

(↓) illuminates or flashes yellow.

Illuminates

Tyre pressure loss in one or more wheels. Stop immediately and check tyre pressure.

Flashes

Fault in system. Consult a workshop.

Deflation detection system ↪ 323.

Engine oil pressure

 illuminates red.

Illuminates when the ignition is switched on and extinguishes shortly after the engine starts.

Illuminates when the engine is running

Caution

Engine lubrication may be interrupted. This may result in damage to the engine and / or locking of the drive wheels.

1. Select neutral gear.
2. Move out of the flow of traffic as quickly as possible without impeding other vehicles.
3. Switch off ignition.

Warning

When the engine is off, considerably more force is needed to brake and steer. During an Autostop the brake servo unit will still be operational.

Do not remove key until vehicle is stationary, otherwise the steering wheel lock could engage unexpectedly.

Keep engine turned off and let the vehicle be towed to a workshop.

Low fuel

● illuminates yellow.

Level in fuel tank is too low.

Refuelling ⇨ 294.

Bleeding the diesel fuel system
⇨ 312.

Charging cable connected

 illuminates red.

The vehicle plug of the charging cable is still connected to the charge port. The vehicle cannot be started.

Disconnect the vehicle plug from the charge port and close the charge port flap.

Charging ⇨ 285.

Vehicle ready


READY illuminates green. The vehicle is ready to be driven.

Reduced engine power

 illuminates yellow.

The charging level of the high voltage battery is low. Only reduced engine power is available.

Autostop

 illuminates or flashes green.

Illuminates green

Engine is in an Autostop.

Flashes green

Autostop is temporarily unavailable, or Autostop mode is invoked automatically.

Stop-start system ⇨ 222.

Exterior light

☞☞ illuminates green.

The exterior lights are on ⇨ 110.

High beam

☞☞☞ illuminates blue.

Illuminates when high beam is on, during headlight flash ⇨ 111.

Low beam

☞☞☞ illuminates green.

Illuminated when low beam is on.

High beam assist

☞☞☞ illuminates green.

The high beam assist is activated ⇨ 111.

LED headlights

🔑 illuminates and a warning message is displayed in the Driver Information Centre.

Seek the assistance of a workshop.

Front fog lights

☞☞☞ illuminates green.

The front fog lights are on ⇨ 114.

Rear fog light

☞☞☞ illuminates yellow.

The rear fog light is on ⇨ 114.

Rain sensor

☞☞☞ illuminates green.

Illuminated when rain sensor position on wiper lever is selected.

Cruise control

☞☞☞ illuminates white or green.

Illuminates white

The system is on.

Illuminates green

Cruise control is active. Set speed is indicated in the Driver Information Centre.

Cruise control ⇨ 246.

Adaptive cruise control

☞☞☞ illuminates white or green.

☞☞☞ illuminates in the Driver Information Centre.

☞☞☞ illuminates white

The system is on.

☞☞☞ illuminates green

Adaptive cruise control is active.

When Adaptive cruise control is on or active, ☞☞☞ with the set speed is indicated in the Driver Information Centre.


Adaptive cruise control ⇨ 251.


Pedestrian safety alert fault

☞☞☞ illuminates yellow.


The pedestrian safety alert is not working.

Side blind spot alert

 illuminates continuously green in the instrument cluster.

The system is active  270.


Active emergency braking

 illuminates or flashes yellow.

Illuminates

The system has been deactivated or a fault has been detected.

Additionally, a warning message is displayed in the Driver Information Centre.


Check the reason of the deactivation  258 and in case of a system fault, seek the assistance of a workshop.

Flashes

The system is actively engaged.



Depending on the situation, the vehicle may automatically brake moderately or hard.

Forward collision alert  257.

Front pedestrian protection  262.

Active emergency braking  258.

Speed limiter

 illuminates in the Driver Information Centre when speed limiter is active. Set speed is indicated alongside  symbol.

Speed limiter  248.

Door open

 illuminates red.

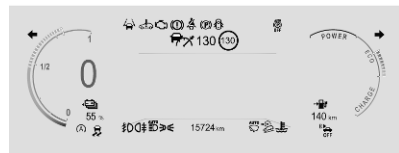
A door or the tailgate is open.

Displays

Driver Information Centre



Depending on the version, the Driver Information Centre may vary.



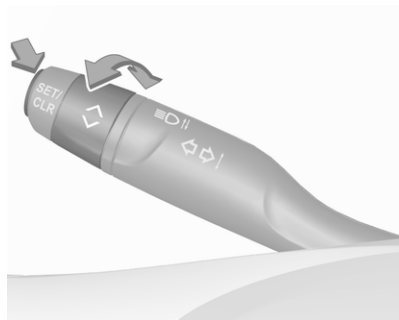
In addition to warning lights, gauges and indicators, the following information is available:

- overall and trip odometer
- digital speed indication
- trip / autonomy information menu
- gear shift indication

- service information
- vehicle and warning messages
- driver assistance systems
- pop-up messages

Selecting menus and functions

The menus and functions can be selected via the buttons on the indicator lever.



Turn the adjuster wheel to select a page.

Press **SET / CLR** to select, confirm or reset a function.

Vehicle and service messages are popped up in the Driver Information Centre, if required. Scroll messages by turning the adjuster wheel. Confirm messages by pressing **SET / CLR**.

Depending on version, some menu such as service information or AdBlue level range can be selected via the **CHECK** button.

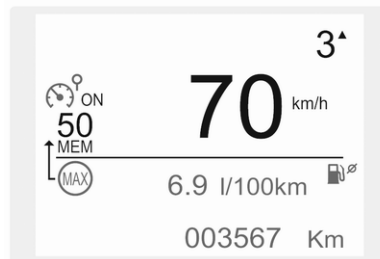


Press **CHECK** to switch between the respective menus.

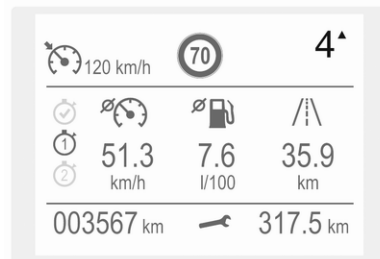
Vehicle messages ↗ 106.

Trip / autonomy information menu

Midlevel



Uplevel



Digital

Different pages with combined information can be selected.


Turn the adjuster wheel to select a page.

Information page:

Fuel range

Range is calculated from current fuel level and current consumption. The display shows average values.

After refuelling, the range is updated automatically after a brief delay.

When the fuel level is low, a message appears on the display and the control indicator ● or  in the fuel gauge illuminates ⇨ 97.

Instantaneous Fuel Consumption

Display of the instantaneous consumption.

Electric autonomy

The electric autonomy is calculated from current charging status of the high voltage battery and current consumption. The display shows average values.

After recharging, the range is updated automatically after a brief delay.

High voltage battery gauge ⇨ 97.

Autostop time counter

A time counter calculates the time spent in Autostop during a journey. It resets to zero every time the ignition is switched on.

Trip 1 / Trip 2 page:

Average speed

Display of average speed. The measurement can be reset at any time.

Average fuel consumption

Display of average consumption. The measurement can be reset at any time and starts with a default value.

Average consumption of electric energy

Display of average consumption. The measurement can be reset at any time and starts with a default value.

Distance travelled

Displays the current distance for the respective trip since the reset.

The values of the respective trip page can be reset by pressing **SET / CLR** for a few seconds.

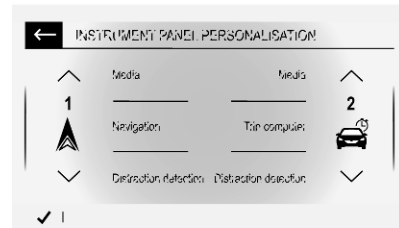
Compass page

Displays the geographic direction of driving.

Personalised view

Personalised views can be selected by turning the adjuster wheel.

The personalised views can be adjusted in the settings menu in the Info Display.



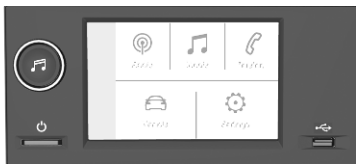
Choose the content, e.g. the navigation map or current trip information, and confirm the settings.

Info Display


The Info Displays can indicate:


- time ↷ 83
- outside temperature ↷ 82
- date ↷ 83
- Infotainment system, see description in the Infotainment system section
- indication of rear view camera ↷ 276
- indication of panoramic view system ↷ 273
- indication of parking assist instructions ↷ 263
- navigation, see description in the Infotainment system section
- vehicle and system messages ↷ 106
- settings for vehicle personalisation ↷ 107

Radio (Infotainment system)




Press  to switch on the display.

Touch  to select system settings (units, language, time and date).

Touch  to select vehicle settings or driving functions.

Confirm a required function or selection by touching.

Touch  on the display to return to the previous page.

Multimedia / Multimedia Navi Pro

The illustrations show different variants of the infotainment system.




Selecting menus and settings


There are three options to operate the display:

- via buttons next to the display
- by touching the touchscreen with the finger
- via speech recognition

Button and touch operation

Press  to switch on the display.

Press  to select system settings (units, language, time and date).

Press  to select vehicle settings or driving functions.

Touch required menu display icon or a function with the finger.

Confirm a required function or selection by touching.

Touch ← or ✕ on the display to exit a menu without changing a setting.

For further information, see Infotainment system section.

Speech recognition

Description see Infotainment system section.

Flow

Notice

On vehicles equipped with the **Multimedia** infotainment system, this menu can only be used via the MyVauxhall App.

This menu displays the current energy flow within the electric system.



1. Press .
2. Select **Flow**.

Different colours show the energy flow.

- green: electric engine operating
- blue: regenerating energy

Average consumption


Notice

On vehicles equipped with the **Multimedia** infotainment system, this menu can only be used via the MyVauxhall App.

This menu displays the average power consumption during the current trip.

- green: electric energy consumed
- blue: electric energy generated from the braking and deceleration phases of the vehicle used to recharge the battery

The current trip is subdivided into time steps. For each time step, the average consumption is displayed. The time steps can be modified.

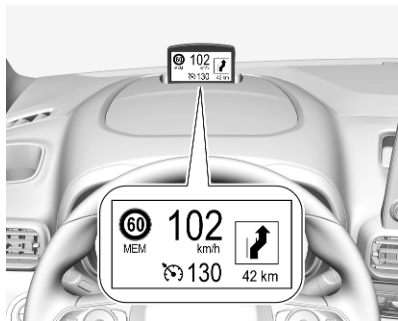
1. Press .
2. Select **Statistics**.
3. Press + and - to modify the time steps.

Vehicle personalisation ⇨ 107.

Head-up display

The head-up display displays driver information concerning the instrument cluster onto a foldable projection plane on the driver's side.

The information appears as an image projected from a lense in the instrument panel onto the projection plane directly ahead in driver's view. The image appears focused out toward the front of the vehicle.



Head-up display shows:

- vehicle speed
- speed limits detected by the speed sign recognition
- set speed of speed limiter
- set speed of cruise control
- forward collision alert
- navigation information.



Switching on

Press to switch on the head-up display.

Adjust position of head-up display image

Press or to centre the image. It can only be adjusted up and down, not side to side.

Warning

If the head-up display image is too bright or too high in your field of view, it may obstruct your view

when it is dark outside. Be sure to keep the head-up display image dim and placed low in your field of view.

Adjust brightness

The head-up display image will automatically dim and brighten to compensate for outside lighting. Brightness can also be adjusted manually as needed:

Press to brighten the display. Press to dim the display.

The image can temporarily illuminate depending on angle and position of sunlight.

Switching off

Press and hold to turn the head-up display off.

Language

Preferred language can be set in vehicle personalisation menu 107.

Units

Units can be changed in vehicle personalisation menu ↗ 107.

Care of head-up display

Clean the screen of the head-up display with a soft cloth sprayed with glass cleaner. Wipe the lens gently, then dry it.

System limitations

Head-up display may not operate properly when:

- The lens in the instrument panel is covered by objects or not clean.
- Display brightness is too dim or bright.
- Image is not adjusted to the proper height.
- The driver wears polarized sunglasses.

If the head-up image is not correct for other reasons, contact a workshop.

Rear view display


The rear view display is located at the position of the interior mirror.

It provides the following views:

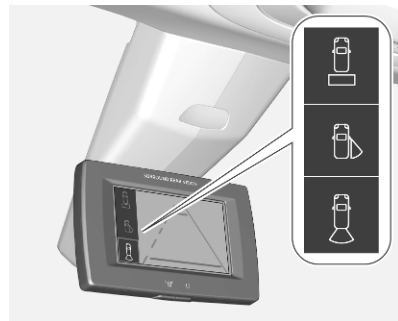
- standard rear view ↗ 26
- close rear view ↗ 276
- passenger side view ↗ 272


Switching on



Press  and confirm the message with .

Selecting a view



Select the standard rear view or passenger side view by pressing the  on the bottom side.

Close rear view is automatically activated when reverse gear is engaged.

Switching off

Press .

Vehicle messages

Messages are indicated in the Driver Information Centre, in some cases together with a warning chime.



Press **SET / CLR** to confirm a message.

Vehicle and service messages

The vehicle messages are displayed as text. Follow the instructions given in the messages.

Messages in the Colour Info Display

Some important messages may appear additionally in the Info Display. Some messages only pop-up for a few seconds.

Warning chimes

The warning chime regarding not fastened seat belts has priority over any other warning chime.

Whenever a warning chime sounds, pay attention to the messages displayed and the warning lights in the Driver Information Centre.

When starting the engine or whilst driving

The warning chime regarding not fastened seat belts has priority over any other warning chime.

- If a seat belt is not fastened.
- If a door or the tailgate is not fully closed.
- If a certain speed is exceeded with parking brake applied.

- If cruise control deactivates automatically.
- If a programmed speed or speed limit is exceeded.
- If a warning message appears in the Driver Information Centre.
- If the electronic key is not in the passenger compartment.
- If the parking assist detects an object.
- If an unintended lane change occurs.
- If the exhaust filter has reached the maximum filling level.

If several warnings appear at the same time, only one warning chime will sound.

When the vehicle is parked and / or the driver's door is opened

- With exterior lights on.

During an Autostop

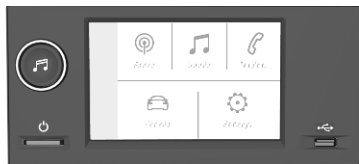
- If the driver's door is opened.
- If any condition for a restart of the engine is not fulfilled.

Vehicle personalisation

The vehicle's behaviour can be personalised by changing the settings in the Info Display.

Some functions are only displayed or active when the engine is running.


Radio (Infotainment system)



Touch  to display the vehicle personalisation menu.


Multimedia



Touch  to display the vehicle personalisation menu.

Multimedia Navi Pro



Touch  to display the vehicle personalisation menu.

Telematics services

Emergency call

Notice

In order to be available and operational, the system requires functioning vehicle electrics, mobile service and GPS or GLONASS satellite link. Depending on equipment, a backup battery is used.

Notice

The service is only available for markets where it is legally required. Furthermore, it depends on the availability of the emergency centres and the infrastructure in the country.

Status LED in the overhead console

Illuminates green and red and extinguishes after a short time, when the ignition is switched on: the system works properly.

Illuminates red: fault in the system. Contact a workshop.

Flashes red: backup battery needs replacement. Contact a workshop.

Emergency call

The emergency call function will establish a connection to the nearest public safety answering point (PSAP). A minimum set of data including vehicle and location information will be sent to the PSAP.

In case of an emergency, press the red **SOS** button in the overhead console for more than two seconds. The LED flashes green to confirm that a connection to the nearest PSAP is being established. The LED illuminates steadily as long as the call is active.

Pressing the **SOS** button immediately a second time will terminate the call. The LED switches off.

Automatic crash notification

In case of an accident with airbag deployment and without damage of needed hardware, an automatic emergency call is established and an automatic crash notification will be transmitted to the next PSAP.

Vauxhall Connect

Vauxhall Connect comprises multiple connected services accessible via app, online or within the vehicle.

Notice

Full functionality of Vauxhall Connect is subject to registration and proper activation.

Connected services may include live navigation such as online traffic information and vehicle status and information such as maintenance alerts.

Services accessible within the vehicle also include emergency call and breakdown call. These functions are automatically activated. Terms and conditions apply.

Emergency call ⇨ 108.


Breakdown call

Pressing the  button in the overhead console for more than two seconds connects to a roadside assistance service provider.

For information about coverage and scope of services of the roadside assistance, please refer to the information provided by the Vauxhall Retailer with the order form.

Privacy settings

Privacy settings of Vauxhall Connect can be configured. This will impact the set of data being sent, e.g., in case a breakdown call is triggered. The emergency call function will not be impacted.

Depending on version, the privacy settings can be changed by simultaneously pressing  and **SOS** in the overhead console or via the system settings menu in the Info Display.

Lighting

Exterior lighting	110
Light switch	110
Automatic light control	111
High beam	111
High beam assist	111
Headlight flash	112
Headlight range adjustment ...	113
Headlights when driving	
abroad	113
Daytime running lights	113
Hazard warning flashers	113
Turn lights	114
Front fog lights	114
Rear fog light	114
Parking lights	115
Reversing lights	115
Misted light covers	115
Interior lighting	115
Instrument panel illumination	
control	115
Interior lights	116
Reading lights	116
Sunvisor lights	116
Lighting features	117
Centre console lighting	117

Entry lighting	117
Exit lighting	117
Vehicle locator lighting	118
Peripheral lighting	118
Battery discharge protection	118

Exterior lighting


Light switch



Turn light switch:

AUTO : automatic light control
switches automatically
between daytime running
light and headlight

 : sidelights

 : headlights

When switching on the ignition,
automatic light control is active.

Control indicator  98.

Tail lights

Tail lights are illuminated together with low/high beam and sidelights.

Automatic light control



When the automatic light control function is switched on and the engine is running, the system switches between daytime running lights and headlights automatically depending on the external lighting conditions and information given by the wiper system.

Make sure the sensor is not blocked
 ⇨ 77, ⇨ 26.

Daytime running light ⇨ 113.

Automatic headlight activation

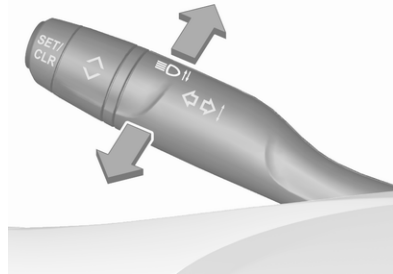
During poor lighting conditions the headlights are switched on.

Additionally, headlights are switched on if the windscreen wipers have been activated for several wipes.

Tunnel detection

When a tunnel is entered, headlights are switched on immediately.

High beam



Push lever to switch from low to high beam.

Pull lever to deactivate high beam.

High beam assist

Once activated, the high beam assist switches high beam automatically on and off depending on vehicle speed and detected objects by the camera in the windscreen. This provides the best light distribution to the driver in each situation while avoiding dazzling other road users.

This feature automatically activates the high beam at night when vehicle is faster than 15 mph.

It switches automatically back to low beam when:


- A sensor detects the lights of oncoming or preceding vehicles.
- Driving in urban areas.
- The vehicle is slower than 9 mph.
- It is foggy or snowy.
- Front or rear fog lights are switched on.



If there are no restrictions detected, the system switches back to high beam.

Activation

Indicator lever with button



Activate high beam assist by pressing  once.


The green control indicator  illuminates continuously when the assist is activated, the blue one  illuminates when high beam is on.

Control indicator  ↪ 98.

Deactivation

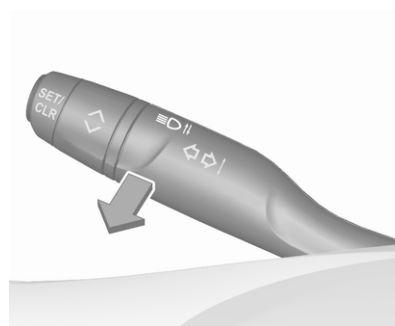
With high beam on, pull the indicator lever once to deactivate high beam assist. If a headlight flash is activated when the high beam is off, the high beam assist will remain activated.

Pushing the indicator lever to activate manual high beam will deactivate high beam assist. It is also deactivated when fog lights are switched on.

Press  once to deactivate high beam assist.

The latest setting of the high beam assist is being stored and remains set when the ignition is switched on again.

Headlight flash




To activate the headlight flash, pull lever.

Pulling lever deactivates high beam.

Headlight range adjustment

Manual headlight range adjustment



To adapt headlight range to the vehicle load to prevent dazzling: turn thumb wheel  to required position.

- 0 : front seats occupied
- 1 : all seats occupied
- 2 : all seats occupied and load compartment laden
- 3 : driver's seat occupied and load compartment laden

Headlights when driving abroad

When driving in countries where traffic drives on the opposite side of the road, the headlights do not have to be adjusted.

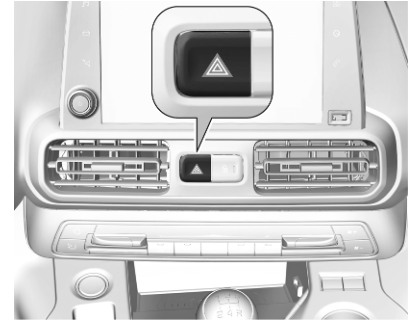
Daytime running lights

Daytime running lights increase visibility of the vehicle during daylight.

They are switched on automatically when the engine is running.


The system switches between daytime running lights and low beam automatically, depending on the lighting conditions.

Hazard warning flashers

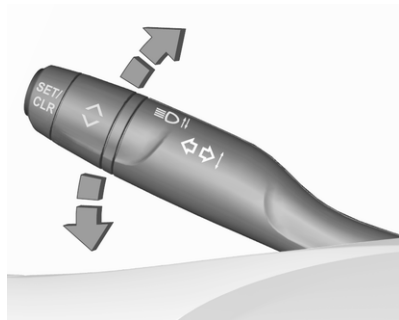


Hazard warning flashers are switched on automatically in the following situations:

- Braking in an emergency (depending on the force of deceleration).
- In the event of an accident.

They are switched off the first time you accelerate or if you press .

Turn lights



up : right turn lights
down : left turn lights

A resistance point can be felt when moving the indicator lever.

Constant flashing is activated when the indicator lever is being moved beyond the resistance point. It is deactivated when the steering wheel is moved in the opposite direction or indicator lever is manually moved back to its neutral position.

Activate temporary flashing by holding the indicator lever just before the resistance point. Turn lights will flash until indicator lever is being released.

To activate three flashes, tap the indicator lever briefly without passing the resistance point.

If you forget to cancel the turn lights for more than twenty seconds, the volume of the audible signal will increase if the speed is above 40 mph.

Front fog lights



Operated by pressing **F**.

Light switch in position **AUTO**: switching on front fog lights will switch headlights on automatically.

Rear fog light



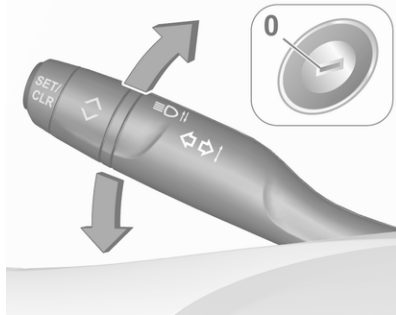
Operated by pressing **F**.

Light switch in position **AUTO**: switching on rear fog light will switch headlights on automatically.

Light switch in position **F**: rear fog light can only be switched on with front fog lights.

The vehicle rear fog light is deactivated when towing a trailer or a plug is connected with the socket, e.g. when a bicycle carrier is used.

Parking lights



When the vehicle is parked, the parking lights on one side can be activated:

1. Switch off ignition.
2. Move indicator lever all the way up (right parking lights) or down (left parking lights).

Confirmed by a signal and the corresponding turn lights control indicator.

Reversing lights

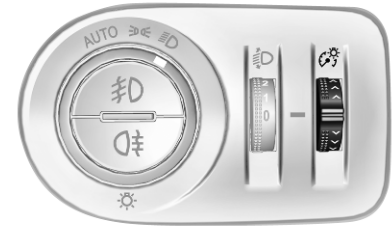
The reversing light comes on when the ignition is on and reverse gear is selected.

Misted light covers

The inside of the light housing may mist up briefly in poor, wet and cold weather conditions, in heavy rain or after washing. The mist disappears quickly by itself; to help switch on the headlights.

Interior lighting

Instrument panel illumination control



Brightness of the following lights can be adjusted when the exterior lights are on:

- instrument panel illumination
- Info Display
- illuminated switches and operation elements

Turn thumb wheel  and hold until the desired brightness is obtained.

Interior lights

During entry and exit of the vehicle, the front and rear courtesy lights automatically switch on and then off after a delay.


Notice

In the event of an accident with airbag deployment the courtesy lights are turned on automatically.

Front and rear courtesy light



Operate rocker switch:

 : automatic switching on and off

press  : on

press  : off

Reading lights





Operated by pressing  and  in the courtesy lights.



Illustration shows rear courtesy lights.

Sunvisor lights

Illuminates when the cover is opened.

Lighting features

Centre console lighting

A spotlight integrated in the overhead console illuminates the centre console when headlights are switched off.

The intensity can be adjusted in the vehicle personalisation ↻ 107.

Entry lighting

Welcome lighting

Some or all of the following lights are switched on for a short time by unlocking the vehicle with the radio remote control:

- headlights
- tail lights
- interior lights

The number of activated lights depends on the surrounding light conditions.

The lighting switches off immediately when the ignition is switched on.

Starting off ↻ 218.

This function can be activated or deactivated in the vehicle personalisation ↻ 107.

The following lights will additionally switch on when the driver's door is opened:

- illumination of some switches
- Driver Information Centre

Exit lighting

The following lights are switched on if the key is removed from the ignition switch:

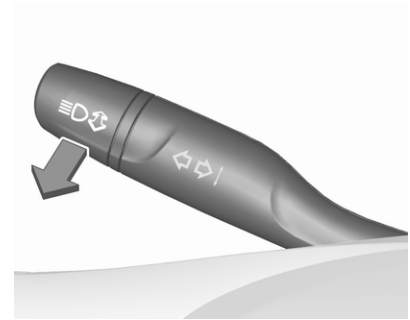
- interior lights
- instrument panel light

They will switch off automatically after a delay. This function works only in the dark.

Path lighting

Headlights, tail lights and number plate lights illuminate the surrounding area for an adjustable time after leaving the vehicle.

Activating



1. Switch off the ignition.
2. Open the driver's door.
3. Pull the indicator lever.
4. Close the driver's door.

If the driver's door is not closed, the lights switch off after two minutes.

Exit lighting is switched off immediately if the indicator lever is pulled while the driver's door is open.

This function can be activated or deactivated in the vehicle personalisation ↻ 107.

Info Display ↻ 102.

Vehicle locator lighting


This function allows you to locate your vehicle, e.g., in weak lighting conditions using the remote control. The headlights come on and the turn lights flash for 10 seconds.


Press  on the remote control.

The vehicle must be locked more than 5 seconds.

Peripheral lighting

Peripheral lighting allows you to switch on the position lights, low beam and number plate lighting using the remote control.

Press  on the remote control to switch on peripheral lighting.

Press  a second time to switch off peripheral lighting.

Battery discharge protection

To prevent discharge of the vehicle battery when the ignition is switched off, some interior lights are switched off automatically after some time.

Infotainment system

Multimedia Navi Pro	119
Audio	131
External devices	134
Navigation	137
Speech recognition	148
Phone	150
Multimedia	155
Audio	165
External devices	168
Speech recognition	170
Phone	172
Touchscreen Radio	177
Audio	181
Speech recognition	183
Phone	183
Radio	185
Audio	194
External devices	196
Speech recognition	198
Phone	198

Multimedia Navi Pro

Introduction

Important information on operation and traffic safety

Warning

Drive safely at all times. Only operate the Infotainment system if the traffic conditions allow a safe usage.

In the interest of safety, it might be appropriate to stop the vehicle before operating the Infotainment system (e.g. for entries of addresses).

Warning

The usage of the navigation system does not release the driver from the responsibility for a correct, vigilant attitude in road traffic. Always follow the applicable traffic rules.

Warning

In some areas one-way streets and other roads and entrances (e.g. pedestrian zones) that you are not allowed to turn into are not marked on the map. In such areas the Infotainment system may issue a warning that must be accepted. Here you must pay particular attention to one-way streets, roads and entrances that you are not allowed to drive into.

Radio reception






Radio reception may be disrupted by static, noise, distortion or loss of reception due to:





- changes in distance from the transmitter
- multi-path reception due to reflection
- shadowing

Multimedia Navi Pro

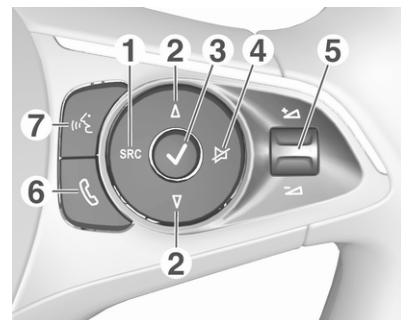
Control panel



- 1 
 - If switched off: switch power on / off
 - If switched on: mute system
 - Turn: adjust volume
- 2 
 - Display embedded navigation map 137
- 3 
 - Open vehicle settings menu 107
- 4 
 - Open audio menu:
 - Radio 131
 - CD player 134
 - External devices (USB, Bluetooth) 134
- 5 
 - Open apps menu 134

- 6 
 - Open settings menu
 - or open charging settings (electric vehicles)
- 7 
 - Open phone menu 150
- 8 
 - Info Display / touch screen with Home menu (Home menu only visible after 3-finger touch on screen)
- 9 
 - USB port 134

Steering wheel controls



- 1 **SRC (Source)**
 - Select audio source, confirm selection with ✓
 - Long press: mute system
- 2 **Δ / ▽**
 - Select next / previous preset radio station when radio active 131
 - or select next / previous track / picture when external devices active 134

or select next / previous entry in station list, media list, call / contacts list when operation started via steering wheel controls

Confirm selection with ✓

3 ✓

Confirm selected item

or open station list, media list

4 ✕

Activate / deactivate mute function

5 

Turn upwards / downwards: increase / decrease volume

6 

Short press: accept incoming call

Long press: reject incoming call, hang up call .. 150

or open call / contacts list ... 150

If phone call active: open call in progress menu

7 

Short press: activate embedded speech recognition

Long press: activate speech recognition in Apple CarPlay™ or Android™ Auto if phone connected via USB port 148


Control elements

The Infotainment system is operated via function buttons, a touch screen and menus that are shown on the display.

Inputs are made optionally via:

- the control panel on the Infotainment system
- the touch screen
- audio controls on the steering wheel
- the speech recognition ⇨ 148


Switching the Infotainment system on or off

Press . After switching on, the last selected Infotainment source becomes active.


Notice

Some functions of the Infotainment system are only available if ignition is switched on or engine is running.

Automatic switch-off

If the Infotainment system has been switched on pressing  while the ignition is switched off, it will switch off again automatically when the Eco mode becomes active.

Setting the volume


Turn . The current setting is shown on the display.


When the Infotainment system is switched on, the last selected volume is set.

Speed compensated volume

When the speed compensated volume is activated, the volume is adapted automatically to make up for the road and wind noise as you drive.


Mute

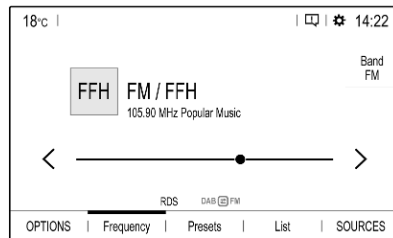
Press  to mute the Infotainment system.

To cancel the mute function, press  again. The last selected volume is set again.

Modes of operation

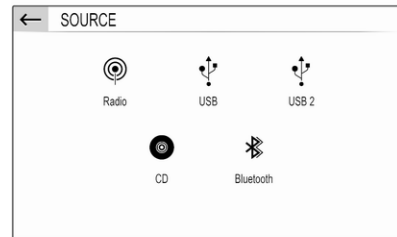
Audio-Media

Press  to display the main menu of the last selected audio mode.



Changing the media source

Select **SOURCES** to display the menu for media source selection.




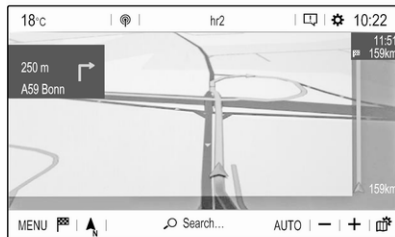
Select the desired media source.

For a detailed description of:

- Radio functions ⇨ 131
- CD player ⇨ 134
- External devices ⇨ 134

Navigation

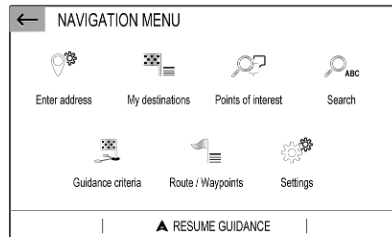
Press  to display the navigation map showing the area around the current location.



For a detailed description of basic functions of the navigation system ↪ 137.

Navigation menu

Select **MENU** to display the navigation menu.



The navigation menu serves as central entry point for:

- Address search and input
- Defining trips with several waypoints
- Defining criteria for route guidance
- Cancelling and resuming route guidance

Navigation ↪ 137

Phone

Before the phone function can be used, a connection has to be established between the Infotainment system and the mobile phone.

For a detailed description of preparing and establishing a Bluetooth connection between the Infotainment system and a mobile phone ↪ 150.


If the mobile phone is connected, press to display the main menu of the phone function.





For a detailed description of mobile phone operation via the Infotainment system ↪ 150.

Network and connected services

Press and then select **OPTIONS** to display the Bluetooth, network and connected services settings.


To connect the vehicle to a Wi-Fi network, touch . A list of all available Wi-Fi networks is displayed. It is also possible to share the Wi-Fi connection for other devices.

To update the service and connection status, go to the menu for connected services  and touch .

To use the connected services, make sure that data sharing and the vehicle position are activated in the privacy menu in the **System settings**.

Apps


To show specific apps of your smartphone on the display of the Infotainment system, connect your smartphone.

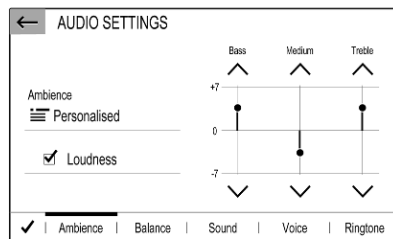
Press  to display the main menu of the apps mode.

Touch **Apple CarPlay** or **Android Auto**. A menu with different selectable apps is displayed.


For a detailed description ⇨ 134.

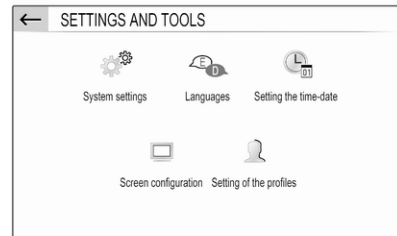
Settings

Press  and then select **Audio settings** to display the respective menu.




For a detailed description.

Press  and then **OPTIONS** to display a menu for various system-related settings.



For a detailed description.

Vehicle settings

Select  to open a menu for various vehicle-related settings.

Vehicle personalisation ⇨ 107

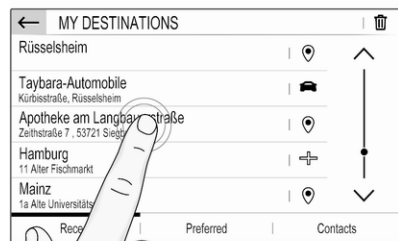
Menu operation

The display of the Infotainment system has a touch-sensitive surface that allows direct interaction with the displayed menu controls.

Caution



Do not use pointed or hard items like ballpoint pens, pencils or similar for touch screen operation.

Selecting or activating a screen button or menu item



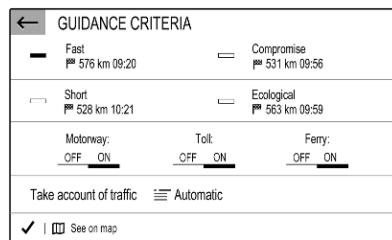
Touch a screen button or menu item.

Notice

Most icons displayed in a menu, like  or  in the illustrated example, serve as screen buttons that initiate certain actions if you touch them.

The corresponding system function is activated, a message is shown, or a submenu with further options is displayed.

← and ✓ screen buttons

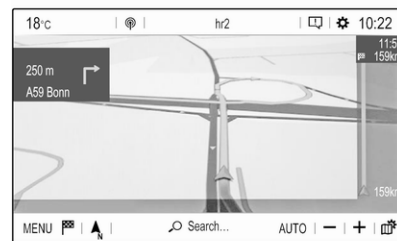


When operating the menus, touch ← in the respective submenu to return to the next higher menu level.

When no ← screen button is displayed, you are on the top level of the respective menu.

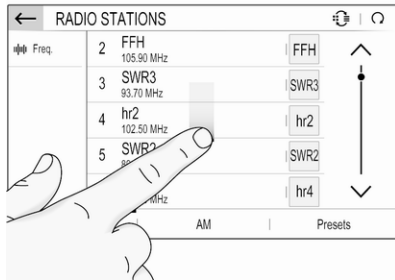
After selecting menu items or performing settings in a menu, touch ✓ to confirm your settings. Otherwise all performed selections or settings will be lost.

Shortcuts to important menus



The texts and icons displayed in the top line, of e.g. the navigation main menu, serve as shortcuts to some important menus. For example, touch the station name to open the station list menu.

Scrolling a list





If there are more items available than presentable on the screen, the list must be scrolled.

To scroll through a list of menu items, you may optionally:

- Place your finger anywhere on the screen and move it upwards or downwards.


Notice

Constant pressure must be applied and the finger must be moved at a constant speed.

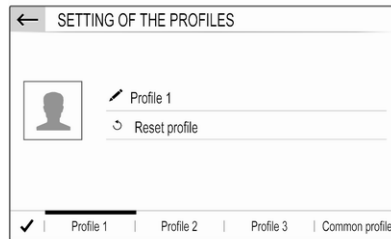
- Touch  or  at the top or bottom of the scroll bar.


- Touch anywhere on the guiding line of the scroll bar.
- Move the slider of the scroll bar up and down with your finger.

Updating a list

Touch  to manually update, e.g., station lists, contacts lists or destination lists.

Input fields and keyboards

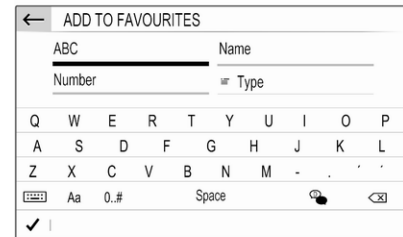


Input fields are indicated by .

Touch the input field to open a keyboard for text or number input.

Depending on the application or function currently active, different keyboards are displayed.

Keyboards for text input




Keyboards for text input may contain several input fields. To enable a field for text input, touch it.


To enter a character, touch the respective screen button. The character is entered upon release.


Touch and hold a letter screen button to display associated letters in a letter pop-up menu. Release and then select the desired letter.

To switch to the symbol keyboard, touch **0..#**.

To switch back to the letter keyboard or to switch between capital and small letters, touch **Aa**.

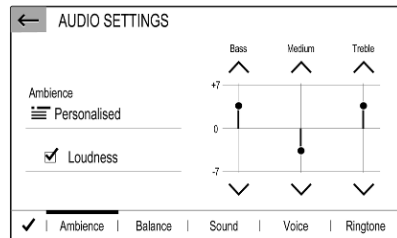
To switch the letter keyboard between normal order and alphabetical order, touch .

To delete the most recently entered character or symbol, touch .

To delete a character or symbol at any point of your input: touch at the desired point to place a blinking cursor, then touch .

Audio settings

Press , select **Audio settings** and then select the **Ambience** tab.



Several predefined settings are available to optimise the tone for a specific style of music (e.g. **Pop-Rock** or **Classical**).

To adjust the tone individually, select **Personalised**. Change the settings as desired and then confirm your settings.

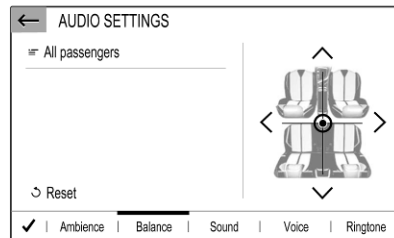
Notice

If you change the settings of a predefined setting, e.g. **Pop-Rock**, this settings will be applied to the **User** or **Personalised** setting.

Activating the **Loudness** function may optimise the tone at low volume levels.

Balance and fader

Select the **Balance** tab.



Several predefined settings are available to adjust the volume distribution inside the vehicle (e.g. **All passengers** or **Front only**).

To change the current setting, e.g. **All passengers**, select that setting and then select the desired new setting from the displayed list.

You may individually adjust the predefined settings.

To define the point in the passenger compartment where the volume is at its highest level, move the cursor in the illustration on the right side of the screen to the desired point.

To return to the default factory settings, select **Reset**.

Volume settings

Press , select **Audio settings** and then select the **Sound** tab.

Audible touch feedback

If the audible touch feedback function is activated, each touch of a screen button or menu item is indicated by a beeping sound.

To adjust the touch beep volume, activate **Touch tones** and then adjust the setting.

Speed compensated volume

Activate or deactivate **Volume linked to speed**.

If activated, the volume of the Infotainment system is adapted automatically to make up for the road and wind noise as you drive.

Speech output

Select the **Voice** tab.

Adjust the volume for all speech outputs of the system, e.g. traffic announcements, navigation messages etc.

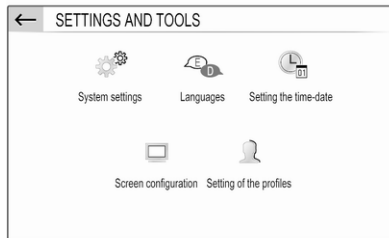
Ringtone

Select the **Ringtone** tab.

Adjust the ringtone volume of incoming calls.

System settings

Press  and then select **OPTIONS**.



Configuring the system

Select **System settings** to perform some basic system configurations, e.g.:

- Adjust the display of units for temperature or fuel consumption.
- Reset the system configuration to factory defaults.
- Update the installed software version.

Changing display language

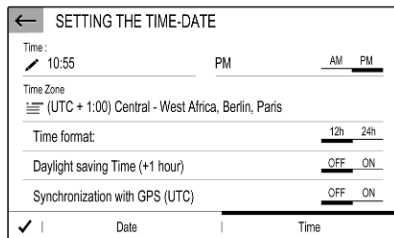
To adjust the language for the menu texts, select **Languages** and then select the desired language.

Notice

If the selected display language is supported by the embedded speech recognition, the language of the speech recognition will be changed accordingly; if not, embedded speech recognition will be not available.

Adjusting time and date

Select **Setting the time-date**.



Changing time and date formats

To change the time and date formats, select the respective tabs and then select the desired formats.

Setting time and date

By default the displayed time and date is automatically adjusted by the system.

To manually adjust the displayed time and date:

Select the **Time** tab.

Set **Synchronization with GPS (UTC)** to **OFF** and then select the **Time** field to set the desired time.

Select the **Date** tab and then select the **Date:** field to set the desired date.

Adjusting the screen

Select **Screen configuration**.

Text scroll function

Select the **Animation** tab.

If long texts on the screen should be scrolled automatically, activate **Automatic scrolling**.

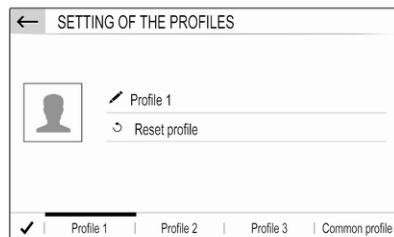
If **Automatic scrolling** is deactivated, long texts are truncated.

Adjusting the brightness

Select **Brightness** and set the brightness of the screen to the desired level.

Storing your personal settings

Select **Setting of the profiles**.



You can store a multitude of settings in a personal profile. For example, all current tone settings, all radio presets, one phone book, the map settings and your preferred addresses.

In case you share the vehicle with other people, this enables you to restore your personal settings from your profile at any time.


A maximum of three personal profiles may be stored.

Additionally, a **Common profile** is available. All settings done at any time are automatically stored in that profile. If no personal profile is activated, the **Common profile** is active.

Storing your personal profile

After performing all your personal settings:

Select one of the personal profile tabs.

Select the input field  and enter the desired name of your personal profile.


If you want to add a photo to the profile:

Connect a USB device with the desired photo stored on it to the USB port ↗ 134, touch the photo frame and then select the desired photo.

Confirm your selection to download the selected photo to the system.


Finally, confirm your inputs to store them in your personal profile.

Activating your personal profile

Press  and then select the tab with the name of your personal profile.

Activating the Common profile

If a personal profile is currently active:

Press  and then select **Deactivate profile**.

Resetting a personal profile

You can at any time reset a personal profile to restore the default factory settings on that profile.

Select the respective profile and then select **Reset profile**.


Resetting the Common profile

You can at any time reset the **Common profile** to restore the default factory settings on that profile.

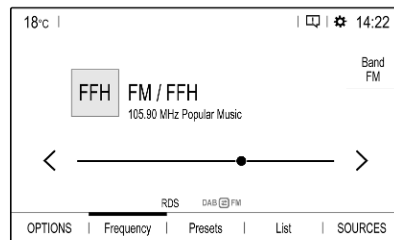
Select **Common profile** and then select **Reset the common profile**.

Audio

Activating the radio

Press . The audio main menu last selected is displayed.

If the radio main menu is not active, select **SOURCES** and then select **Radio**.



The station last played will be received.

Selecting a waveband

Repeatedly select **Band** to toggle between the different wavebands.

Searching for stations

Automatic station search

Briefly touch < or > to play the previous or next receivable station.

Manual station search

Press and hold < or >. Release when the required frequency has almost been reached.

A search is made for the next station that can be received and it is played automatically.

Station tuning

If you exactly know the reception frequency of a radio station, you may enter that frequency manually.

Select **OPTIONS**, select **Radio stations** and then select the desired waveband.

Select **Freq.**, enter the reception frequency and confirm your input.

If a station is receivable on that frequency, the respective station is played.

Station lists

In the station lists, all receivable radio stations within the current reception area are available for selection.

To display the station list of the waveband currently active, select **List**.

Select the desired station.

Update station lists

If the stations stored in the waveband-specific station list can no longer be received, the AM and the DAB station lists must be updated. The FM station list is updated automatically.

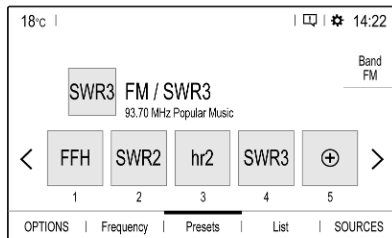
Select **OPTIONS**, select **Radio stations** and then select the desired waveband.

To start an update for the selected waveband, select **Q**.

Storing favourite stations

Up to 15 radio stations of all wavebands can be stored as favourites in the **Presets** list.

Select **Presets** to display the preset buttons.



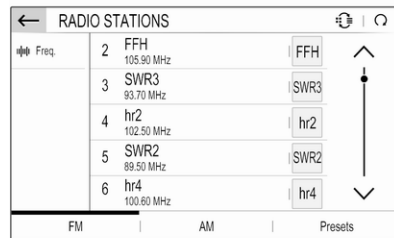
Storing the currently active station

Touch and hold the desired button for a few seconds. The respective frequency or station name is displayed on the button.

If a station is already stored on a preset button, that station will be overwritten by the new one.

Storing a station from a station list

Select **OPTIONS**, select **Radio stations** and then select the desired waveband.



Briefly touch the button next to the desired station. Alternatively, select **Q** to switch to the tiled view. Then briefly touch **Q** on the tile of the desired station.

Select **Add to favourites** and then touch and hold for a few seconds on the list row where you want to store the station.

If a station is already stored on a list row, that station will be overwritten by the new one.

Retrieving stations

In the radio main menu select **Presets** and then briefly touch the preset button of the desired station.

Radio data system

Radio data system (RDS) is a service of FM stations that considerably facilitates the finding of the desired station and its fault-free reception.

RDS configuration

Select **General** and then activate **Alternative frequency**.

If **Alternative frequency** is activated, **RDS** is displayed in the bottom line of the radio main menu.

Radio text

If RDS is activated, information on the radio programme currently active or the music track currently playing are displayed below the programme name.

To show or hide the information, activate or deactivate **Display radio text**.

Traffic announcements

Many RDS stations broadcast traffic news. If the traffic announcements function is activated, radio or media playback is interrupted for the duration of a traffic announcement.

Select **Announcements** and then activate or deactivate **Traffic announcement**.

If **Traffic announcement** is activated, **TA** is displayed in the bottom line of the radio main menu.

Digital audio broadcasting

Digital audio broadcasting (DAB) broadcasts radio stations digitally.

DAB stations are indicated by the programme name instead of the broadcasting frequency.

DAB Announcements

Besides their music programmes, a lot of DAB stations also broadcast announcements of various categories. If you activate some or all categories, the currently received DAB service is interrupted when an announcement of these categories is made.

In the radio main menu select **OPTIONS**, select **Radio settings** and then select **Announcements**.

Activate the desired announcement categories, e.g., **News** or **Weather**. Different announcement categories can be selected at the same time.

FM-DAB Linking

This function enables switching from an FM station to a corresponding DAB station and vice versa.

Switching from FM to DAB occurs as soon as a corresponding DAB station is available. Therefore, it is recommended to store favourite stations as DAB stations to reduce frequent switching.

Switching from DAB to FM occurs if the signal is too weak to be picked up by the receiver.

Activation

Precondition is that **Alternative frequency** is activated before FM-DAB Linking can be activated.

To activate FM-DAB Linking, select **OPTIONS** in the radio main menu and then select **FM-DAB Follow-up** in the **Radio settings**.

The following symbol will be displayed when FM-DAB Linking is activated:



Deactivation

To deactivate FM-DAB Linking, select **OPTIONS** in the radio main menu and then deselect **FM-DAB Follow-up** in the **Radio settings**.

FM-DAB Linking will automatically be deactivated when **Alternative frequency** is deactivated.

External devices

USB ports

A USB port is located on the control panel. Another USB port may be located in the storage compartment next to the Info Display.

Caution

To protect the system, do not use a USB hub.

Notice

The USB ports must always be kept clean and dry.

An MP3 player, USB device, SD card (via USB connector / adapter) or smartphone can be connected to each USB port.

The Infotainment system can play audio files or show picture files contained in USB devices.

When connected to a USB port, various functions of the devices mentioned above can be operated via the controls and menus of the Infotainment system.

Notice

Not all auxiliary devices are supported by the Infotainment system.

Notice

If two USB ports are available: To use the phone projection feature of the Infotainment system, the smartphone has to be connected to the USB port on the control panel. The USB port in the storage compartment cannot be used for Apple CarPlay.

Connecting / disconnecting a device

Connect one of the devices mentioned above to a USB port. If required, use the appropriate connection cable. The music function starts automatically.

Notice

If a non-readable USB device is connected, a corresponding error message appears and the Infotainment system automatically switches to the previous function.

To disconnect a USB device, select another function and then remove the USB device.

Caution

Avoid disconnecting the device during playback. This may damage the device or the Infotainment system.

Bluetooth audio streaming

Streaming allows you to listen to music from your smartphone.

For a detailed description on how to establish a Bluetooth connection ↗ 150.

If audio playback does not start automatically, it may be necessary to start the playback on the smartphone.

First adjust the volume on your smartphone (to a high level). Then adjust the volume of Infotainment system.

File formats

The audio equipment supports different file formats.

Activating the music function

Connecting the USB or Bluetooth device.

If device already connected, but playback of stored music files not active:

Press , select **SOURCES** and then select the respective source.

Playback of the audio tracks starts automatically.



Playback functions

Interrupting and resuming playback

Touch **II** to interrupt playback. The screen button changes to **▶**.

Touch **▶** to resume playback.

Playing the previous or next track

Touch **<** or **>**.


Fast forwarding and rewinding


Touch and hold **<** or **>**. Release to return to normal playback mode.


Alternatively, you can move the slider showing the current track position to the left or right.

Playing tracks randomly

Touch button repeatedly to toggle between the available random modes.


: play tracks of currently selected list (album, artist, etc.) in random order.


: play all tracks stored on connected device in random order.

: play tracks of currently selected list (album, artist, etc.) in normal playback mode.

Repeating tracks

Touch button repeatedly to switch repeat mode on or off.

: repeat tracks of currently selected list (album, artist, etc.).

: play tracks of currently selected list (album, artist, etc.) in normal playback mode.

Browse music functions

(only available for devices connected via USB)

You can have your music files sorted according to different criteria. Two options are available for browsing the music files stored on the connected USB device.

Browsing via main menu

If you want to change the currently active USB source, select **SOURCES** and then select the desired source. The respective main menu is displayed.

Select the button showing the currently selected sorting criteria, e.g. **Sort: Album** or **Sort: Artist**, and then select the desired new sorting criteria. A sorting process is performed.

Select **List** and then select the desired track.

Playback of the selected track is started.

Browsing via device menu

Select **OPTIONS** and then select **Music files**.

If you want to change the currently active USB source, select **Other**.

Select the desired sorting criteria, e.g. **Albums** or **Artists**, and then select the desired track.

Playback of the selected track is started.

Activating the picture viewer

Connecting the USB device.

If device already connected, but picture viewer not active:

Press , select **OPTIONS** and then select **Managing photos**.

Select the desired picture.

A slide show of all stored picture files starts automatically.




Touch the screen to display the menu bar.

Viewing the previous or next picture

Touch  or .

Starting or stopping a slide show

Select  to view the pictures stored on the USB device in a slide show.

Touch  to end the slide show.

Phone projection

The phone projection applications Apple CarPlay and Android Auto display selected apps from your smartphone on the Info Display and allow their operation directly via the Infotainment controls.

Check with the device's manufacturer if this function is compatible with your smartphone and if this application is available in the country you are in.

Preparing the smartphone

iPhone®: Make sure Siri® is activated on your phone.

Android phone: Download the Android Auto app to your phone from the Google Play™ Store.

Connecting the smartphone

iPhone

Connect the phone to the USB port.

If the phone is already connected via Bluetooth, upon connecting to the USB port and launching Apple CarPlay, the Bluetooth connection will disconnect.

Android phone

Connect the phone via Bluetooth ↗ 150 and then connect the phone to the USB port.


Starting phone projection

Press  and then touch

Apple CarPlay or Android Auto.

The phone projection screen displayed depends on your smartphone and software version.

Returning to the Infotainment screen

Press, e.g., the  button on the control panel.

Navigation

This chapter is about the embedded navigation system which guides to desired destinations.

The current traffic situation is taken into account in the route calculation. For this purpose, the Infotainment system receives traffic announcements in the current reception area via RDS-TMC.

The navigation system cannot, however, take into account traffic incidents, traffic regulations changed at short notice and hazards or problems that arise suddenly (e.g. road works).

Caution

The usage of the navigation system does not release the driver from the responsibility for a correct, vigilant attitude in road traffic. The relevant traffic regulations must always be followed. If a navigation instruction contradicts traffic regulations, the traffic regulations always apply.

Functioning of the navigation system

The position and movement of the vehicle are detected by the navigation system using sensors. The travelled distance is determined by the vehicle's speedometer signal, turning movements on bends by a sensor. The position is determined by the GPS (Global Positioning System) satellites.

By comparing the sensor signals with the digital maps, it is possible to determine the position with an accuracy of approx. 10 m.

The system will also work with poor GPS reception. However, the accuracy of the determination of the position will be reduced.

After the entry of the destination address or point of interest (nearest petrol station, hotel, etc.), the route is calculated from the current location to the destination selected.

Route guidance is provided by voice output and an arrow, as well as with the aid of a multi-colour map display.

Important information

TMC traffic information system and dynamic route guidance

The TMC traffic information system receives all current traffic information from TMC radio stations. This information is included in the calculation of the overall route. During this process, the route is planned so that traffic problems related to pre-selected criteria are avoided.

To be able to use TMC traffic information, the system must receive TMC stations in the relevant region.

Live navigation

When data sharing and the vehicle position are activated, the navigation system will show online traffic information as well as online information for parking, fuel prices and weather. The services can be stopped at anytime by deactivating data sharing and the vehicle position.

Data sharing and the vehicle position can be activated or deactivated via the privacy menu in the **System settings**.

Network and connected services
⇨ 119.

The privacy menu and the menu for connected services are also accessible via the message icon on the screen.

Map data

All required map data is stored within the Infotainment system.

Map updates are available at a Vauxhall Service Partner or at the MyVauxhall customer portal. To download the map updates from the Vauxhall customer portal, a MyVauxhall account and an empty USB stick with at least 32 GB memory and FAT 32 formatting are necessary.

Download and save the map data on a computer and unpack the data onto the USB stick.

To update the map data in the Infotainment system, connect the USB stick to the Infotainment system, select the navigation function and follow the steps on the Info Display.

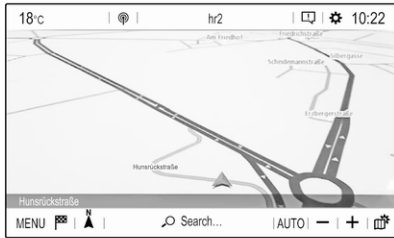
The installation of the map update will take up to 1 hour. Do not switch off the engine during the installation process.

Some functions of the Infotainment system, e.g. the navigation function, are not available during the installation process.

Information on the map display

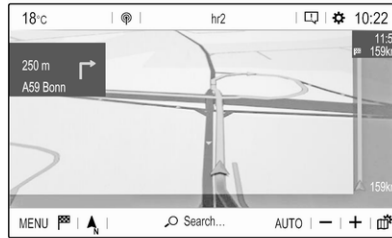
Press $\text{N} \leftarrow$ to display the navigation map showing the area around the current location.

Route guidance not active



- The map view is displayed.
- The current location is indicated by an arrow.
- The name of the street you are currently in is displayed at the bottom left of the map view.

Route guidance active



- The map view is displayed.
- The active route is indicated by a coloured line.
- The moving vehicle is marked by an arrow pointing into the direction of travel.
- The next turning manoeuvre is shown in a separate field at the top left of the map view.
Depending on the situation information on lane guidance or the second next turning

manoeuvre may be displayed additionally.

- The arrival time and the remaining distance to the destination is shown at the top right of the map view.

Customise the map display

Map views

Three different map views are available: **North orientation**, **Vehicle orientation** and **Perspective view**.

Repeatedly touch **A** to toggle between these map views.

Map colours

Depending on the external lighting conditions, the colouring of the map screen (light colours for the day and dark colours for the night) can be adapted.

Touch **☰** to display a menu on the right side of the screen.



Select **Map colour** repeatedly to toggle between light and dark colours.

POI (Points of Interest) icons on the map

POIs are points of general interest, e.g. petrol stations or car parks.

The display of POI categories shown on the map may be personally adapted.

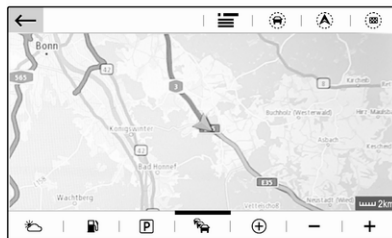
Activate the desired POI categories. The map view changes accordingly.

Alternatively, select **POI on map** to display a menu with a multitude of POI categories and subcategories to choose from. Activate the desired POI categories.


Traffic events

Traffic events may be indicated on the map. Additionally, information on these events may be displayed in a list.


Select **Consult map** to switch to an alternative map display with new menu options.




The map view is switched to **North orientation** mode and may display a greater part of the route.


Touch the traffic jam icon to show traffic events on the map. Touch  to show a list with information on these traffic events.

If you want to display a different map section:

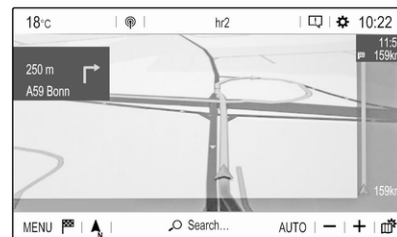
Touch  to show the area around the current location.

Touch  to show the entire route.

Touch  to show the area around the destination.

To return to the default navigation view, touch .

Autozoom function



If the autozoom function is activated (**AUTO** is displayed below the map view), the zoom level changes automatically when approaching a turning manoeuvre during active route guidance. This way, you always get a good overview of the respective manoeuvre.

If the autozoom function is deactivated, the selected zoom level remains the same during the whole route guidance process.

To activate or deactivate the function:

Select **MENU**, select **Settings** and then select the **Aspect** tab.

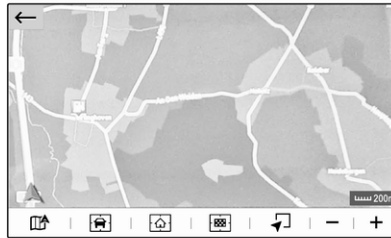
Activate or deactivate **Automatic zoom setting**.


Map manipulation

Moving visible map section

Place your finger anywhere on the screen and move it in the desired direction.


The map moves accordingly, displaying a new section. A new button bar is shown.



: show area around current location again.


: show area around home address.

: show area around destination.

To return to the default navigation view, select .


Centring visible map section

Touch the desired location on the screen to centre the map around this location.


A red  is displayed at the respective location and the corresponding address is shown on a label.

Manual zooming

To zoom in on a selected map location, place two fingers on the screen and move them away from each other.

Alternatively, touch  below the map view.

To zoom out and display a larger area around the selected location, place two fingers on the screen and move them towards each other.

Alternatively, touch  below the map view.

Showing an overview of the route

Touch , select **Consult map** and then touch .

The map view is switched to **North orientation** and shows an overview of the current route.



To return to the default navigation view, touch ←.

Voice guidance

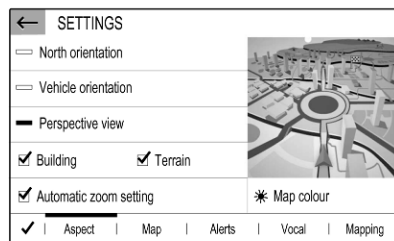
The route guidance process can be supported by voice prompts given out by the system.

To activate or deactivate the function: Select **MENU** in the navigation main menu, select **Settings** and then select the **Vocal** tab.

Activate or deactivate **Activate navigation messages**.

Navigation settings

Select **MENU** in the navigation main menu, and then select **Settings** to display the respective menu with a variety of navigation related settings.



Please explore the different settings. Some have already been described above, others are described in the following sections.

Selecting an address from the map

Touch the desired location on the map. The map centres around this location.

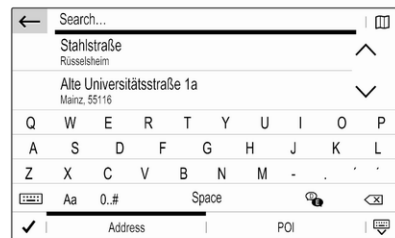
A red 📍 is displayed at the respective location and the corresponding address is shown on a label.

To start route guidance, select **A**.



For a detailed description on route guidance.

Quick address or POI search

Select **Search...** A menu with a list of recent destinations and a keyboard is displayed.



To refine the area for your address or POI search, select 📍 and then select the desired option.

To hide the keyboard and show the entire list, select . To show the keyboard again, select .

If you want to search for POIs (Points of Interest) only, select the **POI** tab.

Enter an address or search term. As soon as characters are entered an address search is performed and the list of found addresses is updated continuously.

Select the desired list item.

Depending on the current situation and your selection, the navigation system may react differently:

- If the selected list item is a valid destination address and route guidance is currently not active:
The navigation main menu is displayed again and route guidance is started.
For a detailed description on route guidance.
- If the selected list item is a valid destination address but route guidance is already active:
A message is displayed and you need to decide first if the old

destination should be replaced, or if you want to add the selected address as an intermediate destination to a waypoint trip. Detailed description on waypoint trips, see below.

Select the desired option.

- If the navigation system needs more detailed information for route calculation:

Enter a further search term to refine your search.

Detailed address entry

Select **MENU** and then select **Enter address** to display a keyboard for address entry.



As soon as characters are entered, an address search is started. Every additional character is considered in the matching process and a list of matching addresses is displayed.


Select the desired address or change your input to initiate a new search.

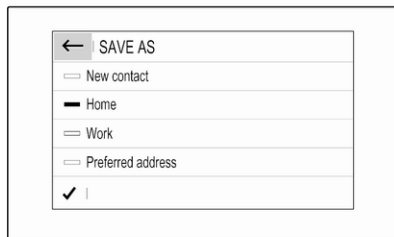
Continue with the address entry until the entire address you are searching for is found.

To start route guidance to the respective address, confirm your input.

For a detailed description on route guidance.

Storing your favourite addresses

If you want to store the entered address, select .



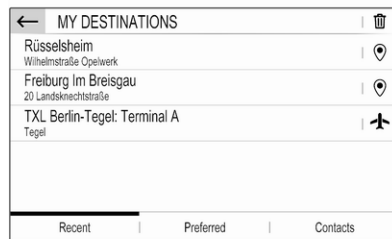
You may store the address as, e.g., your **Home** address or your **Work** address.

Select the desired option, confirm your selection and then enter a name for the address.

The stored address can then be easily selected as destination address via the destination lists **Preferred** or **Contacts**, see below.

Destination lists

Select **MENU** and then select **My destinations**.



Select **Recent** to display a list of all recently entered destinations.

Select **Preferred** to display all destinations which were stored before as home address, work address or preferred address.

Select **Contacts** to display a list with contact names and all related addresses stored before as personal contacts.

To start route guidance to the respective address, select a list entry.

For a detailed description on route guidance.

Points of interest


A point of interest (POI) is a specific location that might be of general interest, e.g. a petrol station, a parking area or a restaurant.

The data stored within the navigation system contains a great number of predefined POIs, which are indicated on the map (if activated).

Selecting a POI from the map

Touch the desired POI icon on the map. The map centres around this location.

Touch the icon again.


A red  is displayed at the respective location and the corresponding address is shown on a label.

To start route guidance, select **A**.

For a detailed description on route guidance.

Showing a list of POIs around a location

Touch the desired location on the map. The map centres around this location.

A red  is displayed at the respective location and the corresponding address is shown on a label.

Touch and hold .

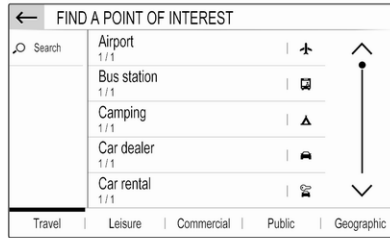
A list of POIs around the location is displayed.

Select the desired POI to start route guidance.

For a detailed description on route guidance.

Searching for POIs via categories

Select **MENU** and then select **Points of interest**.



Select a POI main category, e.g., **Travel** and then select a subcategory, e.g. **Airport**. A new menu is displayed.

Select a search area, e.g., **Around the vehicle** to refine the search.

After the POI search is performed, select the desired POI.

To search for POIs at another location, select **Address**.

To search for POIs via keyword (see below), select **Search**.

Searching via keyword

Select **MENU**, select **Search**, enter a keyword, e.g., "Station", enter or select a city name and confirm your input.

After the POI search is performed, select the desired POI.

Waypoint trips

A waypoint is an intermediate destination that is considered in the calculation of a route to its final destination. To create a waypoint trip, you may add one or several waypoints.

Enter or select the final destination of your waypoint trip and start route guidance.

While under active route guidance, select **MENU** and then select **Route / Waypoints**.

← ROUTE AND WAYPOINTS		↑↓
Add waypoint	BNJ Bonn-Hangelar 128 Richthofenstraße, Hangelar	1
Overview	CGN Köln Bonn Airport: Terminal 2 Kennedystraße, Gremel	2
Finish	Rüsselsheim Stahlstraße	3
Waypoints		Route

Select **Add waypoint** and then select an option for address entry, e.g. **Find POI**.

Enter or select a new address. The address is inserted into the list of waypoints.

If desired, enter further waypoints as described above.

If you want to change the order of the waypoints:

Touch ↑↓ and then touch the displayed arrows to move the list entries up or down.

Select **Calculate** to recalculate the route according to the changed order.

To return to the navigation main menu, select **Finish**.

To display a detailed route list of the waypoint trip, select the **Route** tab.

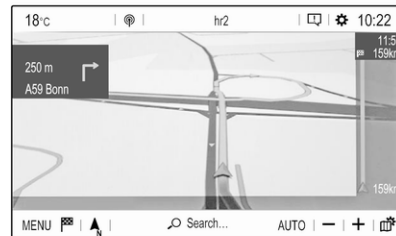
← ROUTE AND WAYPOINTS		↑↓	🗑️
Add waypoint	60 m Alexanderstraße Turn right	↗	↑ ↓
Overview	400 m B1/B5 Alexanderstraße Turn right	↘	
Finish	8 km Wexstraße, Tegel Turn right	↗	
	8 km A100, Magdeburg Bear left	↙	
	9 km A100	↑	
Waypoints		Route	

Route guidance

Route guidance is provided by the navigation system through visual instructions and voice prompts (voice guidance).

Visual instructions

Visual instructions are provided on the display.



Notice

When route guidance is active and you are not within the navigation application, turning manoeuvres are shown on the instrument cluster display.

Voice guidance

Navigation voice prompts announce which direction to follow, when approaching an intersection at which you need to turn.

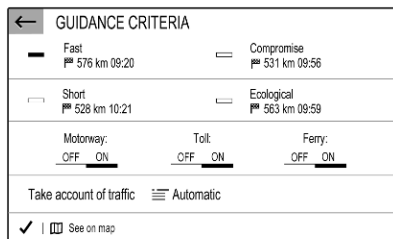
To activate or deactivate the voice prompts function select **MENU** in the navigation main menu, select **Settings**, select the **Vocal** tab and then activate or deactivate **Activate navigation messages**.

If voice prompts are activated you can additionally specify whether street names should be spoken or not.

To replay the last voice guidance instruction, touch the turn arrow on the left side of the screen.

Settings for route guidance

Select **MENU** in the navigation main menu and then select **Guidance criteria** to display the respective menu.



When the menu is opened, several optional routes are automatically calculated by the navigation system, e.g. the fastest route or the most ecological route.

To show the different optional routes on a map, select **See on map**.

If you want, e.g., avoid motorways on your route, set the respective option to **OFF**.

Take account of traffic

Traffic events are taken into consideration when the system determines a route to a destination.

During active route guidance, the route can be modified according to incoming traffic messages.

Three options are available for **Take account of traffic**:

If you want the system to automatically modify the route according to new traffic messages, select **Automatic**.

If you want to be consulted when a route is modified, select **Manual**.

If you do not want routes to be modified, select **None**.

Starting, cancelling, resuming route guidance

To start route guidance, enter or select a destination address. Depending on the situation, route

guidance may start automatically, or you may have to follow some instructions on the screen.

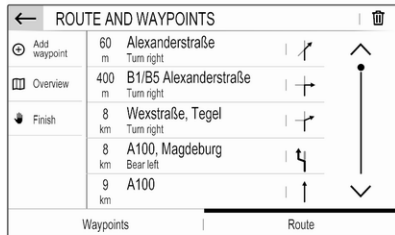
To cancel route guidance, select **MENU** in the navigation main menu and then select **STOP NAVIGATION**.

To resume a cancelled route guidance, select **MENU** in the navigation main menu and then select **RESUME GUIDANCE**.

Turn list

The next turning manoeuvre is displayed on the left side of the screen.

To display a list of all upcoming turns on the active route, select **MENU** in the navigation main menu, select **Route / Waypoints** and then select the **Route** tab.



To display a turning manoeuvre on the map, touch the turn arrow icon next to the desired list entry. The map jumps to the respective location on the map.



To display the previous or next turning manoeuvre on the map, touch < or >.

To avoid the route section currently displayed on the map, touch ↻.

If desired, further route sections may be selected to be avoided.

Confirm your selection(s).

Speech recognition

Embedded speech recognition

The embedded speech recognition of the Infotainment system enables you to operate various functions of the Infotainment system via voice input. It recognises commands and numeric sequences independently of the relevant speaker. The commands and numeric sequences can be spoken without a voice pause between the individual words.

In the event of incorrect operation or commands, the speech recognition gives visual and / or acoustic feedback and requests you to re-enter the desired command. Apart

from this, the speech recognition acknowledges important commands and will enquire if necessary.

In general, there are different ways to speak commands for performing the desired actions.

Notice

To ensure that conversations inside the vehicle do not lead to unintentional triggering of the system functions, the speech recognition does not start until it has been activated.

Important information

Language support

- Not all languages available for the display of the Infotainment system are also available for the speech recognition.
- If the display language currently selected is not supported by the speech recognition, speech recognition is not available.

In such a case, you need to select another language for the display if you want to control the Infotainment system via voice

input. To change the display language ↷ 119.

Address input of destinations in foreign countries

In case you want to enter the address of a destination located in a foreign country via voice input, you need to change the language of the Info-Display to the language of the foreign country.

E.g., if the display is currently set to English and you want to enter the name of a city located in France, you need to change the display language to French.

For changing the display language, see "Language" in chapter "System settings" ↷ 119.

Input order for destination addresses

The order in which the parts of an address need to be entered using the speech recognition system is dependent on the country where the destination is located.


If the speech recognition system rejects your address entry, repeat the command with a different order of the address parts.

Activating speech recognition

Notice

Speech recognition is not available during an active phone call.

Activation via the button on the steering wheel

Press  on the steering wheel.


The audio system mutes, a voice output message prompts you to say a command, and help menus with the most important commands currently available are shown on the display.

The speech recognition is ready for voice input, after a beep has been given.

You can now say a voice command to initiate a system function (e.g. playing a preset radio station).


Adjusting the volume of voice prompts

Press volume button on the steering wheel upwards (increase volume)

 or downwards (decrease volume)

.


Interrupting a voice prompt

As an experienced user, you can interrupt a voice prompt by briefly pressing  on the steering wheel.

Alternatively you can say "Set dialogue mode as expert".

A beep is heard immediately, and a command can be stated without having to wait.

Cancelling a dialogue sequence

To cancel a dialogue sequence and to deactivate the speech recognition, press  on the steering wheel.

If you do not say any command for a certain period of time, or if you say commands that are not recognised by the system, a dialogue sequence is automatically cancelled.

Operation via speech commands

Follow the instructions given by voice output and shown on the display.

For best results:

- Listen for the voice prompt and wait for the beep before saying a command or replying.
- Read the example commands on the display.
- The voice prompt can be interrupted by pressing ⌘ again.
- Wait for the beep and then speak the command naturally, not too fast, not too slow.

Usually commands can be spoken in a single command.

Voice pass-thru application

The voice pass-thru application of the Infotainment system allows access to the speech recognition commands on your smartphone.

Voice pass-through is available via the phone projection applications Apple CarPlay and Android Auto ⌘ 134.

Activating speech recognition

Press and hold ⌘ on the steering wheel until a speech recognition session is started.

Adjusting the volume of voice prompts

Turn ⏻ on the control panel or press volume button on the steering wheel upwards (increase volume) ⏮ or downwards (decrease volume) ⏭ .

Deactivating speech recognition

Press ⏻ on the steering wheel. The speech recognition session is ended.

Phone

The phone function provides you with the possibility of having mobile phone conversations via a vehicle microphone and the vehicle loudspeakers as well as operating the most important mobile phone functions via the Infotainment system in the vehicle. To be able to use the phone function, the mobile phone must be connected to the Infotainment system via Bluetooth.

Not all phone functions are supported by every mobile phone. The usable phone functions depend on the relevant mobile phone and network provider. You can find further information on this in the operating

instructions for your mobile phone, or you can enquire about them with your network provider.

Important information for operation and traffic safety

Warning

Mobile phones have effects on your environment. For this reason safety regulations and directions have been prepared. You should be familiar with the related directions before you use the telephone function.

Warning

Use of the hands-free facility while driving can be dangerous because your concentration is reduced when telephoning. Park your

vehicle before you use the hands-free facility. Follow the stipulations of the country in which you find yourself at present.

Do not forget to follow the special regulations that apply in specific areas and always switch off the mobile phone if the use of mobile phones is prohibited, if interference is caused by the mobile phone or if dangerous situations can occur.

Pairing a device

During the pairing process, PIN code exchange between the Bluetooth device and the Infotainment system and connection of the Bluetooth devices to the Infotainment system are carried out.

Important information



- Two paired Bluetooth devices can be connected to the Infotainment system at the same time. One device in hands-free mode, the other in audio streaming mode, see description

on Bluetooth profile settings below.


However, two devices cannot be used in hands-free mode at the same time.

- Pairing only needs to be carried out once, unless the device is deleted from the list of paired devices. If the device has been connected previously, the Infotainment system establishes the connection automatically.
- Bluetooth operation considerably drains the device's battery. Therefore, connect the device to the USB port for charging.

Pairing a new device

1. Activate the Bluetooth function of the Bluetooth device. For further information, see the operating instructions for the Bluetooth device.
2. If another Bluetooth device is already connected:
Press , select **OPTIONS**, select **Bluetooth connection** and then touch  **Search**.

If no Bluetooth device is currently connected:

Press  and then touch **Bluetooth search**.

A search for all Bluetooth devices in the near environment is performed.

3. Select the Bluetooth device you wish to pair from the displayed list.
4. Confirm the pairing procedure:
 - If SSP (secure simple pairing) is supported:
Confirm the messages on the Infotainment system and the Bluetooth device.
 - If SSP (secure simple pairing) is not supported:
On the Infotainment system: a message is displayed asking you to enter a PIN code on your Bluetooth device.
On the Bluetooth device: enter the PIN code and confirm your input.
5. Activate the functions you want the paired smartphone to perform

and confirm your settings. You can change these Bluetooth profile settings at any time, see below.

The Infotainment system and the device are paired.

- The phone book is downloaded automatically to the Infotainment system. Depending on the phone, the Infotainment system must be allowed access to the phone book. If required, confirm the messages displayed on the Bluetooth device.


If this function is not supported by the Bluetooth device, a corresponding message is displayed.

Operations on paired devices

Press , select **OPTIONS** and then select **Bluetooth connection**.


A list of all paired devices is displayed.

Changing the Bluetooth profile settings

Touch  next to the desired paired device.


Activate or deactivate the profile settings as desired and confirm your settings.

Connecting a paired device

Devices which are paired but not connected are identified by .



Select the desired device to connect it.


Disconnecting a device

The currently connected device is identified by .


Select the device to disconnect it.

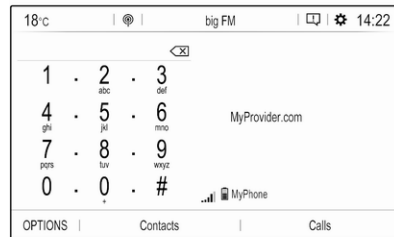
Deleting a paired device

Touch  in the upper right corner of the screen to display  icons next to each paired device.

Touch  next to the Bluetooth device you want to delete and confirm the displayed message.

Phone main menu

Press  to display the phone main menu.

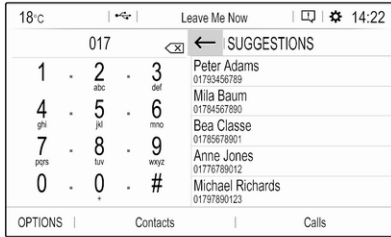


Many functions of the mobile phone can now be controlled via the phone main menu (and associated submenus), and via the phone-specific controls on the steering wheel.

Initiating a phone call

Entering a phone number

Enter a phone number using the keypad in the phone main menu.

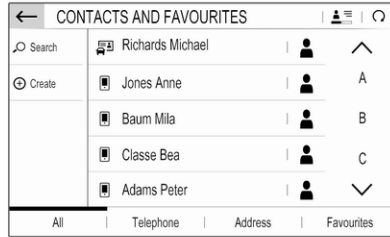


As soon as figures are entered, matching entries from the contacts list are displayed in alphabetical order. Touch the desired list entry to initiate a phone call.

Using the contacts list

The contacts list contains all phone book entries from the connected Bluetooth device and all contacts from the navigation system.

Select **Contacts** and then select the desired list type.



Searching for a contact

The contacts are ordered by the first name or surname. To change the order, touch .

To scroll through the list, touch a letter from the scroll bar, or .

To search for a contact via keyboard, touch **Search**.

Modifying or deleting a contact

Select next to the contact and then select the desired option.

If you want to add a photo to the contact:

Connect a USB device with the desired photo stored on it to the USB port 134, touch the photo frame and then select the desired photo.

Confirm your selection to download the selected photo to the system.

Using the call history

All incoming, outgoing, or missed calls are registered.

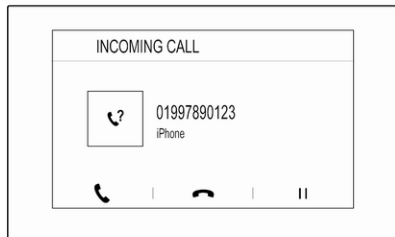
Select **Calls** and then select the desired list.

Select the desired list entry to initiate a call.

Incoming phone call



If an audio mode, e.g. the radio or USB mode, is active at the moment a call comes in, the audio source is muted and stays muted until the call ends.

A message with the caller's phone number or name is displayed.

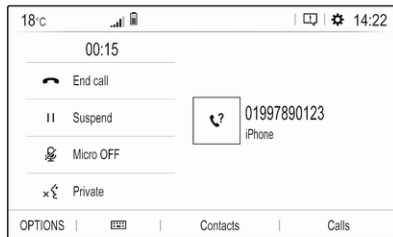


To answer the call, touch .



To reject the call, touch .

To put the call on hold, touch . To resume to the call, touch .

During the ongoing call, the following menu is displayed.



To mute the microphone of the Infotainment system, touch **Micro OFF**.

To continue conversation via the mobile phone (private mode), touch  **Private**. To reactivate the conversation via the Infotainment system, touch  **Private**.

Notice

If you leave the vehicle and lock it while you are still in a private mode phone conversation, the Infotainment system may remain switched on until you leave the Bluetooth reception area of the Infotainment system.

Put incoming calls always on hold

For safety reasons the phone function can put all incoming calls on hold by default.

To activate this function, select **OPTIONS**, select **Security** and then select **Put incoming calls on hold**.

Quick messages

Different quick messages can be sent to contacts via the Infotainment system.

Select **OPTIONS** and then **Quick messages** to display a list of quick messages sorted by different categories.

To send a quick message, select the respective message and choose the contact.

Mobile phones and CB radio equipment

Installation instructions and operating guidelines

The vehicle specific installation instructions and the operating guidelines of the mobile phone and

hands-free manufacturer must be observed when installing and operating a mobile telephone. Failure to do so could invalidate the vehicle type approval (EU directive 95/54/EC).

Recommendations for fault-free operation:

- Professionally installed exterior antenna to obtain the maximum range possible
- Maximum transmission power 10 W
- Installation of the phone in a suitable spot, consider relevant Note in the section **Airbag system** ⇨ 44.

Seek advice on predetermined installation points for the external antenna or equipment holder and ways of using devices with a transmission power exceeding 10 W. Use of a hands-free attachment without external antenna with mobile telephone standards GSM 900/1800/1900 and UMTS is only permitted if the maximum

transmission power of the mobile telephone is 2 W for GSM 900 or 1 W for the other types.

For reasons of safety, do not use the phone while driving. Even use of a hands-free set can be a distraction while driving.

⚠ Warning

Operation of radio equipment and mobile telephones which fail to meet above mentioned mobile telephone standards is only permitted using an antenna located outside of the vehicle.

Caution

Mobile telephones and radio equipment may lead to malfunctions in the vehicle electronics when operated inside the vehicle with no exterior antenna, unless the above mentioned regulations are observed.

Multimedia

Important information on operation and traffic safety

⚠ Warning

Drive safely at all times. Only operate the Infotainment system if the traffic conditions allow a safe usage.

In the interest of safety, it might be appropriate to stop the vehicle before operating the Infotainment system.

⚠ Warning

The usage of a navigation app does not release the driver from the responsibility for a correct, vigilant attitude in road traffic. Always follow the applicable traffic rules.

Radio reception






Radio reception may be disrupted by static, noise, distortion or loss of reception due to:



- changes in distance from the transmitter
- multi-path reception due to reflection
- shadowing

Multimedia

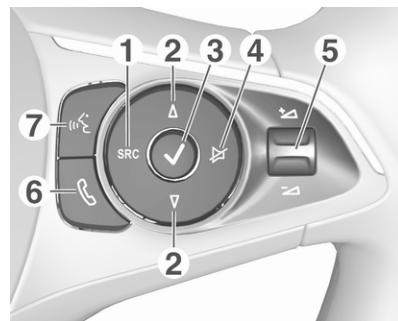
Control panel



- 1 
 - If switched off: switch power on / off
 - If switched on: mute system
 - Turn: adjust volume
- 2 
 - Display navigation app when phone projection is active 168
- 3 
 - Open vehicle settings menu 107
- 4 
 - Open audio menu:
 - Radio 165
 - CD player 168
 - External devices (USB, Bluetooth) 168
- 5 
 - Open menu for picture function 168

- 6 
 - Open settings menu
- 7 
 - Open phone menu 172
 - Display phone projection screen when phone projection is active 168
- 8 Info Display / touch screen with Home menu (Home menu only visible after 3-finger touch on screen)
- 9 USB port 168

Steering wheel controls



- 1 **SRC (Source)**
 - Select audio source, confirm selection with ✓
 - Long press: mute system
- 2 **Δ / ▽**
 - Select next / previous preset radio station when radio active 165
 - or select next / previous track / picture when external devices active 168

or select next / previous entry in station list, media list, call / contacts list when operation started via steering wheel controls

Confirm selection with ✓

3 ✓

Confirm selected item

or open station list, media list

4 ✕

Activate / deactivate mute function

5  / 

Turn upwards / downwards: increase / decrease volume

6 

Short press: accept incoming call

Long press: reject incoming call, hang up call .. 172

or open call / contacts list ... 172

If phone call active: open call in progress menu

7 

Short press: activate embedded speech recognition

Long press: activate speech recognition in Apple CarPlay™ or Android™ Auto if phone connected via USB port 170


Control elements

The Infotainment system is operated via function buttons, a touch screen and menus that are shown on the display.

Inputs are made optionally via:

- the control panel on the Infotainment system
- the touch screen
- audio controls on the steering wheel
- the speech recognition ⇨ 170


Switching the Infotainment system on or off

Press . After switching on, the last selected Infotainment source becomes active.


Notice

Some functions of the Infotainment system are only available if ignition is switched on or engine is running.

Automatic switch-off

If the Infotainment system has been switched on pressing  while the ignition is switched off, it will switch off again automatically when the Eco mode becomes active.

Setting the volume


Turn . The current setting is shown on the display.


When the Infotainment system is switched on, the last selected volume is set.

Speed compensated volume

When the speed compensated volume is activated, the volume is adapted automatically to make up for the road and wind noise as you drive.


Mute

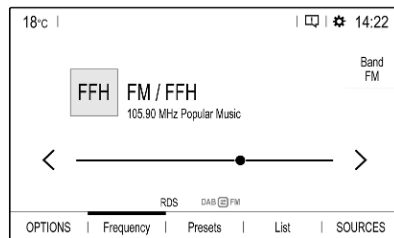
Press  to mute the Infotainment system.

To cancel the mute function, press  again. The last selected volume is set again.

Modes of operation

Audio-Media

Press  to display the main menu of the last selected audio mode.






Changing the media source

Select **SOURCES** to display the menu for media source selection.


Select the desired media source.


For a detailed description of:

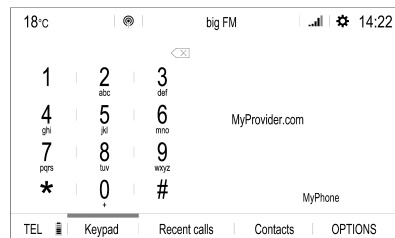
- Radio functions  165
- CD player  168
- External devices  172


Phone

Before the phone function can be used, a connection has to be established between the Infotainment system and the mobile phone.

For a detailed description of preparing and establishing a Bluetooth connection between the Infotainment system and a mobile phone  172.


If the mobile phone is connected, press  to display the main menu of the phone function.



For a detailed description of mobile phone operation via the Infotainment system  172.

Apps

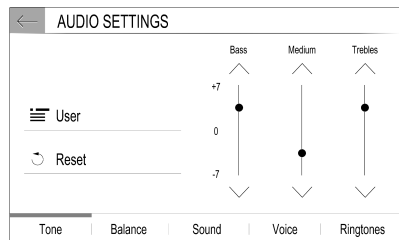
To show specific apps of your smartphone on the display of the Infotainment system, connect your smartphone.

Press  and touch **Apple CarPlay** or **Android Auto**. A menu with different selectable apps is displayed.


For a detailed description ⇨ 168.

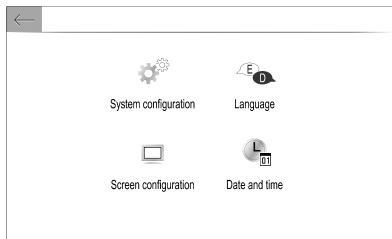
Settings

Press , select **OPTIONS** and then select **AUDIO SETTINGS** to display the respective menu.




For a detailed description.

Press  to display a menu for various system-related settings.



For a detailed description.

Vehicle settings

Select  to open a menu for various vehicle-related settings.

Vehicle Personalisation ⇨ 107

Settings center

The **Settings center** provides quick access to the following settings:

- dark screen
- brightness
- profiles
- system configuration
- privacy settings

Touch the top line of the screen to display the **Settings center**.

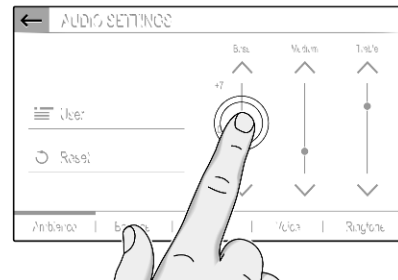
Menu operation

The display of the Infotainment system has a touch-sensitive surface that allows direct interaction with the displayed menu controls.

Caution

Do not use pointed or hard items like ballpoint pens, pencils or similar for touch screen operation.

Selecting or activating a screen button or menu item



Touch a screen button or menu item.

The corresponding system function is activated, a message is shown, or a submenu with further options is displayed.

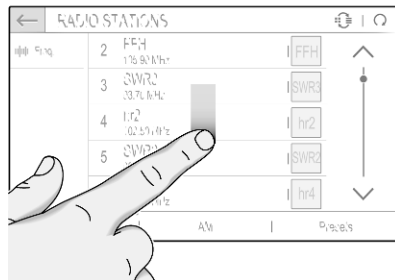
←, ✕ and ✓ screen buttons

When operating the menus, touch ← or ✕ in the respective submenu to return to the next higher menu level.

When no ← or ✕ screen button is displayed, you are on the top level of the respective menu.

On some screens ✓ needs to be touched for confirmation after selecting menu items or changing settings. Otherwise all performed selections or settings will be lost.

Scrolling a list



If there are more items available than presentable on the screen, the list must be scrolled.

To scroll through a list of menu items, you may optionally:

- Place your finger anywhere on the screen and move it upwards or downwards.

Notice

Constant pressure must be applied and the finger must be moved at a constant speed.

- Touch ^ or v at the top or bottom of the scroll bar.

- Touch anywhere on the guiding line of the scroll bar.
- Move the slider of the scroll bar up and down with your finger.

Updating a list

Touch ↻ to manually update lists, e.g. the station list.

Input fields and keyboards

Input fields are indicated by ✎.

Touch the input field to open a keyboard for text or number input.

Depending on the application or function currently active, different keyboards are displayed.

Keyboards for text input


Keyboards for text input may contain several input fields. To enable a field for text input, touch it.


To enter a character, touch the respective screen button. The character is entered upon release.

Touch and hold a letter screen button to display associated letters in a letter pop-up menu. Release and then select the desired letter.

To switch to the symbol keyboard, touch **0..#**.

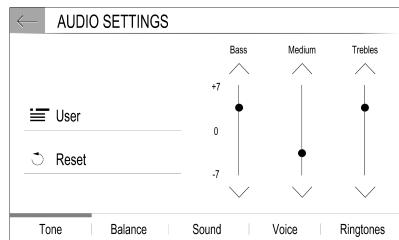
To switch back to the letter keyboard or to switch between capital and small letters, touch **Aa**.

To switch the letter keyboard between normal order and alphabetical order, touch .

To delete the most recently entered character or symbol, touch .

Audio settings

Press , select **OPTIONS** and then select **AUDIO SETTINGS**.



Several predefined settings are available to optimise the tone for a specific style of music (e.g. **Pop-Rock** or **Classical**).

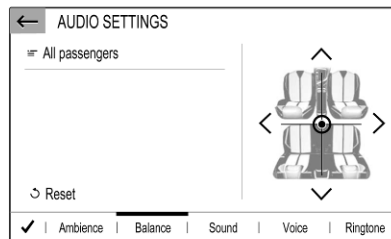
To adjust the tone individually, select **User**. Change the settings as desired.

Notice

If you change the settings of a predefined setting, e.g. **Pop-Rock**, this settings will be applied to the **User** or **Personalised** setting.

Balance and fader

Select the **Balance** tab.




Several predefined settings are available to adjust the volume distribution inside the vehicle (e.g. **All passengers** or **Front only**).


To change the current setting, e.g. **All passengers**, select that setting and then select the desired new setting from the displayed list.

You may individually adjust the predefined settings.

To define the point in the passenger compartment where the volume is at its highest level, move the cursor in the illustration on the right side of the screen to the desired point.

To return to the default factory settings, select .

Volume settings

Press , select **OPTIONS** and then select **AUDIO SETTINGS**. Then select the **Sound** tab.

Audible touch feedback

If the audible touch feedback function is activated, each touch of a screen button or menu item is indicated by a beeping sound.

To adjust the touch beep volume, activate **Touch tones** and then adjust the setting.

Speed compensated volume

Activate or deactivate **Volume linked to speed**.

If activated, the volume of the Infotainment system is adapted automatically to make up for the road and wind noise as you drive.

Speech output

Select the **Voice** tab.

Adjust the volume for all speech outputs of the system.

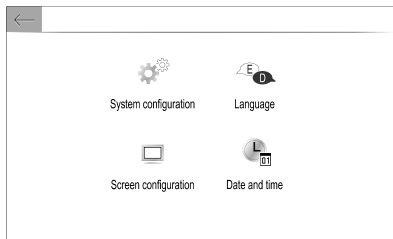
Ringtone

Select the **Ringtones** tab.

Adjust the ringtone volume of incoming calls.

System settings

Press .



Configuring the system

Select **System configuration** to perform some basic system configurations, e.g.:

- Adjust the display of units for temperature or fuel consumption.
- Reset the system configuration to factory defaults.
- Update the installed software version.

Changing display language

To adjust the language for the menu texts, select **Language** and then select the desired language.

Notice

If the selected display language is supported by the embedded speech recognition, the language of the

speech recognition will be changed accordingly; if not, embedded speech recognition will be not available.

Adjusting time and date

Select **Date and time**.

To adjust the time and date, select the respective tabs.

Adjusting the screen

Select **Screen configuration**.

Text scroll function

Select the **Animation** tab.

If long texts on the screen should be scrolled automatically, activate **Automatic scrolling**.

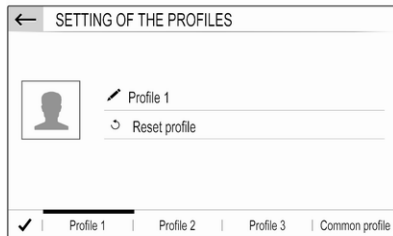
If **Automatic scrolling** is deactivated, long texts are truncated.

Adjusting the brightness

Select **Brightness** and set the brightness of the screen to the desired level.

Storing your personal settings

To go to the profile settings, touch the top line of the screen and then select **Profiles**.



You can store a multitude of settings in a personal profile. For example, all current tone settings, all radio presets and a phone book.

In case you share the vehicle with other people, this enables you to restore your personal settings from your profile at any time.


A maximum of three personal profiles may be stored.

Additionally, a **Common profile** is available. All settings done at any time are automatically stored in that profile. If no personal profile is activated, the **Common profile** is active.

Storing your personal profile

After performing all your personal settings:

Select one of the personal profile tabs.

Select the input field  and enter the desired name of your personal profile.

Finally, confirm your inputs to store them in your personal profile.

Activating your personal profile

Touch the top line of the screen, then select **Profiles** and then select the tab with the name of your personal profile.

Activating the Common profile

If a personal profile is currently active:

Go to the **Common profile** tab and then select **Activate profile**.

Resetting a personal profile

You can at any time reset a personal profile to restore the default factory settings on that profile.

Activate the respective profile and then select **Reset the profile**.


Resetting the Common profile

You can at any time reset the **Common profile** to restore the default factory settings on that profile.

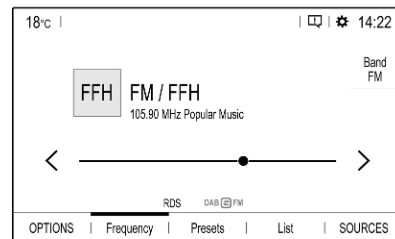
Select **Common profile** and then select **Reset the common profile**.

Audio

Activating the radio


Press . The audio main menu last selected is displayed.

If the radio main menu is not active, select **SOURCES** and then select **Radio**.



The station last played will be received.

Selecting a waveband

Select **OPTIONS** and repeatedly touch  to toggle between the different wavebands.

Searching for stations

Automatic station search

Briefly touch < or > to play the previous or next receivable station.

Manual station search

Press and hold < or >. Release when the required frequency has almost been reached.

A search is made for the next station that can be received and it is played automatically.

Station lists


In the station lists, all receivable radio stations within the current reception area are available for selection.

To display the station list of the waveband currently active, select **List**.

Select the desired station.

Update station lists

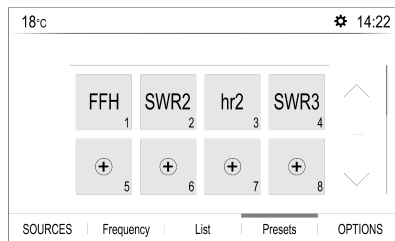
If the stations stored in the waveband-specific station list can no longer be received, the station lists must be updated.

To start an update for the currently active waveband, select .

Storing favourite stations

Up to 24 radio stations of all wavebands can be stored as favourites in the **Presets** list.


Select **Presets** to display the preset buttons.



Storing the currently active station



Touch and hold the desired button in the **Presets** list for a few seconds. The respective frequency or station name is displayed on the button.

If a station is already stored on a preset button, that station will be overwritten by the new one.

Alternatively, touch  **Mem** in the radio main menu to store the currently active station.

Storing a station from a station list

Select **OPTIONS** and then select the desired waveband.

To store a station from the station list, briefly touch  next to the desired station. The station is stored and the number of the preset button will be displayed. To delete a station, touch  again.

Alternatively, touch and hold the name of the station until it is stored. To delete the station, touch and hold the name of the station again until a corresponding message is displayed.

Retrieving stations

In the radio main menu select **Presets** and then briefly touch the preset button of the desired station.

Radio data system

Radio data system (RDS) is a service of FM stations that considerably facilitates the finding of the desired station and its fault-free reception.

Activating RDS

In the radio main menu, select **OPTIONS** and activate **RDS**.

If **RDS** is activated, **RDS** is displayed in the bottom line of the radio main menu.

Radio text

If RDS is activated, information on the radio programme currently active or the music track currently playing are displayed below the programme name.

To show or hide the information, go to the **OPTIONS** menu and activate or deactivate **Information**.

Traffic announcements

Many RDS stations broadcast traffic news. If the traffic announcements function is activated, radio or media playback is interrupted for the duration of a traffic announcement.

To activate traffic announcements, go to the **OPTIONS** menu and activate **TA**.

If **TA** is activated, **TA** is displayed in the bottom line of the radio main menu.

Digital audio broadcasting

Digital audio broadcasting (DAB) broadcasts radio stations digitally.

DAB stations are indicated by the programme name instead of the broadcasting frequency.

FM-DAB Linking

This function enables switching from an FM station to a corresponding DAB station and vice versa.

Switching from FM to DAB occurs as soon as a corresponding DAB station is available. Therefore, it is

recommended to store favourite stations as DAB stations to reduce frequent switching.

Switching from DAB to FM occurs if the signal is too weak to be picked up by the receiver.

Activation

Precondition is that **RDS** is activated before FM-DAB Linking can be activated.

To activate FM-DAB Linking, select **OPTIONS** in the radio main menu and then activate **FM-DAB Follow-up**.

The following symbol will be displayed when FM-DAB Linking is activated:



Deactivation

To deactivate FM-DAB Linking, select **OPTIONS** in the radio main menu and then deselect **FM-DAB Follow-up**.

FM-DAB Linking will automatically be deactivated when **RDS** is deactivated.

External devices

USB ports

A USB port is located on the control panel. Another USB port may be located in the storage compartment next to the Info Display.

Caution

To protect the system, do not use a USB hub.
--

Notice

The USB ports must always be kept clean and dry.

An MP3 player, USB device, SD card (via USB connector / adapter) or smartphone can be connected to each USB port.

The Infotainment system can play audio files or show picture files contained in USB devices.

When connected to a USB port, various functions of the devices mentioned above can be operated via the controls and menus of the Infotainment system.

Notice

Not all auxiliary devices are supported by the Infotainment system.

Notice

If two USB ports are available: To use the phone projection feature of the Infotainment system, the smartphone has to be connected to the USB port on the control panel. The USB port in the storage compartment cannot be used for Apple CarPlay.

Connecting / disconnecting a device

Connect one of the devices mentioned above to a USB port. If required, use the appropriate connection cable. The music function starts automatically.

Notice

If a non-readable USB device is connected, a corresponding error message appears and the Infotainment system automatically switches to the previous function.

To disconnect a USB device, select another function and then remove the USB device.

Caution

Avoid disconnecting the device during playback. This may damage the device or the Infotainment system.
--

Bluetooth audio streaming

Streaming allows you to listen to music from your smartphone.

For a detailed description on how to establish a Bluetooth connection ⇨ 172.

If audio playback does not start automatically, it may be necessary to start the playback on the smartphone.

First adjust the volume on your smartphone (to a high level). Then adjust the volume of Infotainment system.

File formats

The audio equipment supports different file formats.

Activating the music function

Connecting the USB or Bluetooth device.



If device already connected, but playback of stored music files not active:

Press , select **SOURCES** and then select the respective source.

Playback of the audio tracks starts automatically.

Playback functions

Interrupting and resuming playback

Touch  to interrupt playback. The screen button changes to .

Touch  to resume playback.

Playing the previous or next track

Touch < or >.


Fast forwarding and rewinding


Touch and hold < or >. Release to return to normal playback mode.

Alternatively, you can move the slider showing the current track position to the left or right.


Playing tracks randomly

Select **OPTIONS** and touch the **Random** icon repeatedly:

: play tracks of currently selected list (album, artist, etc.) in random order.

: play tracks of currently selected list (album, artist, etc.) in normal playback mode.

Repeating tracks

Select **OPTIONS** and touch the **Repeat** icon  repeatedly to select one of the following options:

- repeat tracks of currently selected list (album, artist, etc.)
- repeat tracks of currently selected list (album, artist, etc.) once
- play tracks of currently selected list (album, artist, etc.) in normal playback mode

Activating the picture viewer

Connecting the USB device.

If device already connected, but picture viewer not active:

Press , select **Photos** and choose the desired folder and picture.



Touch the screen to display the menu bar.

Viewing the previous or next picture

Touch ◀◀ or ▶▶.

Starting or stopping a slide show

Select ▶ to view the pictures stored on the USB device in a slide show.

Touch II to end the slide show.

Phone projection

The phone projection applications Apple CarPlay and Android Auto display selected apps from your

smartphone on the Info Display and allow their operation directly via the Infotainment controls.

Check with the device's manufacturer if this function is compatible with your smartphone and if this application is available in the country you are in.

Preparing the smartphone

iPhone®: Make sure Siri® is activated on your phone.

Android phone: Download the Android Auto app to your phone from the Google Play™ Store.

Connecting the smartphone

iPhone

Connect the phone to the USB port. If the phone is already connected via Bluetooth, upon connecting to the USB port and launching Apple CarPlay, the Bluetooth connection will disconnect. After disconnecting the USB connection, the phone will be connected via Bluetooth again.

Android phone

Connect the phone via Bluetooth ↻ 172 and then connect the phone to the USB port.

Starting phone projection

If phone projection is not starting automatically, press ⌘ and then touch **Apple CarPlay** or **Android Auto**.

The phone projection screen displayed depends on your smartphone and software version.

Returning to the Infotainment screen

Press, e.g., the 🎵 button on the control panel.

Speech recognition

Embedded speech recognition

The embedded speech recognition of the Infotainment system enables you to operate various functions of the Infotainment system via voice input. It recognises commands and numeric sequences independently of the relevant speaker. The commands and numeric sequences can be spoken without a voice pause between the individual words.

In the event of incorrect operation or commands, the speech recognition gives visual and / or acoustic feedback and requests you to re-enter the desired command. Apart from this, the speech recognition acknowledges important commands and will enquire if necessary.

In general, there are different ways to speak commands for performing the desired actions.

Notice

To ensure that conversations inside the vehicle do not lead to unintentional triggering of the system functions, the speech recognition does not start until it has been activated.

Important information

Language support

- Not all languages available for the display of the Infotainment system are also available for the speech recognition.
- If the display language currently selected is not supported by the speech recognition, speech recognition is not available.


In such a case, you need to select another language for the display if you want to control the Infotainment system via voice input. To change the display language ↷ 155.

Activating speech recognition

Notice

Speech recognition is not available during an active phone call.

Activation via the button on the steering wheel



Press  on the steering wheel.

The audio system mutes, a voice output message prompts you to say a command, and help menus with the most important commands currently available are shown on the display.


The speech recognition is ready for voice input, after a beep has been given.

You can now say a voice command to initiate a system function (e.g. playing a preset radio station).

Adjusting the volume of voice prompts

Press volume button on the steering wheel upwards (increase volume)  or downwards (decrease volume) .


Interrupting a voice prompt

As an experienced user, you can interrupt a voice prompt by briefly pressing  on the steering wheel.

Alternatively you can say "Set dialogue mode as expert".

A beep is heard immediately, and a command can be stated without having to wait.

Cancelling a dialogue sequence


To cancel a dialogue sequence and to deactivate the speech recognition, press  on the steering wheel.

If you do not say any command for a certain period of time, or if you say commands that are not recognised by the system, a dialogue sequence is automatically cancelled.

Operation via speech commands

Follow the instructions given by voice output and shown on the display.


For best results:

- Listen for the voice prompt and wait for the beep before saying a command or replying.
- Read the example commands on the display.
- The voice prompt can be interrupted by pressing  again.
- Wait for the beep and then speak the command naturally, not too fast, not too slow.


Usually commands can be spoken in a single command.

Voice pass-thru application




The voice pass-thru application of the Infotainment system allows access to the speech recognition commands on your smartphone.

Voice pass-through is available via the phone projection applications Apple CarPlay and Android Auto  168.


Activating speech recognition

Press and hold  on the steering wheel until a speech recognition session is started.

Adjusting the volume of voice prompts

Turn  on the control panel or press volume button on the steering wheel upwards (increase volume)  or downwards (decrease volume) .

Deactivating speech recognition

Press  on the steering wheel. The speech recognition session is ended.

Phone

The phone function provides you with the possibility of having mobile phone conversations via a vehicle microphone and the vehicle loudspeakers as well as operating the most important mobile phone functions via the Infotainment system in the vehicle. To be able to use the phone function, the mobile phone must be connected to the Infotainment system via Bluetooth.

Not all phone functions are supported by every mobile phone. The usable phone functions depend on the relevant mobile phone and network provider. You can find further information on this in the operating instructions for your mobile phone, or you can enquire about them with your network provider.

Important information for operation and traffic safety** Warning**

Mobile phones have effects on your environment. For this reason safety regulations and directions have been prepared. You should be familiar with the related directions before you use the telephone function.

 Warning

Use of the hands-free facility while driving can be dangerous because your concentration is reduced when telephoning. Park your

vehicle before you use the hands-free facility. Follow the stipulations of the country in which you find yourself at present.

Do not forget to follow the special regulations that apply in specific areas and always switch off the mobile phone if the use of mobile phones is prohibited, if interference is caused by the mobile phone or if dangerous situations can occur.

Pairing a device

During the pairing process, PIN code exchange between the Bluetooth device and the Infotainment system and connection of the Bluetooth devices to the Infotainment system are carried out.

Important information


- Two paired Bluetooth devices can be connected to the Infotainment system at the same time. One device in hands-free mode, the other in audio streaming mode, see description

on Bluetooth profile settings below.

However, two devices cannot be used in hands-free mode at the same time.

- Pairing only needs to be carried out once, unless the device is deleted from the list of paired devices. If the device has been connected previously, the Infotainment system establishes the connection automatically.
- Bluetooth operation considerably drains the device's battery. Therefore, connect the device to the USB port for charging.

Pairing a new device

1. Activate the Bluetooth function of the Bluetooth device. For further information, see the operating instructions for the Bluetooth device.
2. Press  and then touch **Bluetooth search**.

A search for all Bluetooth devices in the near environment is performed.

3. Select the Bluetooth device you wish to pair from the displayed list.

4. Confirm the pairing procedure:

- If SSP (secure simple pairing) is supported:

Confirm the messages on the Infotainment system and the Bluetooth device.

- If SSP (secure simple pairing) is not supported:

On the Infotainment system: a message is displayed asking you to enter a PIN code on your Bluetooth device.

On the Bluetooth device: enter the PIN code and confirm your input.

The Infotainment system and the device are paired.

5. The phone book is downloaded automatically to the Infotainment system. Depending on the phone, the Infotainment system must be allowed access to the phone book. If required, confirm the messages displayed on the Bluetooth device.


If this function is not supported by the Bluetooth device, a corresponding message is displayed.

Operations on paired devices

Press , select **TEL** and then select **Bluetooth connection**.


A list of all paired devices is displayed.

Changing the Bluetooth profile settings

Touch  next to the desired paired device.


Activate or deactivate the profile settings as desired and confirm your settings.

Connecting a paired device

Devices which are paired but not connected are identified by .



Select the desired device to connect it.


Disconnecting a device

The currently connected device is identified by .


Select the device to disconnect it.

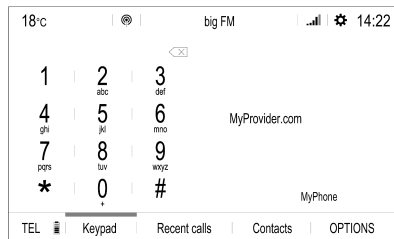
Deleting a paired device

Touch  in the upper right corner of the screen to display  icons next to each paired device.

Touch  next to the Bluetooth device you want to delete and confirm the displayed message.

Phone main menu

Press  to display the phone main menu.



Many functions of the mobile phone can now be controlled via the phone main menu (and associated submenus), and via the phone-specific controls on the steering wheel.

Initiating a phone call

Entering a phone number

Enter a phone number using the keypad in the phone main menu.

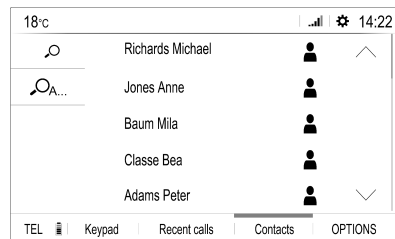
As soon as figures are entered, matching entries from the contacts list are displayed in alphabetical order.

Touch the desired list entry to initiate a phone call.


Using the contacts list



The contacts list contains all phone book entries from the connected Bluetooth device.


Select **Contacts** to see the contacts list.





Searching for a contact


The contacts are ordered by the first name or surname. To change the order, touch **OPTIONS** and then .

To scroll through the list, touch  or .

To search for a contact via keyboard, touch .

To search for a contact via the first letter, touch   and select the desired letter.

Modifying or deleting a contact

Select  next to the contact and then select the desired option.

Using the call history

All incoming, outgoing, or missed calls are registered.

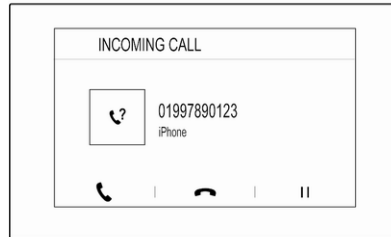
Select **Recent calls** to see the call history.

Select the desired list entry to initiate a call.

Incoming phone call



If an audio mode, e.g. the radio or USB mode, is active at the moment a call comes in, the audio source is muted and stays muted until the call ends.



A message with the caller's phone number or name is displayed.





To answer the call, touch .

To reject the call, touch .

To put the call on hold, touch . To resume to the call, touch .

To mute the microphone of the Infotainment system, touch **Micro OFF** and  will appear. To cancel the mute function, press  again.


To continue conversation via the mobile phone (private mode), touch . To reactivate the conversation via the Infotainment system, touch  again.

Notice

If you leave the vehicle and lock it while you are still in a private mode phone conversation, the Infotainment system may remain switched on until you leave the Bluetooth reception area of the Infotainment system.

Put incoming calls always on hold

For safety reasons the phone function can put all incoming calls on hold by default.

To activate this function, select **OPTIONS** and then touch  until the function is activated.

Mobile phones and CB radio equipment

Installation instructions and operating guidelines

The vehicle specific installation instructions and the operating guidelines of the mobile phone and hands-free manufacturer must be observed when installing and operating a mobile telephone. Failure to do so could invalidate the vehicle type approval (EU directive 95/54/EC).

Recommendations for fault-free operation:

- Professionally installed exterior antenna to obtain the maximum range possible
- Maximum transmission power 10 W
- Installation of the phone in a suitable spot, consider relevant Note in the section **Airbag system**
⇨ 44.

Seek advice on predetermined installation points for the external antenna or equipment holder and ways of using devices with a transmission power exceeding 10 W.

Use of a hands-free attachment without external antenna with mobile telephone standards GSM 900/1800/1900 and UMTS is only permitted if the maximum transmission power of the mobile telephone is 2 W for GSM 900 or 1 W for the other types.

For reasons of safety, do not use the phone while driving. Even use of a hands-free set can be a distraction while driving.

Warning

Operation of radio equipment and mobile telephones which fail to meet above mentioned mobile telephone standards is only permitted using an antenna located outside of the vehicle.

Caution

Mobile telephones and radio equipment may lead to malfunctions in the vehicle electronics when operated inside the vehicle with no exterior antenna, unless the above mentioned regulations are observed.

Touchscreen Radio

Introduction

Important information on operation and traffic safety

Warning

The Infotainment system must be used so that the vehicle can be driven safely at all times. If in doubt, stop the vehicle and operate the Infotainment system while the vehicle is stationary.

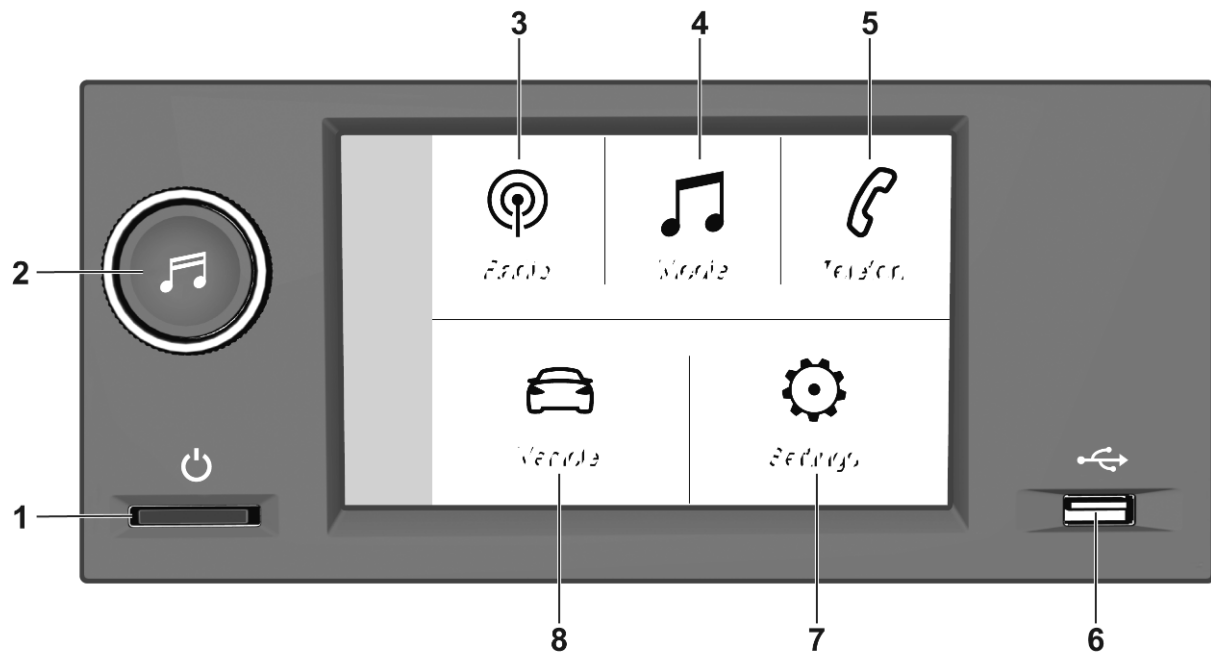
Radio reception









Radio reception may be disrupted by static, noise, distortion or loss of reception due to:

- changes in distance from the transmitter
- multipath reception due to reflection
- shadowing

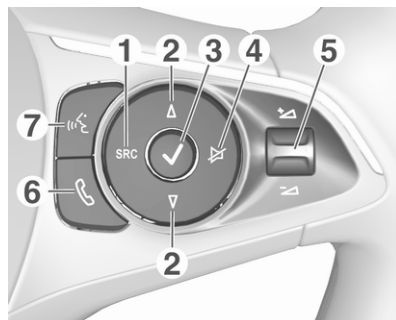
Touchscreen Radio

Control panel



- 1  Press: switch power on / off
- 2  Turn: adjust volume
- 3  Display the radio menu
- 4  Display the media menu for external devices
- 5  Display the phone menu if a mobile phone is connected
Display a list of all paired devices if no phone is connected
- 6  USB port for external devices
- 7  Display the system settings menu
- 8  Display the vehicle settings menu

Steering wheel controls



- 1 **SRC (Source)**
Select audio source, confirm selection with ✓
Long press: mute system
- 2 **Δ / ▽**
Select next / previous preset radio station when radio active
or select next / previous track / picture when external devices active

or select next / previous entry in station list, media list, call / contacts list when operation started via steering wheel controls

Confirm selection with ✓


3 ✓

Confirm selected item

or open station list, media list

4 

Activate / deactivate mute function

5 

Turn upwards / downwards: increase / decrease volume

6 

Short press: accept incoming call

Long press: reject incoming call, hang up call

or open call / contacts list

If phone call active: open call in progress menu

7 

Short press: activate speech recognition

Top bar

The top bar on the screen indicates the following information:

- time
- temperature

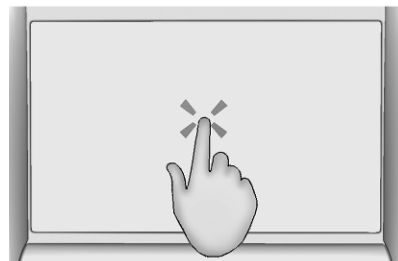
Screen operations

The display of the Infotainment system has a touch-sensitive surface that allows direct interaction with the displayed menu controls.

Caution
Do not use pointed or hard items like ballpoint pens, pencils or similar for touch screen operation.

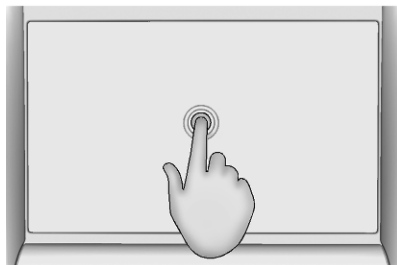
Use the following finger gestures to control the Infotainment system.

Touch




Touch is used to open a menu or select an option.


Touch and hold




Touch and hold can be used to save radio stations.

Returning to the previous screen


To return to the previous screen, touch  in the upper left corner of the screen.

When  is touched on the home screen, the audio screen will be displayed.

Returning to the home screen

To return to the home screen, touch .

System settings

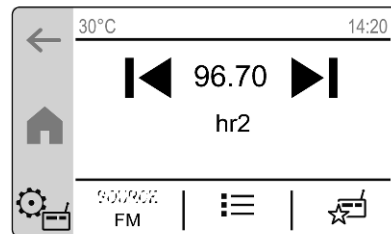
To display the system settings menu, go to the home screen and select .


The following submenus are available:

- **Display:** Adjust the display brightness and the text scrolling or turn the screen off.
- **Date/Time:** Adjust the date and the time.
- **System:** Adjust the privacy settings for data sharing and vehicle position, reset the system to the factory settings, adjust the units and see the system information.
- **Languages:** Change the system language.
- **Bluetooth:** Display a list of all paired devices.
- **Audio:** Activate / deactivate speed compensated volume and touch tones and adjust sound distribution, ambience, bass and treble.


Audio


Overview





 : Touch to go to the previous station / song or touch and hold for rewinding.

96.70 : Touch to enter a frequency.

 : Touch to go to the next station / song or touch and hold for fast forwarding.

 : Adjust the audio settings.

SOURCE : Select the audio source.


-  : Display the station list / tracklist.
-  : Display the favourites list.

Sources

Touch **SOURCE** and select the desired audio source. The currently active audio source will be indicated.

When an external device will be connected, the Infotainment system automatically selects the external device as the audio source. When the external device will be disconnected, the previous audio source will be selected.


Station tuning

To tune into a certain radio station, open the station list  and touch **ABC**. All receivable radio stations are sorted by the first letter.

To tune into a specific frequency, touch the frequency indication on the radio main screen. A new screen will be displayed with a number pad. A frequency can be entered.

Station list

To display the station list, touch .

The currently active radio station will be indicated by .

Favourite radio stations will be indicated by .

To update the station list, touch  and select **Update list**.


Favourites

Up to 16 radio stations can be saved as favourites. Touch  to display the favourites list.

To save the currently active radio station as a favourite, touch and hold the desired row in the favourites list.


Traffic announcement

Traffic announcement is a service of FM radio stations. When traffic programme is activated, the currently playing audio source will be interrupted when an FM radio station is broadcasting traffic news. The audio source will be switched back when the traffic news are over.

Traffic announcements can be activated or deactivated in the radio settings .

RDS switching

When RDS switching is activated, the Infotainment system always tunes into the best receivable broadcasting frequency of the currently active radio station.

RDS switching can be activated or deactivated in the radio settings .





Notice


After switching, the volume might be different.



External devices


A USB port for the connection of external devices is located next to the Info Display.

When an external audio source (via USB or Bluetooth) is connected and selected as audio source, the following symbols will be displayed on the audio screen:

-  : Interrupt playback.
-  : Resume playback.
-  : Display the tracklist.
-  : Display the library (folders, artists, albums, playlists, songs).


In the library , the tracks can be sorted by artist, album etc.

When a folder is selected in the library , only the tracks of the corresponding folder are displayed in the tracklist .

The following playback functions can be activated in the media settings .

- Repeat** : Repeat the tracks of the current list.
- Shuffle** : Play tracks in random order.

Audio settings


To adjust the audio settings, touch  on the audio screen and select **Audio settings**. The following settings can be adjusted:

- Activate / deactivate speed compensated volume
- Activate / deactivate touch tones


- Adjust sound distribution
- Adjust ambience, bass and treble

Speech recognition




The voice pass-thru application of the Infotainment system allows access to the speech recognition commands on a smartphone. See the smartphone manufacturer's operating instructions to find out whether the smartphone supports this feature.

In order to use the voice pass-thru application, the smartphone must be connected via Bluetooth  183.


Activating speech recognition

Press and hold  on the steering wheel until a speech recognition session is started.

Adjusting the volume of voice prompts

Turn  on the control panel or press the volume button on the steering wheel upwards (increase volume)  or downwards (decrease volume) .

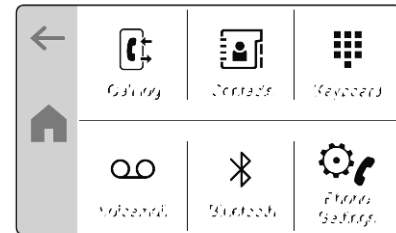
Deactivating speech recognition





Press  on the steering wheel. The speech recognition session is ended.

Phone

Not every mobile phone fully supports the phone function. Therefore, deviations from the range of functions described below are possible.

Phone main menu



-  : Display the call list.
-  : Display the contact list.
-  : Display the number pad.
-  : Call the answering machine if a voicemail number is set.

✧ : Display a list of all paired devices.

⚙ : Adjust the phone settings.

Notice

On some mobile phones, access permissions for contact and call lists may have to be set when connecting the mobile phone to the Infotainment system.

Making a phone call

To make a phone call, either choose a contact from the contact list or dial a phone number via the number pad.

Phone settings

To go to the phone settings menu, go to the phone menu and select ⚙.

The following settings are adjustable:

- Putting phone calls automatically on hold.
- Setting a voicemail number.

Pairing a phone

To pair a mobile phone, proceed as follows:

1. Enable Bluetooth on the mobile phone and ensure it is visible for other devices.
2. On the Info Display, select **Telephone** ➔ **Manage devices**.
3. Touch **Add**.

Mobile phones are being searched.

4. Select the desired mobile phone.
5. Select the Infotainment system from the Bluetooth device list on the mobile phone.
6. Compare and confirm the shown code on the mobile phone and on the Info Display. Touch **OK** on the Info Display.

Alternatively, a number pad might appear on the Info Display. Enter the code that is shown on the mobile phone.

Some mobile phones require access to certain phone features, follow the instructions.

7. Determine whether the mobile phone is to be connected for the phone function and music streaming.

Once the mobile phone is successfully paired, it will be connected automatically and shown as connected.

If the mobile phone is connected for the phone function, ☎ will be displayed in the list of paired devices.

If the mobile phone is connected for music streaming, 🎵 will be displayed in the list of paired devices.

Disconnecting and connecting a mobile phone

1. In the phone menu on the Info Display, select **Bluetooth**.
2. To disconnect the currently connected mobile phone, touch the corresponding mobile phone and select **Yes**.

The mobile phone is disconnected.

3. To connect another paired mobile phone, touch the corresponding mobile phone and select **Yes**.

The mobile phone is connected.

Deleting a paired mobile phone

1. In the phone menu on the Info Display, select **Bluetooth** ▶ **Manage devices**.
2. Touch **Delete**.
3. Select the desired mobile phone.
4. Touch **Yes**.

The mobile phone is deleted.

Radio

Important information on operation and traffic safety

⚠ Warning

Drive safely at all times when using the Infotainment system.

If in doubt, stop the vehicle before operating the Infotainment system.

Radio reception

Radio reception may be disrupted by static, noise, distortion or loss of reception due to:

- changes in distance from the transmitter
- multi-path reception due to reflection
- shadowing

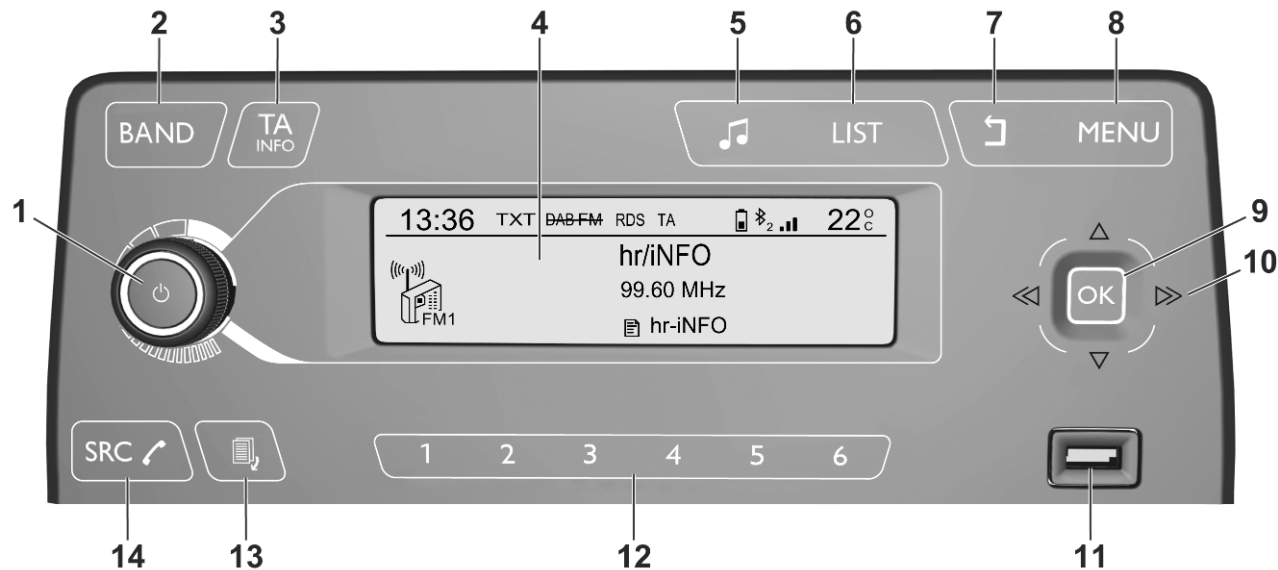
Theft-deterrent feature



The Infotainment system is equipped with an electronic security system for the purpose of theft deterrence.



The Infotainment system therefore functions only in your vehicle and is worthless to a thief.



Radio

Control panel



- 1 
 - If switched off: short press: switch power on
 - If switched on: short press: mute system; long press: switch power off
 - Turn: adjust volume
- 2 **BAND**
 - Short press: toggle between the wavebands 194
- 3 **TA INFO**
 - Short press: activate or deactivate traffic announcements 194
 - Long press: open the TA settings 194
- 4 Info Display
- 5 
 - Short press: open menu for tone and volume settings

- 6 **LIST**
 - Radio: short press: display stations list; long press: update stations list 194
 - Media: short press: display folders list; long press: display the track listing options 196
- 7 
 - Menu: one level back
 - Input: delete last character or entire entry 198
- 8 **MENU**
 - Short press: display home page
- 9 **OK**
 - Short press: confirm a setting or open a submenu
- 10 
 - Radio: short press: manual station search 194
 - Media: short press: select next or previous folder, genre, artist or playlist; long press: scroll in a list 196

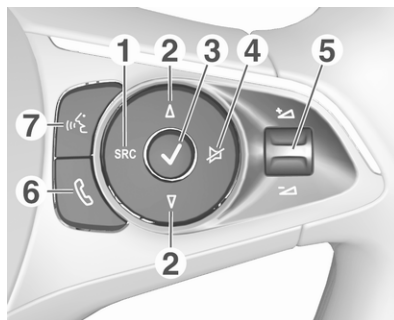
- 
 - Radio: short press: automatic station search for the previous or next station; long press: seek up or down 194
 - Media: short press: select previous or next track; long press: fast forward or rewind 196
- 11 USB port 196
- 12 Preset buttons
 - Short press: select favourites 194
 - Long press: save radio stations as favourites 194
- 13 
 - Short press: toggle through the different display modes
 - Long press: turn display off (while the sound remains active)

14 SRC

Short press: toggle between the audio sources . 194

Long press: open phone menu if phone connected ... 198

Steering wheel controls



1 SRC

Select audio source, confirm selection with ✓

2 Δ / ▽

Select next / previous preset radio station when radio active 194

or select next / previous track when media sources active 196

or select next / previous entry in call / contacts list when phone function active and call / contact list open 198

Confirm selection with ✓

3 ✓

Confirm selected item

Open list

4 ▸

Activate/deactivate mute function

5 

Turn upwards / downwards: increase / decrease volume

6 

Take phone call 198

or reject phone call 198

or open call / contacts list ... 198

7 

Activate voice pass-thru application 198


Control elements

The Infotainment system is operated via function buttons, navigation buttons and menus that are shown on the display.

Inputs are made optionally via:


- the control panel on the Infotainment system
- controls on the steering wheel

Switching the Infotainment system on or off

Press  briefly. After switching on, the last selected Infotainment source becomes active.


Notice

Some functions of the Infotainment system are only available if ignition is switched on or engine is running.


Press  again to turn the system off.



Automatic switch-off

If the Infotainment system is switched on by pressing  while the ignition is switched off, it switches off again automatically after a certain time.

Setting the volume


Turn . The current setting is shown on the display.


When the Infotainment system is switched on, the last selected volume is set.

Speed compensated volume

When the automatic volume function is activated, the volume is adapted automatically to make up for the road and wind noises as you drive.

Mute function

Press  on the steering wheel to mute the audio sources.


To cancel the mute function, press  again.



Changing the display mode

There are three different display modes available:

- full screen display
- splitted display with time and date information shown on the left side of the screen
- black display



Repeatedly press  to toggle between full screen display mode and splitted display mode.

Press and hold  to turn the display off while the sound remains active. Press  again to reactivate the display.

Modes of operation

Radio

Repeatedly press **BAND** to toggle between the different wavebands and select the desired waveband.

For a detailed description of the radio functions ↪ 194.

USB port

Repeatedly press **SRC** to toggle between the different audio sources and select USB mode.

For a detailed description on connecting and operating external devices ↪ 196.

Bluetooth music

Repeatedly press **SRC** to toggle between the different audio sources and select Bluetooth music mode.

For a detailed description on connecting and operating external devices ↪ 196.

Phone

Before the phone function can be used, a connection to a Bluetooth device has to be established. For a detailed description ↪ 198.

Press **MENU** to display the home page. Select **Telephone** by pressing << and >> and then press **OK** to confirm. The phone menu is displayed.

For a detailed description of mobile phone operation via the Infotainment system ↪ 198.

OK button

Press **OK**:

- to confirm or activate the selected option
- to confirm a set value
- to activate or deactivate a function
- to open a menu

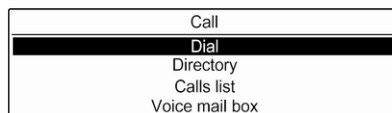
↩ button

Press ↩:

- to exit a menu
- to return from a submenu to the next higher menu level

Examples of menu operation

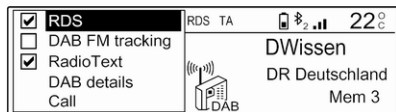
Selecting an option



Press Δ , ∇ , << or >> to move the cursor (= coloured background) to the desired option.

Press **OK** to confirm the selected option.

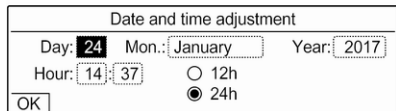
Activating a setting



Press Δ , ∇ , \lll or \ggg to select the desired setting.

Press **OK** to activate the setting.

Setting a value



Press \lll or \ggg to select the current value of the setting.

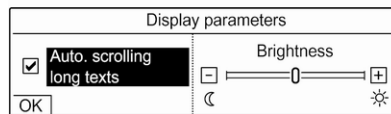
Press **OK** to confirm the selection.

Press \lll or \ggg to adjust the desired value.

Press **OK** to confirm the set value.

The cursor then switches to the value of the next setting. To switch to the value of another setting, press Δ , ∇ , \lll or \ggg . If the values of all settings are set, select **OK** on the display and press **OK**.

Adjusting a setting

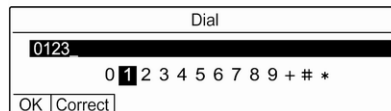


Select the desired setting and press **OK**.

Press \lll or \ggg until the setting is adjusted as desired.

Select **OK** on the display and press **OK** to confirm the setting.

Entering a character sequence



To enter character sequences, e.g. telephone numbers:

Press \lll or \ggg to select the desired character.

Press **OK** to confirm the selected character.

The last character in the character sequence can be deleted by selecting **Correct** on the display and pressing **OK**.


To change the position of the cursor in the character sequence already entered, select the character sequence and press \lll or \ggg to move the cursor to the desired position.

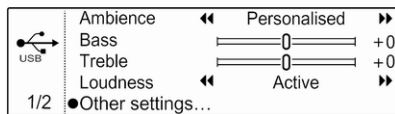
To confirm the character sequence, press ∇ to select **OK** on the display and then press **OK**.


Audio and volume settings

In the tone and volume settings menu, the tone characteristics and volume settings can be adjusted.

The settings on page 1 can be set individually for each audio source. The settings on page 2 are set for all audio sources.

Press  to open the tone and volume settings menu.





Press  again to display the second tone and volume settings page. Alternatively, select **Other settings...**

Sound adjustment

To change the sound of the Infotainment system, select a tone style or adjust the tone characteristics manually.

Tone style



To activate a tone style, select **Ambience**. To toggle between the different tone styles, repeatedly press  or .

If the tone style is set to **Personalised**, **Bass** and **Treble** can be set manually.

Bass and treble

To enhance or attenuate the deep frequencies, select **Bass**.

To enhance or attenuate the high frequencies, select **Treble**.



Repeatedly press  or  to adjust the settings.

Notice

If the settings of **Bass** or **Treble** are adjusted, the tone style is set to **Personalised**.



Loudness

The Infotainment system has a loudness compensation function for better sound quality at low volume levels. It is set to **Active** by default.

To change the loudness setting, select **Loudness**. Press  or  to toggle between the settings **Active** and **Inactive**.



Volume distribution

The volume distribution within the passenger compartment can be optimised for the driver or for all passengers.

Select **Distribution**. Press  or  to toggle between the settings **Driver** and **All passengers**.



If **Driver** is selected, the volume balance is automatically optimised for the driver.

If **All passengers** is selected, the volume distribution between left and right in the passenger compartment can be set manually.

Select **Balance**. Repeatedly press  to move the point of the highest sound level to the left or  to move the point of the highest sound level to the right.

Automatic volume adjustment

The volume of the Infotainment system can be adjusted automatically according to the speed of the vehicle.

Select **Auto. volume**. Press  or  to toggle between the settings **Active** and **Inactive**.

System settings

Configuring the system

Open the settings menu to perform some basic system configurations, e.g.:

- Adjust the display of units for temperature or fuel consumption
- Change the display language
- Adjust date and time

Changing display language

Press **MENU** and then select **Personalisation-configuration**.

Select **Display configuration** and then select **Choice of language**.

To adjust the language for the menu texts, select the desired language and press **OK**.

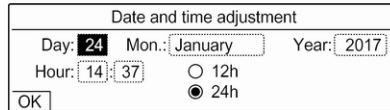
Adjusting time and date

Press **MENU** and then select **Personalisation-configuration**.

Select **Display configuration** and then select **Date and time adjustment**.

Changing the time format

To change the time format, select **12h** or **24h** and press **OK**.



Setting time and date

By default the displayed time and date is automatically adjusted by the system.

To manually adjust the displayed time and date:

Select the value of the desired settings, e.g. **Day** and press **OK**.

Press Δ or ∇ to set the desired value and press **OK** to confirm.

To confirm the set date and time, select **OK** on the display.

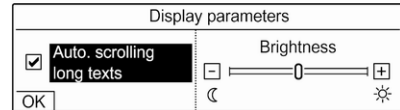
Adjusting the screen

Press **MENU** and then select **Personalisation-configuration**.

Select **Display configuration** and then select **Display personalisation**.

Text scroll function

If long texts on the screen should be scrolled automatically, activate **Auto. scrolling long texts**.



Select **OK** on the display.

If **Auto. scrolling long texts** is deactivated, long texts are truncated.

Adjusting the brightness

In the **Brightness** section, select **+** or **-** to increase or decrease the brightness of the screen.

Press **OK** to confirm and then repeatedly press **OK** to adjust the brightness to the desired level.

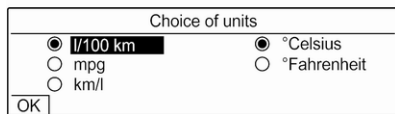
To confirm the brightness adjustment, select **OK** on the display.

Adjusting the units for temperature and fuel consumption

Press **MENU** and then select **Personalisation-configuration**.

Select **Display configuration** and then select **Choice of units**.

Select the desired unit and press **OK**.



Select **OK** on the display.

Audio

Repeatedly press **BAND** to toggle between the different wavebands. Select the desired waveband.

As an alternative, repeatedly press **SRC** to toggle between all audio sources and select the desired waveband.



The station last selected in the respective waveband is played.

Searching for stations

Automatic station search

Press **<<** or **>>** to play the previous or next station in the station memory.

Manual station search

Press and hold **<<** or **>>**. Release when the required frequency has almost been reached.

A search is made for the next station that can be received and it is played automatically.

Station tuning

Press or press and hold **△** or **▽** to set the desired frequency manually.

Stations lists

The stations received best in the location you are in are stored in the waveband-specific stations list.

Displaying the stations list

Press **LIST** to display the stations list of the waveband currently active.

Scroll through the list and select the desired station.

Notice

The station currently playing is marked with **▶**.

Updating the stations list

Press and hold **LIST** until a message indicating the update process is displayed.

The stations list is updated.

Preset buttons

The six favourite radio stations of each waveband can be stored on preset buttons. When pressing one of the preset buttons, the favourites page is displayed.

Notice

The station currently playing is marked with **▶**.

Storing preset stations

To store a station to a preset button, activate the desired waveband and station. When the station is playing, press and hold one of the preset button **1...6** on which the desired station is to be stored.

The station name or frequency is displayed next to the respective favourite on the screen.

Retrieving preset stations

To retrieve a station stored as a favourite, press the respective preset button 1...6.

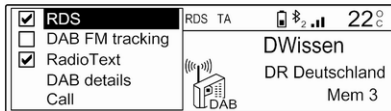
Radio data system

Radio data system (RDS) is a service of FM stations that considerably facilitates the finding of the desired station and its fault-free reception.

Alternative frequencies

If the FM signal of a station is too weak to be picked up by the receiver, the Infotainment system can automatically tune to an alternative FM frequency to continue the programme.

Activate the FM waveband and then press **OK** to display the waveband menu. Activate **RDS**.



If RDS alternative frequency search is activated, **RDS** is displayed in the top line of the screen. If a station is not an RDS station, **RDS** is crossed out.

Notice

This function can also be changed via the multimedia menus. Press **MENU** and then select **Multimedia**.

Radio text

Radio text contains additional information broadcasted by the radio stations, e.g. station name, title or artist of the song currently playing, news information etc.

Activate the FM waveband and then press **OK** to display the waveband menu. Activate **RadioText**.

If the radio text function is activated, **TXT** is displayed in the top line of the screen. If a station does not support the radio text function, **TXT** is crossed out.

Notice

This function can also be changed via the multimedia menus. Press **MENU** and then select **Multimedia**.

Traffic announcements (TA)

Radio traffic service stations are RDS stations that broadcast traffic news. If this function is activated, only traffic service stations are searched for and played.

Radio and media playback is interrupted for the duration of the traffic announcements.

To activate or deactivate the traffic announcement standby facility of the Infotainment system, press **TA**. A corresponding message is displayed confirming your action.

If traffic announcements are activated, **TA** is displayed in the top line of the screen. If a station is not a radio traffic service station, **TA** is crossed out.

Digital audio broadcasting

Alternative frequencies

If the DAB signal of a service is too weak to be picked up by the receiver, the Infotainment system can automatically tune to an alternative FM frequency to continue the programme.

Activate the FM waveband and then press **OK** to display the waveband menu. Activate **DAB FM tracking**.

Notice

This function can also be changed via the multimedia menus. Press **MENU** and then select **Multimedia**.

If DAB FM automatic tracking is activated, **DAB FM** is displayed in the top line of the screen. If a station does not support this function, **DAB FM** is crossed out.

DAB station details

Activate the FM waveband and then press **OK** to display the waveband menu.

Select **DAB details** to display detailed information on the DAB station currently playing.

External devices

USB ports

On the control panel, there is a USB port for the connection of external audio data sources.

Notice

The socket must always be kept clean and dry.

Connecting a USB device

An MP3 player, USB device or SD card (via USB connector / adapter) can be connected to the USB port. A USB hub is not supported. If required, use the appropriate connection cable.


Notice

Not all auxiliary devices are supported by the Infotainment system. Check the compatibility list on our website.

When connected to the USB port, various functions of the above devices can be operated via the controls and menus of the Infotainment system.

The Infotainment system automatically creates playlists upon connection.

Disconnecting a USB device

Press **SRC**  to select a different audio source and then remove the USB storage device.

Caution

Avoid disconnecting the device during playback. This may damage the device or the Infotainment system.


File formats

The audio equipment supports different audio file formats.

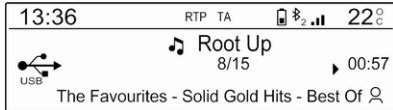
Activating the USB music function

If the device is not yet connected to the Infotainment system, connect the device.

The Infotainment system automatically switches to USB music mode.

If the device is already connected, repeatedly press **SRC**  to change to USB music mode.

Playback of the audio tracks starts automatically.



Playing the next or previous track

Press **>>** to play the next track.

Press **<<** to play the previous track.

Fast forwarding and rewinding

Press and hold **<<<** or **>>>**. Release to return to normal playback mode.

Playing the next or previous folder/artist/playlist

Press **▽** to play the next folder, artist, album, or playlist depending on the track listing options.

Press **△** to play the previous folder, artist, album, or playlist depending on the track listing options.

Browse menu

Using the browse menu, you can search for a track via categories.

Browse function

To display the browse list, press **LIST**. The tracks are sorted in categories of folders, genres, artists, and playlists.

Select the desired categories and choose a track. Select the track to start playback.

Choice of track listing

Press and hold **LIST** to display a selection menu. Scroll through the list and select the desired track listing option. The browse menu is changed accordingly.

Notice

Depending on the metadata stored on the device, not all track listing options may be available.

Notice

This function can also be changed via the multimedia menus. Press **MENU** and then select **Multimedia**.

USB music menu

In the USB music menu, you can set the play mode for the tracks on the device connected.

Activate the USB music mode and then press **OK** to display the USB music menu.

Activate the desired play mode.

Normal: The songs of the album, folder or playlist chosen are played in the usual order.

Random: The songs of the album, folder or playlist chosen are played in random order.

Random all: All tracks stored on the device connected are played in random order.

Repeat: The album, folder or playlist chosen is played repeatedly.

Connecting a Bluetooth device

Bluetooth enabled audio sources (e.g. music mobile phones, MP3 players featuring Bluetooth, etc.) can be connected wirelessly to the Infotainment system.

The external Bluetooth device must be paired to the Infotainment system
 ⇨ 198.

If the device is paired but not connected to the Infotainment system, establish the connection via the **Connections management** menu:

Press **MENU** and then select **Connections**. Select **Connections management** and then choose the desired Bluetooth device to enter a submenu.

To serve as audio source, the device must be connected as media player. Select **Connect media player** or **Connect telephone + media player** as desired. The device is connected.

Disconnecting a Bluetooth device

Press **MENU** and then select **Connections**. Select **Connections management** and then choose the desired Bluetooth device to enter a submenu.

Select **Disconnect media player** to disconnect the device only as Bluetooth audio source. In this case, the connection for the telephone function remains active.

To completely disconnect the device, select **Disconnect telephone + media player**.

Select **Yes** in the message and press **OK**.

Activating the USB music function

If the device is not yet connected to the Infotainment system, connect the device ↻ 198.

The Infotainment system automatically switches to Bluetooth music mode.

If the device is already connected, repeatedly press **SRC** ↻ to change to Bluetooth music mode.

If music playback does not start automatically, it may be required to start the audio files from the Bluetooth device.

Playing the next or previous track

Press **▷▷** to play the next track.

Press **◁◁** to play the previous track.

Speech recognition

The voice pass-thru application of the Infotainment system allows access to the speech recognition commands on a smartphone. See the smartphone

manufacturer's operating instructions to find out whether the smartphone supports this feature.

In order to use the voice pass-thru application, the smartphone must be connected via Bluetooth ↻ 198.

Activating speech recognition

Press and hold **Ⓜ** on the steering wheel until a speech recognition session is started.

Adjusting the volume of voice prompts

Turn **⊕** on the control panel or press the volume button on the steering wheel upwards (increase volume) **⊕** or downwards (decrease volume) **⊖**.

Deactivating speech recognition

Press **Ⓜ** on the steering wheel. The speech recognition session is ended.

Phone

The Phone function provides you with the possibility of having mobile phone conversations via a vehicle

microphone and the vehicle loudspeakers as well as operating the most important mobile phone functions via the Infotainment system in the vehicle. To be able to use the Phone function, the mobile phone must be connected to the Infotainment system via Bluetooth.

Not all functionalities of the Phone function are supported by every mobile phone. The possible functionalities depend on the relevant mobile phone and network provider. You will find further information on this in the operating instructions for your mobile phone or you can enquire about them with your network provider.

Important information for operation and traffic safety

Warning

Mobile phones have effects on your environment. For this reason safety regulations and directions have been prepared. You should

be familiar with the related directions before you use the telephone function.

Warning

Use of the hands-free facility while driving can be dangerous because your concentration is reduced when telephoning. Park your vehicle before you use the hands-free facility. Follow the stipulations of the country in which you find yourself at present.

Do not forget to follow the special regulations that apply in specific areas and always switch off the mobile phone if the use of mobile phones is prohibited, if interference is caused by the mobile phone or if dangerous situations can occur.

Pairing a Bluetooth device

Activate the Bluetooth function of the Bluetooth device. For further information, see the operating instructions for the Bluetooth device.

Press **MENU**, select **Connections** and press **OK**.

Select **Search for a device** and press **OK**. As soon as the device is detected, the list **Devices detected** is displayed.

- If SSP (secure simple pairing) is supported: Confirm the messages on the Infotainment system and the Bluetooth device.
- If SSP (secure simple pairing) is not supported: On the Infotainment system: a message is displayed asking you to enter a PIN code on your Bluetooth device. On the Bluetooth device: enter the PIN code and confirm your input.

The device is automatically connected. In the top line of the display, the Bluetooth symbol is changed: The **X** of the symbol is suppressed and **⌘** is shown.

Notice

Your mobile phone book will be downloaded automatically. The presentation and order of the telephone book entries may be

different on the Infotainment system's display and the mobile phone's display.

If the Bluetooth connection has been successfully performed: in case another Bluetooth device had been connected to the Infotainment system, this device is now disconnected from the system.

If the Bluetooth connection failed: start the procedure described above again or consult the operating instructions for the Bluetooth device.


Connecting another paired device

Activate the Bluetooth function of the Bluetooth device. For further information, see the operating instructions for the Bluetooth device.

Press **MENU**, select **Connections** and press **OK**.

Select **Connections management** and press **OK**. A list of all Bluetooth devices currently paired to the Infotainment system is displayed.

Notice

The Bluetooth device currently connected to the Infotainment system is indicated by .


To establish the connection, select the desired device and press **OK**.

Disconnecting a device

Press **MENU**, select **Connections** and press **OK**.

Select **Connections management** and press **OK**. A list of all Bluetooth devices currently paired to the Infotainment system is displayed.

Notice

The Bluetooth device currently connected to the Infotainment system is indicated by .

Select the device currently connected to the Infotainment system.

Press **OK** to confirm your selection.

Select **Disconnect telephone**.


To disconnect the device, select **Yes** and press **OK**.

Removing a paired device

Press **MENU**, select **Connections** and press **OK**.

Select **Connections management**. A list of all Bluetooth devices currently paired to the Infotainment system is displayed.

Notice

The Bluetooth device currently connected to the Infotainment system is indicated by .

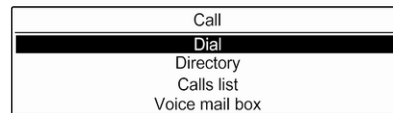
Select the desired device and press **OK** to confirm.

To remove the paired device, select **Delete connection** and press **OK**.

Initiating a phone call

Entering a number manually

Press **MENU**, select **Telephone** and then select **Call**.



Select **Dial**.

Dial										
0123										
0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	+ # *
OK	Correct									

Enter the desired number: Select the desired digits and confirm each digit with **OK**.

To start dialling, select **OK** on the display.

Using the phone book

The phone book contains contact names and numbers.

Press **MENU** and then select **Telephone**.

Select **Call** and then select **Directory**.

To start dialling, scroll through the list and select the desired entry name.

Using the call list

All incoming, outgoing, or missed calls are registered in the call list.

Press **MENU** and then select **Telephone**.

Select **Call** and then select **Calls list**.

To start dialling, scroll through the list and select the desired entry.

Sending contacts from a mobile device to the Infotainment system

With certain telephones connected by Bluetooth, you can send a contact to the directory of the Infotainment system. Contacts imported this way are saved in a permanent directory visible to all, irrespective of the telephone connect.

To enter this directory, press **MENU** and then select **Telephone**.

Select **Directory management**.

The menu for this directory is not accessible if it is empty.

Putting incoming calls automatically on hold

For safety reasons the Infotainment system can put all incoming calls on hold by default.

To activate this function, press **MENU** and then select **Telephone**.

Telephone
Call
Directory management
Telephone management
Hang up

Select **Telephone management** and then select **Telephone parameters**.

To activate the **Automatic on hold** function, press **OK**.

Incoming phone call

If an audio mode, e.g. the radio or CD mode, is active at the time of an incoming call, the relating audio source will be muted and stay muted until the call ends.

To answer the call, select **Yes** in the message shown in the display.

To reject the call, select **No** in the message shown in the display or press and hold **✓** on the steering wheel.

To put an incoming call on hold, select **On hold** in the message shown in the display.

Second incoming phone call

If a second phone call comes in during an ongoing call, a message is displayed.

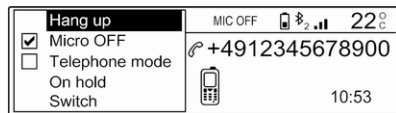
To answer the second call and end the ongoing call: select **Yes** in the message shown in the display.

To reject the second call and continue the ongoing call: select **No** in the message shown in the display.

Functions during a phone call

During an ongoing phone call, you can use the functions of the contextual menu.

Press **OK** to open the contextual menu.



To end the call, select **Hang up**.

To switch off the microphone, activate **Micro OFF**. To switch the microphone on, deselect **Micro OFF**.

To transfer the call to the telephone (for example to leave the vehicle while continuing the conversation), activate **Telephone mode**. To transfer the call to the Infotainment system, deselect **Telephone mode**.

To put the call on hold, select **On hold** during an ongoing call. If a call has been put on hold, the menu item **On hold** changes to **Resume**. To return to a call put on hold, select **Resume**.

To switch between two calls, select **Switch**.

Climate control

Climate control systems	203
Heating and ventilation system	203
Air conditioning system	204
Electronic climate control system	207
Parking heater	211
Temperature preconditioning . .	212
Air vents	214
Adjustable air vents	214
Fixed air vents	215
Maintenance	215
Air intake	215
Air conditioning regular operation	216
Service	216

Climate control systems

Heating and ventilation system



Controls for:

- temperature °
- air distribution and
- fan speed
- air recirculation
- heated rear window and exterior mirrors
- heated seats

Heated rear window ⇨ 29.

Heated exterior mirrors ⇨ 24.

Heated seats ⇨ 36.

Temperature

Adjust the temperature by turning to the desired temperature.

HI : warm

LO : cold

Heating will not be fully effective until the engine has reached normal operating temperature.

Air distribution

: to windscreen and front door windows

: to head area via adjustable air vents

: to foot well and windscreen

All combinations are possible.

Fan speed





Adjust the air flow by turning to the desired speed.

clockwise : increase
 anticlockwise : decrease

Air recirculation system




Press  to activate air recirculation mode. The LED in the button illuminates to indicate activation.

Press  again to deactivate air recirculation mode.

Warning





The exchange of fresh air is reduced in air recirculation mode. In operation without cooling the air humidity increases, so the

windows may mist up from inside. The quality of the passenger compartment air deteriorates, which may cause the vehicle occupants to feel drowsy.

In warm and very humid ambient air conditions, the windscreen may mist up from outside when cold air is directed towards it. If windscreen mists up from outside, activate windscreen wiper and deactivate .

Demisting and defrosting



- Press : the air distribution is directed towards the windscreen.
- Set temperature controller  to warmest level.
- Set fan speed  to highest level.
- Switch on heated rear window .
- Open side air vents as required and direct them towards the door windows.

Heated rear window, windscreen and exterior mirrors  ↗ 29.



Heated seats  ↗ 36.

Air conditioning system



Controls for:


- temperature 
- air distribution ,  and 
- fan speed 

- cooling **A/C**
- air recirculation 
- heated rear window and exterior mirrors 

Heated rear window  ⇨ 29.

Heated exterior mirrors  ⇨ 24.

Temperature


Adjust the temperature by turning  to the desired temperature.

HI : warm


LO : cold

Heating will not be fully effective until the engine has reached normal operating temperature.

Air distribution , ,


 : to windscreen and front door windows

 : to head area via adjustable air vents

 : to foot well

All combinations are possible.

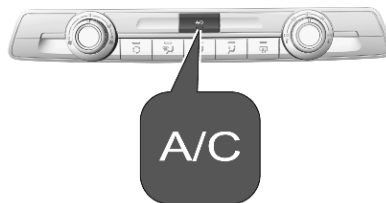
Fan speed

Adjust the air flow by turning  to the desired speed.

clockwise : increase

anticlockwise : decrease

Cooling **A/C**



Press **A/C** to switch on cooling. The LED in the button illuminates to indicate activation. Cooling is only functional when the engine is running and fan is switched on.

Press **A/C** again to switch off cooling.

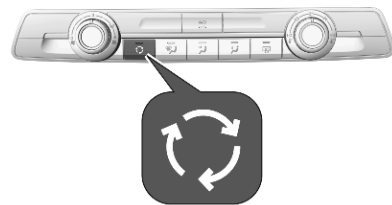
The air conditioning system cools and dehumidifies (dries) as soon as the outside temperature is slightly above


the freezing point. Therefore, condensation may form and drip from under the vehicle.


If no cooling or drying is required, switch off the cooling system for fuel saving reasons.

Activated cooling may inhibit Autostops. Stop-start system ⇨ 222.

Air recirculation system




Press  to activate air recirculation mode. The LED in the button illuminates to indicate activation.

Press  again to deactivate air recirculation mode.

⚠ Warning





The exchange of fresh air is reduced in air recirculation mode. In operation without cooling the air humidity increases, so the windows may mist up from inside. The quality of the passenger compartment air deteriorates, which may cause the vehicle occupants to feel drowsy.

In warm and very humid ambient air conditions, the windscreen may mist up from outside when cold air is directed towards it. If windscreen mists up from outside, activate windscreen wiper and deactivate .

Maximum cooling



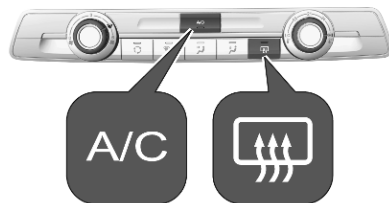
Briefly open the windows so that hot air can disperse quickly.




- Switch on cooling **A/C**.
- Press  for air recirculation system on.
- Press  for air distribution.
- Set temperature control  to coldest level.
- Set fan speed  to highest level.
- Open all vents.

Heated rear window, windscreen and exterior mirrors  ⇨ 29.

Heated seats  ⇨ 36.

Demisting and defrosting the windows



- Set fan speed  to highest level.
- Set temperature controller  to warmest level.
- Switch on cooling **A/C**, if required.
- Switch on heated rear window .
- Open side air vents as required and direct them towards the door windows.

Notice

If the settings for demisting and defrosting are selected, an Autostop may be inhibited.

If the settings for demisting and defrosting are selected while the engine is in an Autostop, the engine will restart automatically. Stop-start system ↪ 222.

Stop-start system ↪ 222.



Electronic climate control system

The dual zone climate control allows different temperatures for driver side and front passenger side.





In automatic mode, temperature, fan speed and air distribution are regulated automatically.



Controls for:

- manual air recirculation 
- air distribution 
- rocker switch for adjusting the temperature on driver side and front passenger side



- demisting and defrosting 
- cooling A/C
- automatic mode **AUTO**
- dual zone temperature synchronisation **MONO**
- heated rear window and exterior mirrors 
- fan speed  +  -

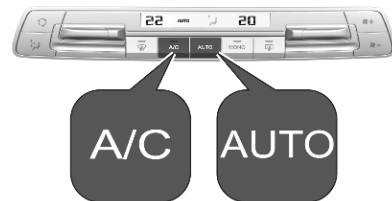
Heated rear window  ↪ 29.

Heated exterior mirrors  ↪ 24.

Activated functions are indicated by the LED in the respective control.

The electronic climate control system is only fully operational when the engine is running.

Make sure the sun sensor used by the electronic climate control system is not covered ↪ 77.

Automatic mode AUTO

Basic setting for maximum comfort:

- Press **AUTO**, the air distribution and fan speed are regulated automatically.
- Open all air vents to allow optimised air distribution in automatic mode.

- Air conditioning must be activated for optimal cooling and demisting. Press **A/C** to switch on air conditioning. The LED in the button indicates activation.
- Set the preselected temperatures for driver and front passenger using the left and right rotary ring. Recommended temperature is 22 °C.

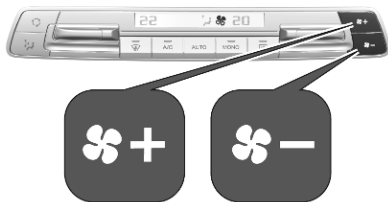
Press successively **AUTO** to select the desired automatic settings:



- **Soft Auto** for a soft and silent air distribution.
- **Auto** for thermal comfort and silent air distribution.
- **Auto Fast** for a dynamic and efficient air distribution.

Manual settings

Climate control system settings can be changed by activating the following functions:

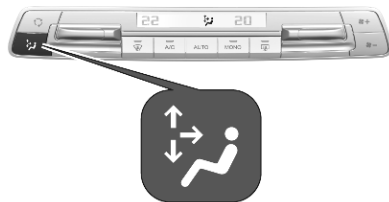
Fan speed + -








Press  + to increase or  - to decrease the air flow.


To return to automatic mode, press **AUTO**.

Air distribution



Press  successively until the desired direction of the air distribution is displayed:

-  : to windscreen and front door windows
-  : to head area and rear seats via adjustable air vents
-  : to front and rear foot well
-  : to windscreen and front door windows, to head area and rear seats via adjustable air vents, to front and rear foot well

Combinations of different air distribution options can be selected by pressing  successively.

To return to automatic air distribution, press **AUTO**.

Temperature preselection



Set the preselected temperatures separately for the driver and the front passenger to the desired value using the left and right switch for adjusting the temperature.

Recommended temperature is 22 °C. Temperature is indicated in the display beside the switches for adjusting the temperature.

If the minimum temperature **Lo** is set, the climate control system runs at maximum cooling, if cooling **A/C** is switched on.

If the maximum temperature **Hi** is set, the climate control system runs at maximum heating.

Notice

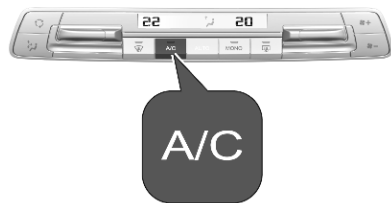
If **A/C** is switched on, reducing the set cabin temperature can cause the engine to restart from an Autostop or inhibit an Autostop.

Stop-start system ⇨ 222.

Dual zone temperature synchronisation MONO

Press **MONO** to link passenger side temperature setting to the driver side / to remove the linking of the passenger side temperature setting to the driver side. The passenger side temperature setting is linked to the driver side if the LED in the button **MONO** is not illuminated.

Air conditioning A/C



Press **A/C** to switch on cooling. Cooling is only functional when the engine is running and climate control fan is switched on.



Press **A/C** again to switch off cooling.


The air conditioning system cools and dehumidifies (dries) when outside temperature is above a specific level. Therefore condensation may form and drip from under the vehicle.

If no cooling or drying is required, switch off the cooling system for fuel saving reasons.

Manual air recirculation 




Press  to activate the air recirculation mode.  is shown in the display to indicate activation.

Press  again to deactivate recirculation mode.

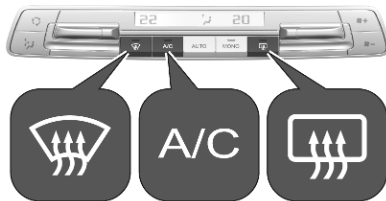
 **Warning**


The exchange of fresh air is reduced in air recirculation mode. In operation without cooling, the air humidity increases, so the windows may mist up from inside. The quality of the passenger




compartment air deteriorates, which may cause the occupants to feel drowsy.

In warm and very humid ambient air conditions, the windscreen may mist up from outside, when cold air is directed towards it. If windscreen mists up from outside, activate windscreen wiper and deactivate .



Demisting and defrosting the windows 




- Press . The LED in the button illuminates to indicate activation.

- Air conditioning and automatic mode are automatically switched on. The LED in the button **A/C** illuminates, **AUTO** is shown in the display.
- Temperature and air distribution are set automatically and the fan runs at high speed.
- Switch on heated rear window .
- Switch on heated windscreen .
- To return to previous mode, press  again.

Notice


If  is pressed while the engine is running, an Autostop will be inhibited until  is pressed again.

If  is pressed while the engine is in an Autostop, the engine will restart automatically.

Stop-start system  222.

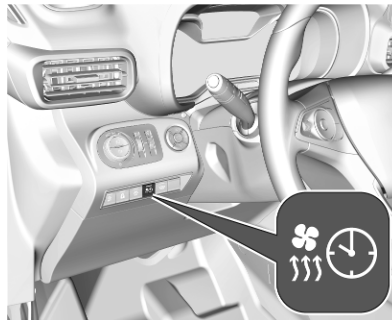
Deactivation of electronic climate control system



Press  – subsequently until the electronic climate control system is deactivated.

Parking heater

The parking heater allows to heat the vehicle's interior and to ventilate the vehicle's interior with ambient air.



The operating status of the parking heater is shown by an indicator with a LED.

- LED illuminates: A timer has been set.
- LED flashes: The system is operating.

The LED is extinguished at the end of the heating operation or when the parking heater is stopped using the remote control.

The parking heater can be programmed using the Graphic Info Display / Colour Info Display.

Additionally, the parking heater can be switched on and off using a remote control.

Radio (Infotainment system)

Press **MENU** to open the menu page.


Press **Heating** or **Ventilation**.

Press **<<** or **>>** to select the desired timer. Confirm with **OK**.

Set the required time of the timer: Press **△** or **▽** to set the desired value. Confirm with **OK**.

To set the timer, press **<<** or **>>** to select **OK** on the display. Confirm with **OK**.

Multimedia / Multimedia Navi Pro

Press .

Press **Car Apps**.

Press **Temperature conditioning**.

Close pop-up messages with **←**.



Programme the parking heater

Press **Settings**.

Select **Heating** or **Ventilation** and then press .

Two starting times for the operation of the parking heater can be programmed.


Press **Time 1** or **Time 2** to select the desired timer and then press .

Define the time by pressing  **Time 1** for the timer one or  **Time 2** for the timer two.

Press  to save the settings.

Activate / deactivate the programming

Press **State**.


Activate or deactivate **Temperature conditioning** by pressing **ON** or **OFF** and then press .

Only one starting time can be activated.

Parking heater via remote control

The parking heater can be switched on or off using a remote control.

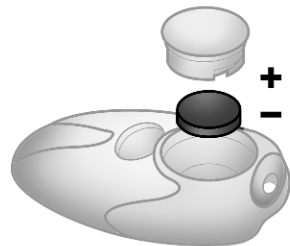


Press . The parking heater is activated.

Press **OFF**. The parking heater is deactivated.

Replacing the battery in the remote control

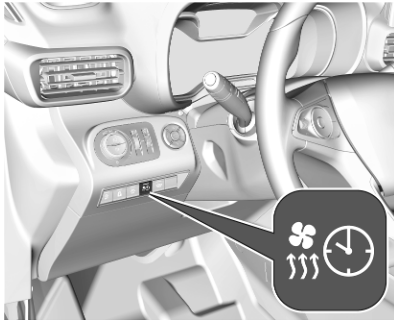
If the indicator light of the remote control turns yellow, the charging status of the battery is weak. If the indicator light does not illuminate anymore, the battery is discharged and has to be replaced.



1. Remove the cap of the remote control by unscrewing it with a coin and remove the battery
2. Replace battery with a battery of the same type. Pay attention to the installation position.
3. Screw the cap in its place .

Temperature preconditioning

The temperature preconditioning allows to heat the vehicle's interior and to ventilate the vehicle's interior with ambient air.



The temperature preconditioning can be programmed using the Infotainment system.

This function is also available via the MyVauxhall App.

The operating status of the temperature preconditioning is shown by an indicator with an LED.

- LED illuminates: A timer has been set.
- LED flashes: The system is operating.

The LED is extinguished at the end of the heating /ventilation operation or when the temperature preconditioning is stopped using the remote control.

Operating conditions

Notice

The temperature preconditioning is only activated if the ignition is off and the vehicle is locked.

If the charging level of the high voltage battery is below 30%, the temperature preconditioning is not activated.

When the vehicle is plugged in, battery charging takes precedence over pre-conditioning.

Consequently, it can only be activated if the battery is charged above a threshold fixed at 80%.

If a recurrent heating / ventilation is programmed and two heating / ventilation procedures are carried out without operating the vehicle, the programming is deactivated.

Programming via Infotainment system

The temperature preconditioning can be programmed using the Infotainment system. Two timers can be defined. A timer defines the time at which the vehicle's interior is to be heated / ventilated to a factory-set temperature.

Restrictions:

- Only one timer can be activated.
- If two timers are defined and the activated timer is cancelled, the inactive timer is not activated automatically. The timer has to be activated manually.
- If only one timer is defined and activated and the vehicle is not started, the timer will be cancelled for the following day. The timer has to be activated again.

Radio (Infotainment system)

Press **MENU** to open the menu page.

Press **Heating** or **Ventilation**.

Press << or >> to select the desired timer. Confirm with **OK**.

Set the required time of the timer:
Press Δ or ∇ to set the desired value. Confirm with **OK**.

To set the timer, press \lll or \ggg to select **OK** on the display. Confirm with **OK**.

Multimedia / Multimedia Navi

Press \square .

Press **Temperature conditioning**.

Activate **Temperature conditioning** by pressing **ON**.

Press **Settings**.

Select **Heating** or **Ventilation**.

Press **Time 1** or **Time 2** to select the desired timer.

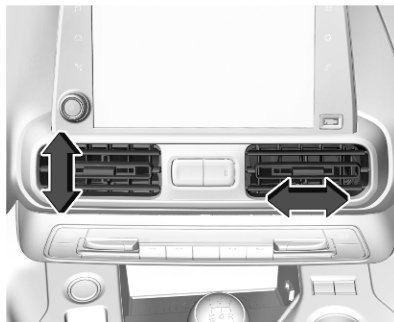
Define the time of the selected timer.

Press \square to save the settings and set the timer.

Air vents

Adjustable air vents

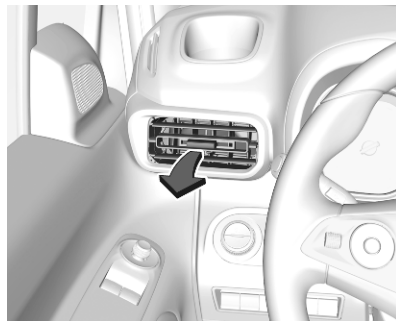
Air vents in the instrument panel



Direct the flow of air by tilting and swivelling the slats.

To close the vent, swivel the slats inwards.

Outer air vents in the instrument panel



Direct the flow of air by tilting and swivelling the slats.


To close the vent, swivel the slats outwards.

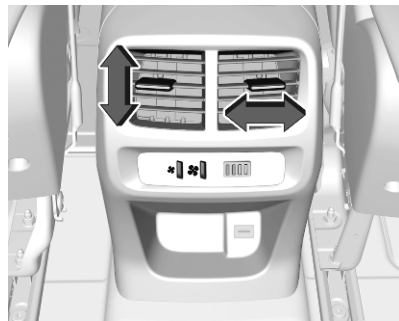
At least two air vents must be open while cooling is on.

\triangle Warning

Do not attach any objects to the slats of the air vents. Risk of damage and injury in case of an accident.

Rear air vents in the centre console

To activate the distribution of climatized / heated air via the rear air vents, press .



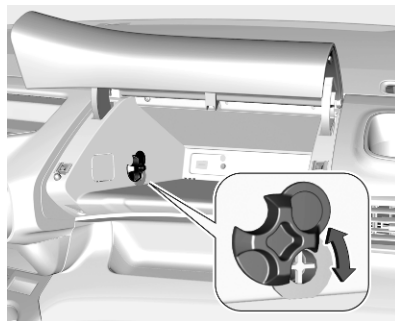
Direct the flow of air by tilting and swivelling the slats.

Adjust the air flow to select the desired speed.

 : increase air flow

 : decrease air flow

Air vent in the glovebox



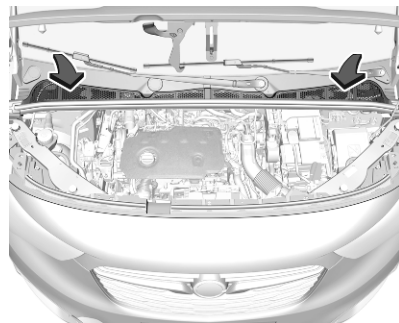
Turn the slider up or down in order to close or open the air vent.

Fixed air vents

Additional air vents are located beneath the windscreen, the door windows and in the foot wells.

Maintenance

Air intake



The air intake in front of the windscreen in the engine compartment must be kept clear to allow air intake. Remove any leaves, dirt or snow.

Air conditioning regular operation

In order to ensure continuously efficient performance, cooling must be operated for a few minutes once a month, irrespective of the weather and time of year. Operation with cooling is not possible when the outside temperature is too low.

Service

For optimal cooling performance, it is recommended to annually check the climate control system, starting three years after initial vehicle registration, including:

- functionality and pressure test
- heating functionality
- leakage check
- check of drive belts
- cleaning of condenser and evaporator drainage
- performance check

Driving and operating

Driving hints	218	Parking brake	238	Programmable charging	290
Control of the vehicle	218	Brake assist	241	Charging status	291
Steering	218	Hill start assist	241	Fuel	292
Starting and operating	218	Regenerative braking	241	Fuel for petrol engines	292
New vehicle running-in	218	Ride control systems	242	Fuel for diesel engines	293
Ignition switch positions	218	Electronic Stability Control and		Refuelling	294
Power button	219	Traction Control system	242	Fuel consumption - CO ₂ -	
Starting the engine	220	Descent control system	243	Emissions	295
Overrun cut-off	222	Selective ride control	244	Trailer hitch	296
Stop-start system	222	Driver assistance systems	246	General information	296
Parking	225	Cruise control	246	Driving characteristics and	
Engine exhaust	226	Speed limiter	248	towing tips	296
Exhaust filter	226	Adaptive cruise control	251	Trailer towing	296
Catalytic converter	226	Forward collision alert	257	Towing equipment	297
AdBlue	227	Active emergency braking	258	Trailer stability assist	300
Electric drive unit	230	Front pedestrian protection	262		
Automatic transmission	233	Parking assist	263		
Manual transmission	236	Advanced parking assist	267		
Drive systems	237	Side blind spot alert	270		
Drive modes	237	Passenger side camera	272		
Brakes	238	Panoramic view system	273		
Antilock brake system	238	Rear view camera	276		
		Traffic sign assistant	278		
		Lane keep assist	280		
		Driver alert	282		
		Charging	283		
		General information	283		
		Charging types	284		
		Charging cable	285		

Driving hints

Control of the vehicle

Warning

Do not drive on an easily ignitable surface. The high temperature of the exhaust system or other systems could ignite the surface.

Never coast with engine not running

Many systems will not function in this situation (e.g. brake servo unit, power steering). Driving in this manner is a danger to yourself and others.

All systems function during an Autostop.

Stop-start system ⇨ 222.

Pedals

To ensure the pedal travel is uninhibited, there must be no mats in the area of the pedals.

Use only floor mats, which fit properly and are fixed by the retainers on the driver side.

Steering

If power steering assist is lost because the engine stops or due to a system malfunction, the vehicle can be steered but may require increased effort.

Starting and operating

New vehicle running-in

Do not brake unnecessarily hard for the first few journeys.

During the first drive, smoke may occur because of wax and engine oil evaporating off the exhaust system. Park the vehicle in the open for a while after the first drive and avoid inhaling the fumes.

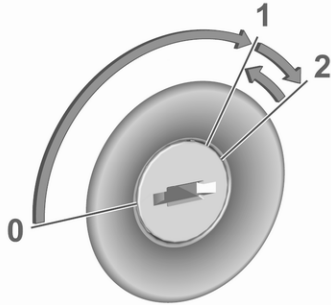
During the running-in period, fuel and engine oil consumption may be higher.

Additionally, the cleaning process of the exhaust filter may take place more often.

Exhaust filter ⇨ 226.

Ignition switch positions

Turn key:



- 0** : ignition off: some functions remain active until key is removed or driver's door is opened, provided the ignition was on previously
- 1** : ignition on power mode: ignition is on, diesel engine is preheating, control indicators illuminate and most electrical functions are operable
- 2** : engine start: release key after engine has been started

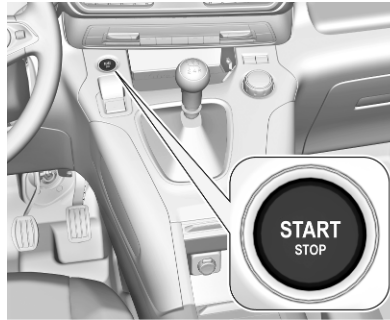
Steering wheel lock

Remove key from ignition switch and turn steering wheel until it engages.

⚠ Danger

Never remove the key from ignition switch during driving as this will cause steering wheel lock.

Power button



The electronic key must be inside the vehicle.

Engine start

Operate the clutch pedal (manual transmission), the brake pedal and press **Start/Stop**.

Ignition on power mode without starting the engine

Press **Start/Stop** without operating clutch or brake pedal. Control indicators illuminate and most electrical functions are operable.

Engine and ignition off

Press **Start/Stop** briefly in each mode or when engine is running and vehicle is stationary. Some functions remain active until driver's door is opened, provided the ignition was on previously.

Emergency shut off during driving

Press **Start/Stop** for about three seconds ⇨ 220. Steering wheel locks as soon as vehicle is stationary.

Steering wheel lock

The steering wheel lock activates automatically when:

- The vehicle is stationary.
- The ignition has been switched off.

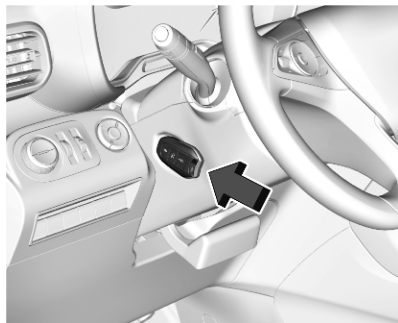
To release steering wheel lock, open and close driver's door and switch the ignition on power mode or start the engine directly.

⚠ Warning

If the vehicle battery is discharged, the vehicle must not be towed or tow-started as the steering wheel lock cannot be disengaged.

Operation on vehicles with electronic key system in case of failure

If either the electronic key fails or the battery of the electronic key is weak, a message may be displayed in the Driver Information Centre.

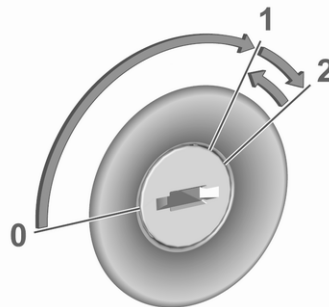


Hold the electronic key with buttons outside at the marking on the steering column cover as shown in the illustration.

Operate the clutch pedal (manual transmission), the brake pedal and press **Start/Stop**.

This option is intended for emergencies only. Replace the electronic key battery as soon as possible ⇨ 8.

For unlocking or locking the doors, see fault in radio remote control unit or electronic key system ⇨ 10.


Starting the engine**Vehicles with ignition switch**

Turn key to position 1 to release the steering wheel lock.

Manual transmission: operate clutch and brake pedal.

Automatic transmission: operate brake pedal and move selector lever to **P** or **N**.

Do not operate accelerator pedal.

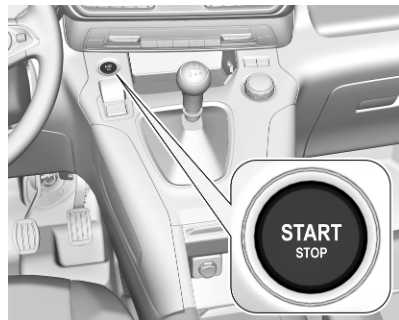
Diesel engines: wait until control indicator  extinguishes.


Turn key briefly to position 2 and release after engine has been started.

Manual transmission: during an Autostop, the engine can be started by depressing the clutch pedal ↻ 222.

Automatic transmission: during an Autostop, the engine can be started by releasing the brake pedal ↻ 222.

Vehicles with power button



- Manual transmission: operate clutch and brake pedal.
- Automatic transmission: operate brake pedal and move selector lever to **P** or **N**.
- Do not operate accelerator pedal.
- Press **Start/Stop** button.
- Release button after starting procedure begins. Diesel engine starts after control indicator  for preheating extinguishes.
- Before restarting or to switch off the engine when vehicle is stationary, press **Start/Stop** once more briefly.

To start the engine during an Autostop:

- Manual transmission: during an Autostop, the engine can be started by depressing the clutch pedal ↻ 222.
- Automatic transmission: during an Autostop, the engine can be started by releasing the brake pedal ↻ 222.

Emergency shut off during driving

If the engine needs to be switched off during driving in case of emergency, press **Start/Stop** for five seconds.

Danger

Switching off the engine during driving may cause loss of power support for brake and steering systems. Assistance systems and airbag systems are disabled. Lighting and brake lights will extinguish. Therefore power down the engine and ignition while driving only when required in case of emergency.

Starting the vehicle at low temperatures

Starting the engine without additional heaters is possible down to -25 °C for diesel engines and -30 °C for petrol engines. Required is an engine oil with the correct viscosity, the correct fuel, performed services and a sufficiently charged vehicle battery. With temperatures below -30 °C the automatic transmission requires a warming phase of approx. five minutes. The selector lever must be in position **P**.

Heating functionalities

Notice

Individual heating functionalities, such as heated seats or heated steering wheel, may be temporarily unavailable in the event of electrical loading constraints. Functions will be resumed after some minutes.

Turbo engine warm-up

Upon start-up, engine available torque may be limited for a short time, especially when the engine temperature is cold. The limitation is to allow the lubrication system to fully protect the engine.

Overrun cut-off

The fuel supply is automatically cut off during overrun, i.e. when the vehicle is driven with a gear engaged but accelerator pedal is released.



Depending on driving conditions, the overrun cut-off may be deactivated.


Stop-start system

The stop-start system helps to save fuel and to reduce the exhaust emissions. When conditions allow, it switches off the engine as soon as the vehicle is at a low speed or at a standstill, e.g. at a traffic light or in a traffic jam.

Activation

The stop-start system is available as soon as the engine is started, the vehicle starts-off and the conditions as stated below in this section are fulfilled.

The system is ready to operate when the LED in the button  is not illuminated. To activate the system when the system is deactivated, press .

If the stop-start system is temporarily not available and the button  is pressed, the LED in the button flashes.

Deactivation



Deactivate the stop-start system manually by pressing (A) . The deactivation is indicated when the LED in the button illuminates.

Autostop

Vehicles with manual transmission

An Autostop can be activated at a standstill or at speed below 12 mph.

Activate an Autostop as follows:

- Depress the clutch pedal.
- Set the selector lever to neutral.
- Release the clutch pedal.

The engine will be switched off while the ignition stays on.

Vehicles with automatic transmission
If the vehicle is at a standstill with depressed brake pedal, Autostop is activated automatically.

The engine will be switched off while the ignition stays on.

The stop-start system will be disabled on inclines of 12% or more.

Indication



An Autostop is indicated by control indicator (A) .

During an Autostop, the heating and brake performance will be maintained.

Conditions for an Autostop

The stop-start system checks if each of the following conditions is fulfilled.

- The stop-start system is not manually deactivated.
- The driver's door is closed or the driver's seat belt is fastened.
- The vehicle battery is sufficiently charged and in good condition.
- The engine is warmed up.
- The engine coolant temperature is not too high.
- The engine exhaust temperature is not too high, e.g. after driving with high engine load.
- The ambient temperature is not too low.
- The climate control system allows an Autostop.
- The brake vacuum is sufficient.
- The self-cleaning function of the exhaust filter is not active.
- The vehicle was driven at least at walking speed since the last Autostop.

Otherwise an Autostop will be inhibited.

Notice

The Autostop may be inhibited for several hours after a battery replacement or reconnection.

Certain settings of the climate control system may inhibit an Autostop.

Climate control ⇨ 204.

Immediately after higher speed driving an Autostop may be inhibited.

New vehicle running-in ⇨ 218.

Vehicle battery discharge protection

To ensure reliable engine restarts, several vehicle battery discharge protection features are implemented as part of the stop-start system.

Power saving measures

During an Autostop, several electrical features such as auxiliary electric heater or rear window heating are disabled or switched to a power saving mode. The fan speed of the climate control system is reduced to save power.

Restart of the engine by the driver

Vehicles with manual transmission

Depress the clutch pedal without depressing the brake pedal to restart the engine.

Vehicles with automatic transmission

The engine is restarted if

- the brake pedal is released while the selector lever is in position **D** or **M**
- or the brake pedal is released or the selector lever is in position **N** when the selector lever is moved to position **D** or **M**
- or the selector lever is moved to position **R**.

Restart of the engine by the stop-start system

The selector lever must be in neutral to enable an automatic restart.

If one of the following conditions occurs during an Autostop, the engine will be restarted automatically by the stop-start system:

- The stop-start system is manually deactivated.
- The driver's seat belt is unfastened and the driver's door is opened.
- The engine temperature is too low.
- The charging level of the vehicle battery is below a defined level.
- The brake vacuum is not sufficient.
- The vehicle is driven at least at walking speed.
- The climate control system requests an engine start.
- The air conditioning is manually switched on.

If an electrical accessory, e.g. a portable CD player, is connected to the power outlet, a brief power drop during the restart might be noticeable.

Parking

Warning

- Do not park the vehicle on an easily ignitable surface. The high temperature of the exhaust system could ignite the surface.
- Apply the parking brake.
- If the vehicle is on a level surface or uphill slope, engage first gear or set the selector lever to position **P**. On an uphill slope, turn the front wheels away from the kerb.
If the vehicle is on a downhill slope, engage reverse gear or set the selector lever to position **P**. Turn the front wheels towards the kerb.
- Close the windows.
- Switch off the engine.
- Remove the ignition key from the ignition switch or switch off ignition on vehicles with power button. Depending on version,

turn the steering wheel until the steering wheel lock is felt to engage.

- Lock the vehicle.
- Activate the anti-theft alarm system.
- The engine cooling fans may run after the engine has been switched off ⇨ 304.

Caution

After running at high engine speeds or with high engine loads, operate the engine briefly at a low load or run in neutral for approx. 30 seconds before switching off, in order to protect the turbocharger.

Notice

In the event of an accident with airbag deployment, the engine is switched off automatically if the vehicle comes to a standstill within a certain time.

In countries with extremely low temperatures it may be necessary to park the vehicle without applied parking brake. Make sure to park the vehicle on a level surface.

Engine exhaust

Danger

Engine exhaust gases contain poisonous carbon monoxide, which is colourless and odourless and could be fatal if inhaled.



If exhaust gases enter the interior of the vehicle, open the windows. Have the cause of the fault rectified by a workshop.

Avoid driving with an open load compartment, otherwise exhaust gases could enter the vehicle.

Exhaust filter

Automatic cleaning process

The exhaust filter system filters soot particles out of the exhaust gases.



The start of saturation of the exhaust filter is indicated by the temporary illumination of  or , accompanied by a message in the Driver Information Centre.

As soon as the traffic conditions permit, regenerate the filter by driving at a vehicle speed of at least 40 mph until the control indicator extinguishes.

Notice

On a new vehicle, the first exhaust filter regeneration operations may be accompanied by a burning smell, which is normal. Following prolonged operation of the vehicle at very low speed or at idle, water vapour can be emitted at the exhaust on acceleration. This does not affect the behaviour of the vehicle or the environment.

Cleaning process not possible

If  or  stays on, accompanied by an audible signal and a message, this indicates that the exhaust filter additive level is too low.

The reservoir must be topped-up without delay. Seek the assistance of a workshop.

Catalytic converter

The catalytic converter reduces the amount of harmful substances in the exhaust gases.

Caution

Fuel grades other than those listed on pages ⇨ 292, ⇨ 350 could damage the catalytic converter or electronic components.

Unburnt petrol will overheat and damage the catalytic converter. Therefore avoid excessive use of the starter, running the fuel tank dry and starting the engine by pushing or towing.

In the event of misfiring, uneven engine running, a reduction in engine performance or other unusual problems, have the cause of the fault rectified by a workshop as soon as possible. In an emergency, driving can be continued for a short period, keeping vehicle speed and engine speed low.

AdBlue

General information

The selective catalytic reduction (BlueInjection) is a method to substantially reduce the nitrogen oxides in the exhaust emission. This is achieved by injecting a Diesel Exhaust Fluid (DEF) into the exhaust system. The ammonia released by the fluid reacts with nitrous gases (NO_x) from the exhaust and turns it into nitrogen and water.

The designation of this fluid is AdBlue®. It is a non-toxic, non-flammable, colourless and odourless fluid which consists of 32% urea and 68% water.

Warning

Avoid contact of your eyes or skin with AdBlue.

In case of eye or skin contact, rinse off with water.

Caution

Avoid contact of the paintwork with AdBlue.

In case of contact, rinse off with water.

AdBlue freezes at a temperature of approx. -11 °C. As the vehicle is equipped with an AdBlue preheater, the emissions reduction at low temperatures is ensured. The AdBlue preheater works automatically.

In some circumstances below the mentioned temperature, an error message appears in the Driver Information Centre. In this event, park the vehicle in a space with a higher ambient temperature until AdBlue is liquefied.

Notice

Frozen and again liquefied AdBlue is usable without quality loss.


The typical AdBlue consumption is approx. 2 l per 600 miles, but can also be higher depending on driving behaviour (e.g. high load or towing).

Level warnings


Depending on the calculated range of AdBlue, different messages are displayed in the Driver Information Centre. The messages and the restrictions are a legal requirement.

1. The first possible warning is **Top up emissions additive: Starting prevented in 1500 mi.**

When switching on the ignition, this warning will show up once briefly with the calculated range.

Additionally, control indicator  will illuminate and a chime will sound. Driving is possible without any restrictions.


2. The next warning level is entered with a range below 500 miles. The message with the current range will always be displayed when ignition is switched on.

Additionally, control indicator  will illuminate and a chime will sound. Refill AdBlue before entering the next warning level.

When driving, the chime sounds and the message is displayed

every 60 miles until the additive tank has been topped-up.


3. The next warning level is entered with a range below 60 miles. The message with the current range will always be displayed when ignition is switched on.

Additionally, control indicator  will flash and a chime will sound. Refill AdBlue as soon as possible before the AdBlue tank is completely empty. Otherwise, a restart of the engine will not be possible.

When driving, the chime sounds and the message is displayed every 6 miles until the additive tank has been topped-up.

4. The last warning level is entered when the AdBlue tank is empty. Restart of the engine is not possible. The following warning message will be displayed:

Top up emissions additive: Starting prevented

Additionally, control indicator  will flash and a chime will sound.

Refill the tank to a level of at least 5 l of AdBlue, otherwise restarting of the engine is not possible.




Notice

For D16DT engines, different levels apply.

High emission warnings

In the event of a fault with the emissions control system, different messages are displayed in the Driver Information Centre. The messages and the restrictions are a legal requirement.

1. If a fault is detected for the first time, the warning **Emissions fault** is displayed.




Additionally, control indicators ,  and  will illuminate and a chime will sound. Driving is possible without any restrictions.

If it is a temporary fault, the alert disappears during the next journey, after self-diagnosis of the emissions control system.

2. If the fault is confirmed by the emission control system, the

following message will be displayed:




Emissions fault: Starting prevented in 650 miles.

Additionally, control indicators ,  and  will illuminate and a chime will sound.

When driving, the message is displayed every 30 s while the fault persists.

3. If the last warning level is entered, the following warning message will be displayed:

Emissions fault: Starting prevented

Additionally, control indicators ,  and  will illuminate and a chime will sound.

Consult a workshop for assistance.

Refilling AdBlue

Caution

Only use AdBlue that complies with European standards DIN 70 070 and ISO 22241-1.

Do not use additives.

Do not dilute AdBlue.

Otherwise the selective catalytic reduction system could be damaged.

Notice

Whenever a filling pump with a nozzle for passenger cars is not available at a filling station, use only AdBlue bottles or canisters with a sealed refill adapter for refilling, to prevent splashback and overspill, and in order to ensure that the fumes from the tank are captured and do not emerge. AdBlue in bottles or canisters is available in many filling stations and can be purchased e.g. at Vauxhall dealers and other retail outlets.

Since AdBlue has a limited durability, check the date of expiry before refilling.

Notice

Refill the AdBlue tank to a level of at least 10 l, to ensure that the new AdBlue level is being detected.

In case AdBlue refill is not successfully detected:

1. Continuously drive the vehicle for ten minutes making sure that vehicle speed is always higher than 12 mph.
2. If AdBlue refill is detected successfully, AdBlue supply-driven warnings or limitations will disappear.

If AdBlue refill is still not detected, seek the assistance of a workshop.

If AdBlue must be refilled at temperatures below -11 °C, the refilling of AdBlue may not be detected by the system. In this event, park the vehicle in a space with a higher ambient temperature until AdBlue is liquified.

Notice

When unscrewing the protective cap from the filler neck, ammonia fumes may emerge. Do not inhale as the fumes have a pungent smell. The fumes are not harmful by inhalation.

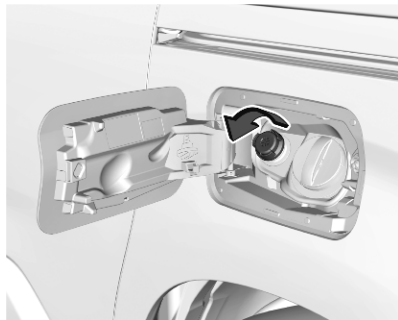
The AdBlue tank should be filled completely. This must be done if the warning message regarding prevention of an engine restart is already displayed.

The vehicle must be parked on a level surface.

The filler neck for AdBlue is located behind the fuel filler flap, which is located at left rear side of the vehicle.

If the vehicle is equipped with an electronic key system, the fuel filler flap can only be opened if the vehicle is unlocked.

1. Remove key from ignition switch.
2. Close all doors to avoid ammonia fumes entering the interior of the vehicle.
3. Release the fuel filler flap by pushing the flap ⇨ 294.



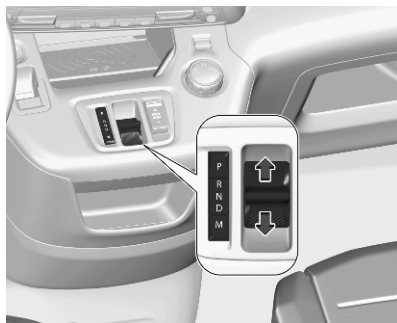
4. Unscrew protective cap from the filler neck.
5. Open AdBlue canister.
6. Mount one end of the hose on the canister and screw the other end on the filler neck.
7. Lift the canister until it is empty, or until the flow from the canister has stopped. This can take up to five minutes.
8. Place the canister on the ground to empty the hose, wait 15 s.
9. Unscrew the hose from the filler neck.
10. Mount the protective cap and turn clockwise until it engages.

Notice

Dispose of AdBlue canister according to environmental requirements. Hose can be reused after flushing with clear water before AdBlue dries out.

Electric drive unit

The vehicle uses an electric drive unit with a 1-gear transmission.



P : park position
R : reverse mode
N : neutral mode
D : automatic mode
B : automatic mode with one-pedal driving

After selecting a mode, the selector will return to the centre position. The selected mode is indicated in the Driver Information Centre.

Do not accelerate while selecting a mode. Never depress the accelerator pedal and brake pedal at the same time. When a driving mode is selected, the vehicle slowly begins to creep when the brake is released.

Caution

If the vehicle seems to accelerate slowly or not respond when you try to go faster, do not continue your journey. The electric drive unit could be damaged. Consult a workshop as soon as possible.

Caution

Spinning the tyres or holding the vehicle in one place on a hill using only the accelerator pedal may damage the electric drive unit. If you are stuck, do not spin the tyres. When stopping on a hill, use the brakes to hold the vehicle in place.

Park position P

To shift into **P**, press button **P** when vehicle is stationary. In **P**, the front wheels of the vehicle are blocked.

To shift out of **P**, depress the brake pedal and select the desired mode.

The vehicle automatically shifts into **P** when

- the ignition is switched off
- the driver's door is opened while the vehicle's speed is below 1 mph

Reverse mode R

To shift into and out of **R**, the vehicle must be at standstill and the brake pedal has to be depressed.

Caution

Shifting into **R** while the vehicle is moving forward could damage the automatic transmission. Only shift into **R** after the vehicle has been stopped.

Neutral mode N

In this mode, the propulsion system does not transfer torque to the wheels. To restart the propulsion system when the vehicle is already moving, use **D** only.

When **N** is selected, **P** is engaged after a short time.

If the driver's door is opened while **N** is selected, an audible signal is given and **P** is engaged. The audible signal stops when the driver's door is closed.

Automatic mode D

Notice

In slippery conditions, operate the vehicle in **D** for enhanced riding and handling performance.

Automatic mode B with one-pedal driving

In this mode, vehicle speed is significantly reduced by releasing the accelerator pedal without operating the brake pedal.

Use **B** when driving down steep hills, in deep snow, in mud or in stop-and-go traffic.

⚠ Warning

In the case of extreme temperatures or if the high voltage battery is almost fully charged, the brake force of the regenerative braking may be temporarily reduced. If the braking force is not sufficient, the driver has to be prepared to use the brake pedal.



To activate **B**, shift into **D** and press button **B**.

To deactivate **B**, press button **B**.

Regenerative braking ⇨ 241

Free wheeling

In certain situations such as in an automatic car wash etc., it is necessary that the wheels can move freely when the engine is switched off.

To enable free wheeling, the vehicle has to be stationary, the engine has to be running and the driver's door has to be closed. Proceed as follows:

1. Depress the brake pedal and select **N**.
2. Within five seconds depress and hold the brake pedal.
3. Switch off the ignition and move the selector forwards or backwards.
4. Take your foot off the brake pedal and switch on the ignition.
5. Depress and hold the brake pedal and push the electric parking brake to release it.
6. Take your foot off the brake pedal and switch off the ignition.

A message is displayed in the Driver Information Centre indicating that the wheels are unblocked for the next 15 minutes.

To revert to normal operation, depress the brake pedal and switch on the engine.

Parking brake ⇨ 238.

Automatic transmission

- P** : park position
- R** : reverse mode
- N** : neutral mode
- D** : automatic mode
- M** : manual mode

Do not accelerate while selecting a mode. Never depress the accelerator pedal and brake pedal at the same time. When a driving mode is selected, the vehicle slowly begins to creep when the brake is released.

The engine can only be started with the gear selector in position **P** or **N**. When position **N** is selected, press the brake pedal or apply the parking brake before starting.

Gear selector type A



Turn the selector.

Park position P

To shift into **P**, turn the selector to **P** when vehicle is stationary. In **P**, the front wheels of the vehicle are blocked.

To shift out of **P**, depress the brake pedal and select the desired mode.

Reverse mode R

To shift into and out of **R**, the vehicle must be at standstill and the brake pedal has to be depressed.

Caution

Shifting into **R** while the vehicle is moving forward could damage the automatic transmission. Only shift into **R** after the vehicle has been stopped.

Neutral mode N

In this mode, the propulsion system does not transfer torque to the wheels. To restart the propulsion system when the vehicle is already moving, use **D** only.

Automatic mode D

Notice

In slippery conditions, operate the vehicle in **D** for enhanced riding and handling performance.

Manual mode M

In this mode, gears can be selected manually by using the steering wheel paddles.

M can be activated from **D** in each driving situation and speed.

When in **D** press button **M**.

Gear selector type B



After selecting a mode, the selector will return to the centre position.

Park position P

To shift into **P**, press button **P** when vehicle is stationary. In **P**, the front wheels of the vehicle are blocked.

To shift out of **P**, depress the brake pedal and select the desired mode.

The vehicle shifts automatically into **P** when

- the engine is switched off
- the driver's door is opened while the vehicle's speed is below 1 mph

Reverse mode R

To shift into and out of **R**, the vehicle must be at standstill and the brake pedal has to be depressed.

Caution

Shifting into **R** while the vehicle is moving forward could damage the automatic transmission. Only shift into **R** after the vehicle has been stopped.

Neutral mode N

In this mode, the propulsion system does not transfer torque to the wheels. To restart the propulsion system when the vehicle is already moving, use **D** only.

Automatic mode D

Notice

In slippery conditions, operate the vehicle in **D** for enhanced riding and handling performance.

Manual mode M

In this mode, gears can be selected manually by using the steering wheel paddles.

M can be activated from **D** in each driving situation and speed.

When in **D** press button **M**.

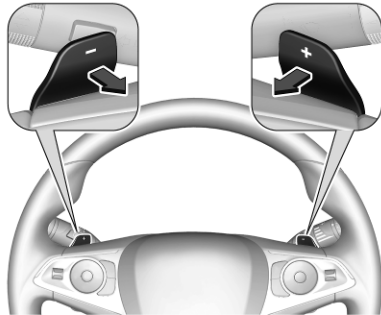
Engine braking

To utilise the engine braking effect, select a lower gear when driving downhill.

Rocking the vehicle

Rocking the vehicle is only permissible if the vehicle is stuck in sand, mud or snow. Move the gear selector between **D** and **R** in a repeat pattern. Do not race the engine and avoid sudden acceleration.

Steering wheel paddles



Pull steering wheel paddles to select gears manually.

Pull right paddle + to shift to a higher gear.

Pull left paddle - to shift to a lower gear.

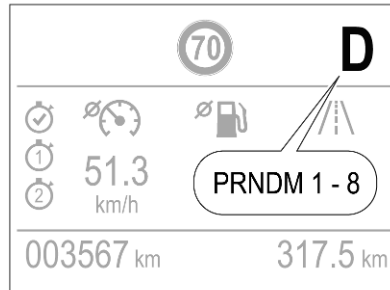
Multiple pulls allow gears to be skipped.

If a higher gear is selected when vehicle speed is too low, or a lower gear when vehicle speed is too high, the shift is not executed. This can cause a message in the Driver Information Centre.

In manual mode, no automatic shifting to a higher gear takes place at high engine revolutions.

Gear shifting indication ⇨ 95.

Transmission display



The mode or selected gear is shown in the Driver Information Centre.

Electronic driving programmes

- Following a cold start, the operating temperature programme increases engine speed to quickly bring the catalytic converter to the required temperature.

- Special programmes automatically adapt the shifting points when driving up inclines or down hills.
- In snowy or icy conditions or on other slippery surfaces, the electronic transmission control enables the driver to select manually first, second or third gear for starting off.

Kickdown

Pressing down the accelerator pedal beyond the kickdown detent will lead to maximum acceleration independent of selected driving mode. The transmission shifts to a lower gear depending on engine speed.

Fault

In the event of a fault a message is displayed in the Driver Information Centre.

Vehicle messages ⇨ 106.

Electronic transmission control enables only third gear. The transmission no longer shifts automatically.

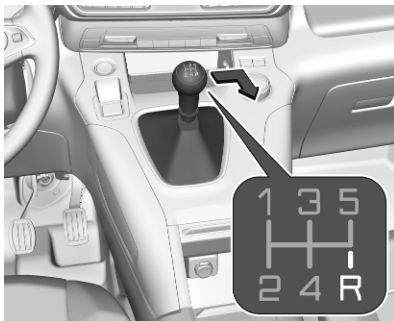
Do not drive faster than 62 mph.
Have the cause of the fault remedied by a workshop.

Eco mode

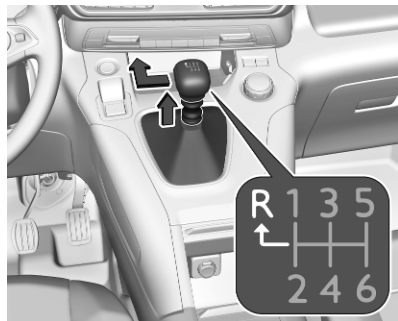


This mode adjusts the settings of the systems for a more economic fuel consumption, e.g. by optimising the automatic transmission shift points and adapting the sensitivity of the accelerator pedal.

Manual transmission



To engage reverse on 5-speed transmission, with the vehicle stationary and engine at idle depress the clutch pedal and move the selector lever to the right and rear.



To engage reverse on 6-speed transmission, with the vehicle stationary and engine at idle depress the clutch pedal, pull the ring under the selector lever and move the selector lever quite to the left and front.

If the gear does not engage, set the selector lever to neutral, release the clutch pedal and depress again. Then repeat gear selection.

Do not slip the clutch unnecessarily. When operating, depress the clutch pedal completely. Do not use the pedal as a foot rest.

When clutch slip is detected for a specific time, the engine power will be reduced. A warning is displayed in the Driver Information Centre. Release the clutch.

Caution

It is not advisable to drive with the hand resting on the selector lever.

Gear shift indication ⇨ 95.

Stop-start system ⇨ 222.

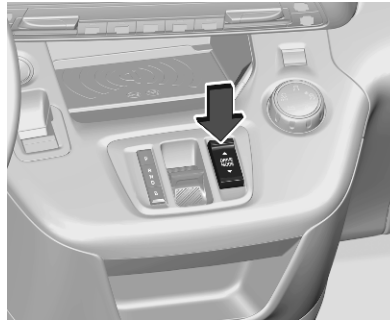
Drive systems

Drive modes

Following drive modes are selectable:

- Normal mode
- Power mode
- Eco mode

Each drive mode corresponds to a different vehicle setting.



To select the respective drive mode, use the shown toggle switch.

Normal mode

Optimises range and dynamic performance. This mode is automatically selected everytime the vehicle is started.

Power mode

Provides the same performance as **Normal mode**, however, when the vehicle is fully loaded.

Eco mode

Optimises energy consumption by reducing the performance of heating and air conditioning as well as reducing the performance of the electric engine.

Brakes

The brake system comprises two independent brake circuits.

If a brake circuit fails, the vehicle can still be braked using the other brake circuit. However, braking effect is achieved only when the brake pedal is depressed firmly. Considerably more force is needed for this. The braking distance is extended. Seek the assistance of a workshop before continuing the journey.

When the engine is not running, the support of the brake servo unit disappears once the brake pedal has been depressed once or twice. Braking effect is not reduced, but braking requires significantly greater force. It is especially important to bear this in mind when being towed.

Control indicator  ↷ 94.

Antilock brake system

Antilock brake system (ABS) prevents the wheels from locking.

ABS starts to regulate brake pressure as soon as a wheel shows a tendency to lock. The vehicle remains steerable, even during hard braking.

ABS control is made apparent through a pulse in the brake pedal and the noise of the regulation process.

For optimum braking, keep the brake pedal fully depressed throughout the braking process, despite the fact that the pedal is pulsating. Do not reduce the pressure on the pedal.

When braking in an emergency, the hazard warning flashers are switched on automatically depending on the force of deceleration. They are switched off automatically the first time you accelerate.

After starting off, the system performs a self-test which may be audible.



Control indicator  ↷ 95.

Fault


Warning

If there is a fault in the ABS, the wheels may be liable to lock due to braking that is heavier than normal. The advantages of ABS are no longer available. During hard braking, the vehicle can no longer be steered and may swerve.

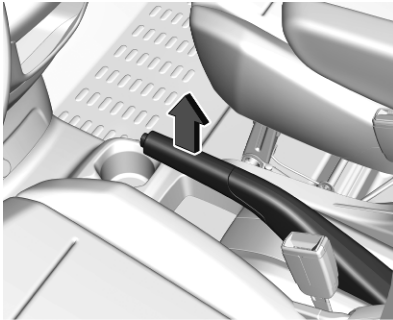
Have the cause of the fault remedied by a workshop.

Parking brake

Warning

Before leaving the vehicle, check parking brake status. Control indicator  illuminate constantly when electric parking brake is applied.

Manual parking brake



⚠ Warning

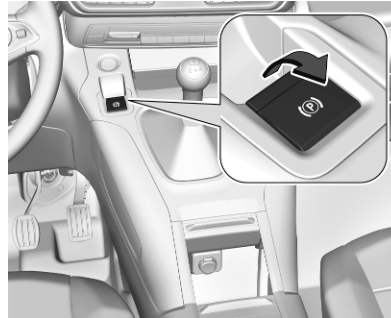
Always apply parking brake firmly without operating the release button, and apply as firmly as possible on a downhill or uphill slope.

To release the parking brake, pull the lever up slightly, press the release button and fully lower the lever.

To reduce the operating forces of the parking brake, depress the foot brake at the same time.

Control indicator (P) ⇨ 94.

Electric parking brake



Applying when vehicle is stationary

⚠ Warning

Pull switch (P) for a minimum of one second until control indicator (P) illuminates constantly and electric parking brake is applied ⇨ 94. The electric parking brake operates automatically with adequate force.

Before leaving the vehicle, check the electric parking brake status. Control indicator (P) ⇨ 94.

The electric parking brake can always be activated, even if the ignition is off.

Do not operate electric parking brake system too often without engine running as this will discharge the vehicle battery.

Releasing


Switch on ignition. Keep foot brake pedal depressed and then push switch (P).

Drive away function

Depressing the clutch pedal and then slightly releasing the clutch pedal and slightly depressing the accelerator pedal releases the electric parking brake automatically. This is only possible if the automatic operation of the electric parking brake is activated. It is not possible when switch (P) is pulled at the same time.

Braking when vehicle is moving

When the vehicle is moving and the switch (P) is kept pulled, the electric parking brake system will decelerate the vehicle. As soon as the switch (P) is released, braking will be stopped.

The antilock brake system and the Electronic Stability Control stabilise the vehicle while the switch (P) is kept pulled. If an error of the electric parking brake occurs, a warning message is displayed in the driver information centre. If the antilock brake system and the Electronic Stability Control fail, one or both indicators (ABS) and  illuminate in the instrument cluster. In this case, stability can only be provided by repeatedly pulling and pushing the switch (P) until the vehicle is immobilised.

Automatic operation

Automatic operation includes automatic application and automatic release of the electric parking brake.

The electric parking brake can also be applied or released manually by using the switch (P).

Automatic application:

- The electric parking brake is automatically applied when the vehicle is stationary and the ignition is switched off.
- (P) illuminates in the instrument cluster and a display message pops up to confirm the application.

Automatic release:



- Parking brake releases automatically after moving off.
- (P) extinguishes in the instrument cluster and a display message pops up to confirm the release.

If the vehicle is equipped with an automatic transmission and the brake is not released automatically, make sure the front doors are correctly closed.

Deactivation of automatic operation

In certain situations, e.g. in very cold weather conditions, when being towed etc., it may be necessary that the automatic operation of the electric parking brake is deactivated.

1. Start the engine.
2. If the parking brake is released, apply the parking brake pulling the switch (P).
3. Take your foot off the brake pedal.
4. Press the switch (P) for at least ten seconds and maximum 15 seconds.
5. Release the switch (P).
6. Depress and hold the brake pedal.
7. Pull the switch (P) for two seconds.


The deactivation of the automatic operation of the electric parking brake is confirmed by  illuminating in the instrument cluster  94. The electric parking brake can only be applied and released manually.

To reactivate the automatic operation, repeat the steps described above.


Functionality check

When the vehicle is not moving, the electric parking brake might be applied automatically. This is done to check the system.

Fault

Failure mode of electric parking brake is indicated by a control indicator  and by a vehicle message which is displayed in the Driver Information Centre.

Vehicle messages ⇨ 106.

Control indicator  flashes: electric parking brake is not fully applied or released. When continuously flashing, release electric parking brake and retry applying.

Brake assist

If brake pedal is depressed quickly and forcefully, maximum brake force is automatically applied.

Operation of brake assist might become apparent by a pulse in the brake pedal and a greater resistance when depressing the brake pedal.

Maintain steady pressure on the brake pedal as long as full braking is required. Maximum brake force is automatically reduced when brake pedal is released.

Hill start assist

The system helps prevent unintended movement when driving away on inclines.

When releasing the brake pedal after stopping on an incline, brakes remain on for further 2s. The brakes release automatically as soon as the vehicle begins to accelerate.

Regenerative braking

Warning

In the case of extreme temperatures or if the high voltage battery is almost fully charged, the

brake force of the engine braking may be temporarily reduced. If the braking force is not sufficient, the driver has to be prepared to use the brake pedal.

Warning

Depending on the engine braking force the brake lights are illuminated.

Regenerative braking generates electrical energy resulting from engine braking to charge the high voltage battery.

Electric drive unit ⇨ 230.

Ride control systems

Electronic Stability Control and Traction Control system

Electronic Stability Control (ESC) improves driving stability when necessary, regardless of the type of road surface or tyre grip.

As soon as the vehicle starts to swerve (understeer / oversteer), engine output is reduced and the wheels are braked individually.

ESC operates in combination with the Traction Control system (TC). It prevents the driven wheels from spinning.


The TC is a component of the ESC.


Traction Control improves driving stability when necessary, regardless of the type of road surface or tyre grip, by preventing the driven wheels from spinning.

As soon as the driven wheels starts to spin, engine output is reduced and the wheel spinning the most is braked

individually. This considerably improves the driving stability of the vehicle on slippery road surfaces.



ESC and TC are operational after each engine start as soon as the control indicator  extinguishes.

When ESC and TC operate,  flashes.

Warning


Do not let this special safety feature tempt you into taking risks when driving.

Adapt speed to the road conditions.

Control indicator  \rightarrow 95.


Deactivation



ESC and TC can be deactivated, everytime it is required: press .

The LED in the button  illuminates.


A status message appears in the Driver Information Centre when ESC and TC are deactivated.

ESC and TC are reactivated by pressing the  button again, by applying the brake or in the case that the vehicle is driven faster than 30 mph.

The LED in the button  extinguishes when ESC and TC are reactivated.

ESC and TC are also reactivated the next time the ignition is switched on.

Fault

If there is a fault in the system, the control indicator  illuminates continuously and a message appears in the Driver Information Centre. The system is not operational.

Have the cause of the fault remedied by a workshop.

Descent control system

The descent control system allows the vehicle to travel at a low speed without depressing the brake pedal. The vehicle will automatically decelerate to a low speed and remain at that speed when the system is activated. Some noise or vibration from the brake system may be apparent when the system is active.

Caution

Use only when descending steep grades while driving off-road. Do not use when driving on normal

road surfaces. Unnecessary usage of the DCS function, such as while driving on normal roads, may damage the brake system and the ESC function.



Activation

Notice

If hill descent control is active, active emergency braking is automatically deactivated.

The systems is only available for slopes greater than 5%.





At speeds below approx. 30 mph, press . The system can also be activated when the vehicle is stationary with the engine running. The control indicator  in the instrument cluster is illuminated in green to show the system is activated.

When the vehicles starts its descent, the system controls the speed of the vehicle; accelerator and brake pedals can be released.



- If the gearbox is in first or second gear, the speed decreases and the control indicator in the instrument cluster flashes rapidly.
- If the gearbox is in neutral or the clutch pedal is depressed, the speed decreases and the control indicator in the instrument cluster flashes slowly.

If the system is operating, the brake lights automatically come on.

If the speed exceeds 18 mph, regulation is paused. The  indicator light in the instrument cluster changes to grey. However, the LED


of the  button is still illuminated. Regulation is automatically resumed if the speed falls below 18 mph, the slope is greater than 5% and the pedal release conditions are met.

Deactivation

Press  again until the LED in the button extinguishes. The green control indicator  in the instrument cluster extinguishes, too.

If the speed exceeds 43 mph, the system is automatically deactivated. The LED in the button extinguishes.

Fault

If the green control indicator  does not illuminate or flash after pressing the button, there is a fault in the system.

Seek the assistance of a workshop.

Selective ride control

Caution

The vehicle is designed to drive principally on-road, but it also enables driving off-road occasionally.

However, do not drive on terrain where the vehicle could be damaged due to obstacles, such as stones among others and on terrain with steep inclines and poor grip.

Do not cross waters.

Caution






When driving off-road, sudden motion and manoeuvres can cause a collision or losing control.

Selective ride control is designed to optimise traction in low-grip conditions (snow, mud and sand).

It adapts to the terrain by acting on the front wheels, in doing so this saves the weight normally associated with a more conventional four wheel drive system.



Selective ride control allows to choose between five driving modes by turning the control:

- ESC off mode 
- standard mode 
- snow mode 
- mud mode 
- sand mode 

An LED illuminates and a status message appears in the Driver Information Centre to confirm the chosen mode.

ESC off mode

The ESC and Traction Control are deactivated in this mode.

ESC and Traction Control are reactivated automatically from 30 mph or everytime the ignition is switched on.

Standard mode

This mode is calibrated for a low level of wheel spin, based on the different types of grip generally encountered in normal day to day driving.

Everytime the ignition is switched off, the system is automatically reset to this mode.

Snow mode

This mode adapts to the grip conditions encountered by each wheel when starting.

When advancing, the system optimises wheel spin to guarantee the best acceleration based on the available traction. Recommended in cases of deep snow and steep inclines.

This mode is active up to a speed of 30 mph.

Mud mode

This mode allows considerable wheel spin at start-up for the wheel with the least grip, this removes mud and re-establishes traction.

Simultaneously, the wheel with the most grip is provided with the most torque possible.

This mode is active up to a speed of 50 mph.

Sand mode

This mode allows a small amount of simultaneous wheel spin on the two drive wheels, enabling the vehicle to advance and reduce the risk of sinking.

This mode is active up to a speed of 75 mph.

Caution

Do not use the other modes on sand as the vehicle may become stuck.

Driver assistance systems

⚠ Warning

Driver assistance systems are developed to support the driver and not to replace the driver's attention.

The driver accepts full responsibility when driving the vehicle.

When using driver assistance systems, always take care regarding the current traffic situation.

Cruise control

The cruise control can store and maintain speeds above 25 mph. Additionally at least the third gear must be engaged on manual transmission, on automatic transmission position **D** or the second or a higher gear in position **M** must be selected.

Deviations from the stored speeds may occur when driving uphill or downhill.

The system maintains the vehicle speed at the preset speed by the driver, without any action on the accelerator pedal.

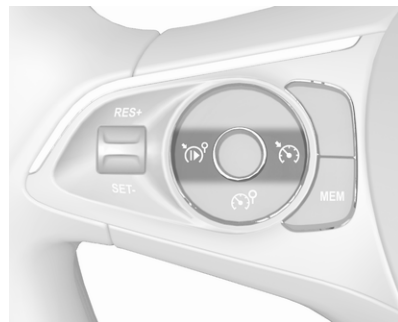
The preset speed can be exceeded temporarily by pressing the accelerator pedal firmly.



The status and preset speed is displayed in the Driver Information Centre.

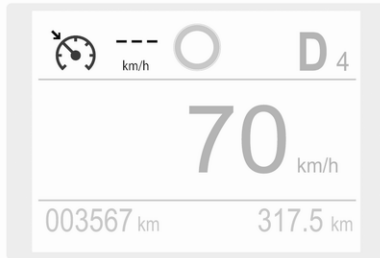
Do not use the cruise control if it is not advisable to maintain a constant speed.

Control indicator   98.

Switching on the system

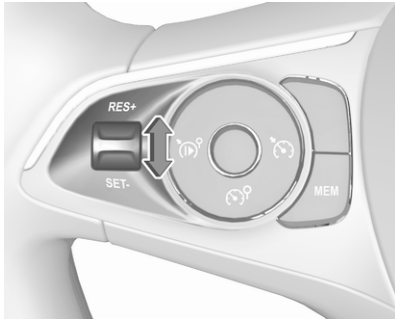


Press , symbol  and a message are displayed in the Driver Information Centre. The system is still not active.



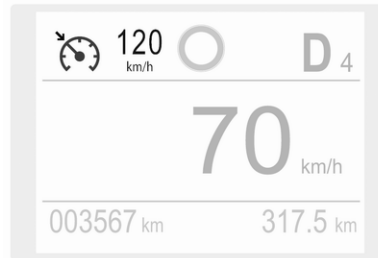
Activation of the functionality

Setting speed by the driver



Accelerate to the desired speed and press thumb wheel once briefly to **RES/+** or **SET/-**. The current speed is stored and maintained. Accelerator pedal can be released.

The preset speed can then be changed by pressing thumb wheel to **RES/+** to increase or **SET/-** to decrease the speed. Short press changes speed in small steps, long press in large steps.



Speed value is indicated in the Driver Information Centre.

Adopting speed by the speed limit recognition

The intelligent speed adaptation informs the driver when a speed limit is detected by the speed limit recognition. The detected speed limit can be used as new value for the cruise control.

Using a camera at the top of the windscreen, this system detects and reads speed limit and end of speed limit signs. The system also takes account of information on speed limits from the navigation map data.

The function can be deactivated or activated in the personalisation menu ⇨ 107.

If the cruise control is active, the recognised speed limit will be displayed in the Driver Information Centre and **MEM** illuminates.

The displayed information depends on the Driver Information Centre version.

In the Driver Information Centre, speed limit sign is shown in the display and **MEM** illuminates for a few seconds.

Press **MEM** on the steering wheel to request saving of the suggested speed.


Press **MEM** on the steering wheel once more to confirm and save the new speed setting.

This speed is the new value for the cruise control.

Exceeding the set speed

Vehicle speed can be increased by depressing the accelerator pedal. When the accelerator pedal is released, the previously stored speed is resumed.

Deactivation of the functionality

Press , cruise control is in pause mode and a message is displayed. The vehicle is driven without cruise control.

Cruise control is deactivated, but not switched off. Last stored speed remains in memory for later speed resume.


Cruise control is deactivated automatically:


- The brake pedal is depressed.
- Vehicle speed is below 25 mph.
- The Traction Control system or Electronic Stability Control is operating.
- The selector lever is in **N** (automatic transmission) / the first or second gear (manual transmission).

Resume stored speed

Press thumb wheel to **RES/+** at a speed above 25 mph. The stored speed will be obtained.

Switching off the system

Press , the cruise control mode is deselected and the cruise control indication extinguishes in the Driver Information Centre.

Pressing  to activate the speed limiter deactivates cruise control.

Switching off the ignition cancels any programmed speed value.

Fault

In the event of a cruise control fault, the speed is cleared resulting in flashing of the dashes.

The cruise control may not operate correctly if traffic signs do not comply with the Vienna Convention on Road Signs and Signals.

Speed limiter

The speed limiter prevents the vehicle exceeding a preset maximum speed.

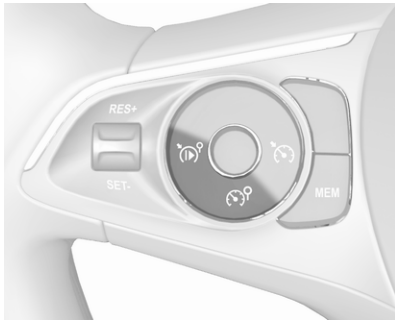
The maximum speed can be set at speeds above 18 mph.



The driver can accelerate the vehicle up to the preset speed. Deviations from the limited speed may occur when driving downhill.

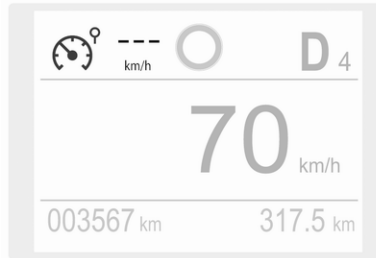
The preset speed can be exceeded temporarily by pressing the accelerator pedal firmly.

The status and preset speed limit are displayed in the Driver Information Centre.

Switching on the system

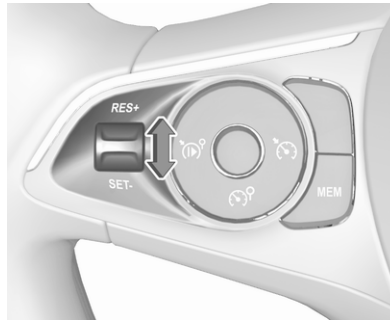


Press , symbol  and a message are displayed in the Driver Information Centre. The system is still not active.



Activation of the functionality

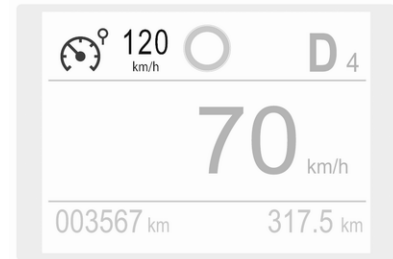
Setting speed by the driver



Press thumb wheel once briefly to **RES/+** or **SET/-**.

Following the preset speed can be set by pressing thumb wheel to **RES/+** to increase or **SET/-** to decrease the desired maximum speed. Short press changes preset speed in small steps, long press in large steps.

Speed value is indicated in the Driver Information Centre.



Press  to activate speed limiter.

Adopting speed by the traffic sign assistant

The intelligent speed adaptation informs the driver when a speed limit is detected by the traffic sign assistant. The detected speed limit can be used as new value for the speed limiter.

Using a camera at the top of the windscreen, this system detects and reads speed limit and end of speed limit signs. The system also takes account of information on speed limits from the navigation map data.

The function can be activated or deactivated in the personalisation menu ↗ 107.

If the speed limiter is active, the recognised speed limit will be displayed in the Driver Information Centre and **MEM** illuminates.

The displayed information depends on the Driver Information Centre version.

In the Driver Information Centre, speed limit sign is shown and **MEM** illuminates for a few seconds.

Press **MEM** on the steering wheel to request saving of the suggested speed.

Press **MEM** on the steering wheel once more to confirm and save the new speed setting.


This speed is the new value for the speed limiter.

Exceeding the speed limit

In the event of an emergency, it is possible to exceed the speed limit by depressing the accelerator pedal firmly nearly to the final point.


Release the accelerator pedal and the speed limiter function is reactivated once a speed lower than the limit speed is obtained.

Deactivation of the functionality


Press , speed limiter is in pause mode and a message is displayed. The vehicle is driven without speed limit.


Speed limiter is deactivated, but not switched off. Last stored speed remains in memory for later speed resume.

Resume limit speed

Press , the stored speed limit will be obtained.

Switching off the system

Press , the speed limiter mode is deselected and the speed limit indication extinguishes in the Driver Information Centre.

Pressing  to activate cruise control deactivates speed limiter.

The preset speed remains in the memory when the ignition is switched off.

Fault

In the event of a speed limiter fault, the speed is cleared resulting in flashing of the dashes.

The speed limiter may not operate correctly if traffic signs do not comply with the Vienna Convention on Road Signs and Signals.

Adaptive cruise control

The adaptive cruise control is an enhancement to the conventional cruise control with the additional feature of maintaining a certain following distance to the vehicle ahead. It uses a camera at the top of the windscreen and camera sensors to detect the vehicles ahead. If no vehicle is detected in the driving path, the adaptive cruise control will behave like a conventional cruise control.

The adaptive cruise control automatically decelerates the vehicle when approaching a slower moving vehicle. It then adjusts the vehicle speed to follow the vehicle ahead at the selected following distance. The vehicle speed increases or decreases to follow the vehicle ahead, but will not exceed the set speed. It may apply limited braking with activated brake lights.

If the vehicle ahead accelerates or changes lane, the adaptive cruise control progressively accelerates the vehicle to return to the stored set speed. If the driver operates the turn


lights to overtake a slower vehicle, the adaptive cruise control allows the vehicle to temporarily approach the vehicle ahead to help passing it. However, the set speed will never be exceeded.

The adaptive cruise control can store set speeds for manual transmission. If the vehicle ahead is moving too slowly and the selected following distance cannot be maintained anymore, a warning chime is given and a message is displayed in the Driver Information Centre. The message prompts the driver to take back control of the vehicle. On vehicles with automatic transmission, the system can brake the vehicle until a full stop.

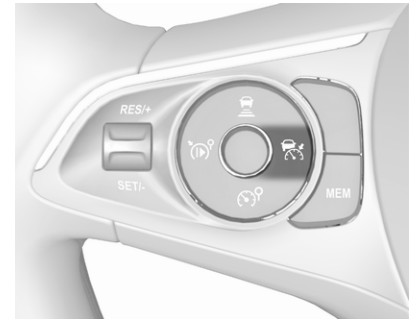
The adaptive cruise control can store set speeds over 19 mph for manual transmission. If the vehicle ahead is moving too slowly and the selected following distance cannot be maintained anymore, a warning chime is given and a message is displayed in the Driver Information Centre. The message prompts the driver to take back control of the



vehicle. On vehicles with automatic transmission, the system can brake the vehicle until a full stop.

Warning

The complete driver attention is always required while driving with adaptive cruise control. The driver stays fully in control of the vehicle because the brake pedal, the accelerator pedal and the button  have priority over any adaptive cruise control operation.

Switching on the system



Press , the symbol  is indicated in the Driver Information Centre. The system is still not active.

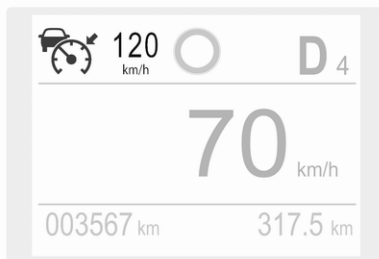


Activation of the functionality by setting the speed

The adaptive cruise control has to be switched on manually at a speed between 19 mph and 112 mph.

For vehicles with automatic transmission, the automatic selector lever must be in position **D** or **M**.

Accelerate to the desired speed and move the thumb wheel to **SET/-**. The current speed is stored and maintained.



The speed value is indicated in the Driver Information Centre.

When the adaptive cruise control is operating, the stop-start system is automatically deactivated.

Adopting the speed limit from the traffic sign assistant

The intelligent speed adaptation informs the driver when a speed limit is detected by the traffic sign assistant. The detected speed limit can be taken over as new set speed for the adaptive cruise control.

Using the camera at the top of the windscreen, this system detects and reads speed limit and end of speed limit signs. The system also takes into account the information on speed limits from the navigation map data.

If the adaptive cruise control is active, the recognised speed limit will be displayed in the Driver Information Centre and **MEM** illuminates.

Press **MEM** on the steering wheel to request saving of the suggested speed.

Press **MEM** on the steering wheel once more to confirm and save the new speed setting.

This speed limit is now the new set speed of the adaptive cruise control.

The function can be activated or deactivated in the personalisation menu \rightarrow 107.

Traffic sign assistant \rightarrow 278

Overriding set speed

It is always possible to drive faster than the selected set speed by depressing the accelerator pedal. When the accelerator pedal is

released, the vehicle returns to the stored speed. If a slower moving vehicle is ahead, the following distance selected by the driver is restored.

If the set speed is exceeded, the indicated speed setting flashes in the Driver Information Centre and a warning message appears.

Warning

Accelerating by the driver deactivates automatic braking by the system. This is indicated as a pop-up warning in the Driver Information Centre.

Increasing speed

With the adaptive cruise control active, hold the thumb wheel moved to **RES/+** or briefly move to **RES/+** repeatedly: The speed increases continuously or in small increments.

Reducing speed

With the adaptive cruise control active, hold the thumb wheel moved to **SET/-** or briefly move to **SET/-** repeatedly: The speed decreases continuously or in small increments.

Resuming stored speed

Move the thumb wheel to **RES/+** at a speed above 19 mph. The adaptive cruise control is activated with the stored set speed.

Adaptive cruise control on vehicles with automatic transmission

For vehicles with automatic transmission, adaptive cruise control allows to maintain the selected distance behind a stopping vehicle until a complete stop is reached.

If the system has stopped your vehicle behind another vehicle, then the set speed is replaced by a green control indicator (A). This symbol notifies, that the vehicle is hold automatically in stop position.

If the stopped vehicle ahead was stopped for a longer time and then begins to move forward, the green illuminated vehicle ahead control indicator (A) will flash and a warning chime will sound as a reminder to check traffic before resuming.

When the vehicle ahead drives away, press the accelerator pedal until 19 mph and then move the thumb wheel to **SET-** or **RES+** to resume adaptive cruise control. If the vehicle stays stopped for more than five minutes or if the driver's door is opened and the driver's seat belt is unfastened, then the electric parking brake is applied automatically to hold the vehicle. Control indicator (C) will illuminate. To release electric parking brake, press the accelerator pedal.

Electric parking brake ↗ 238.

Warning

When the system is deactivated or cancelled, the vehicle will no longer be held at a stop and can

start moving. Be always prepared to manually apply the brake to hold the vehicle stationary.

Do not leave the vehicle while it is being held at a stop by adaptive cruise control. Always move selector lever to park position **P** and switch off the ignition before leaving the vehicle.

Setting the following distance

When adaptive cruise control detects a slower moving vehicle in the driving path, it will adjust the vehicle speed to maintain the following distance selected by the driver.

The following distance can be set to close (1 bar), normal (2 bars) or far (3 bars).

If the engine is running and the adaptive cruise control is enabled (grey), you can modify the following distance setting:

Press **RES/+**, the current setting is shown in the Driver Information Centre.



Press **RES/+** again to change the following distance: The new setting is displayed in the Driver Information Centre.

The selected following distance is indicated by full bars in the adaptive cruise control page.

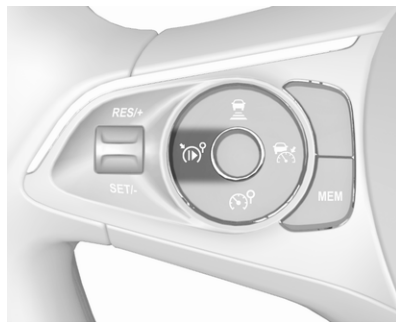
Warning


The driver accepts full responsibility for the appropriate following distance based on traffic, weather and visibility conditions. Following distance must be adjusted or the system switched off when required by the prevailing conditions.

Detecting the vehicle ahead

If the system detects a vehicle in the driving path, the adaptive cruise control symbol displayed in the Driver Information Centre changes:  is changed to .

Deactivation of the functionality



Press , the adaptive cruise control is in pause mode and a message is displayed. The vehicle is driven without adaptive cruise control.


The adaptive cruise control is deactivated, but not disabled. The last stored set speed remains in memory for later usage.


The adaptive cruise control is deactivated automatically when:

- The brake pedal is depressed.
- The vehicle accelerates above 112 mph or slows down below 19 mph.

- The electric parking brake is applied.
- The Traction Control system or Electronic Stability Control is deactivated or operating.
- The selector lever of automatic transmissions is neither in **D** nor in **M**.
- A fault is detected in the Electronic Stability Control.

Switching off the system

Press , the adaptive cruise control mode is disabled and the adaptive cruise control indication extinguishes in the Driver Information Centre.

Pressing  to activate the speed limiter deactivates adaptive cruise control.

Switching off the ignition deletes the stored set speed.

Driver's attention

- Use the adaptive cruise control carefully on bends or mountain roads, as it can lose the vehicle ahead and needs time to detect it again.

- Do not use the system on slippery roads as it can create rapid changes in tyre traction (wheel spinning), so that you could lose control of the vehicle.
- Do not use the system when the spare wheel is in use.

System limits

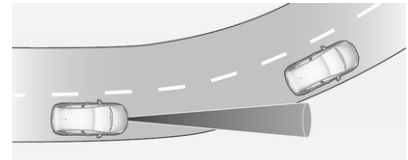
Warning

The system's automatic brake force does not permit hard braking and the braking level may not be sufficient to avoid a collision.


- After a sudden lane change, the system needs a certain time to detect the next preceding vehicle. So if a new vehicle is detected, the system may accelerate instead of braking.
- The adaptive cruise control only considers traffic driving in the same direction.

- The adaptive cruise control does not consider pedestrians and animals for braking and driving off.
- The adaptive cruise control considers stopped vehicles only at low speed.
- Do not use the adaptive cruise control when towing a trailer.
- Do not use the adaptive cruise control on roads with an incline of more than 10%.

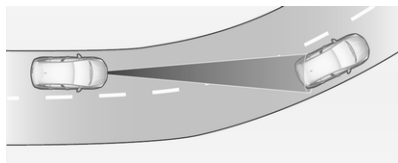
Bends



The adaptive cruise control calculates a predicted path based on the centrifugal force. This predicted path considers the current bend characteristic, but cannot consider a future bend change. The system may lose the current vehicle ahead or

consider a vehicle which is not in the actual lane. This can happen when entering or exiting a bend or if the bend gets stronger or weaker. If it no longer detects any vehicle ahead, then control indicator  will extinguish.

If the centrifugal force is too high in a bend, the system slows down the vehicle slightly. This braking level is not designed to avoid spinning-off the bend. The driver is responsible for reducing the selected speed before entering a bend and in general to adapt the speed to the road type and to existing speed limits.



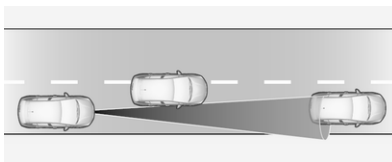
Motorways

On motorways, adapt the set speed to the situation and the weather. Always consider that adaptive cruise control has a limited visibility range, a limited braking level and a certain

reaction time to verify if a vehicle is on the driving path or not. Adaptive cruise control may not be able to brake the vehicle in time to avoid a collision with a much slower vehicle or after a lane change. This is particularly true while driving fast or if the visibility is reduced due to weather conditions.

While entering or exiting a motorway, adaptive cruise control may lose the vehicle ahead and accelerate up to the set speed. For this reason, decrease the set speed before the exit or before the entry.

Vehicle path changes



If another vehicle enters your driving path, adaptive cruise control will first consider the vehicle when it is completely in your path. Be ready to

take action and depress the brake pedal, if you need to brake more quickly.

Hill considerations



Warning

Do not use the adaptive cruise control on steep hill roads.

System performance on hills depends on vehicle speed, vehicle load, traffic conditions and the road incline. It may not detect a vehicle in your path while driving on hills. On steep hills, you may have to use the accelerator pedal to maintain your vehicle speed. When going downhill you may have to brake to maintain or reduce your speed.

Note that applying the brake deactivates the system.

Fault

In the event of a fault with the adaptive cruise control, you are alerted by the illumination of a warning light and the display of a message in the instrument panel, accompanied by an audible signal.

The adaptive cruise control may not operate correctly if traffic signs do not comply with the Vienna Convention on Road Signs and Signals.

Have the system checked by a dealer or a qualified workshop.

As a safety measure, do not use the system if the brake lights are faulty.

Forward collision alert

The forward collision alert may help to avoid or reduce the harm caused by front-end crashes.

The forward collision alert uses the front camera in the windscreen to detect a preceding vehicle directly ahead, in your path.

If a vehicle directly ahead is approached too quickly, a warning chime sounds and a message is displayed in the Driver Information Centre.

Warning

Forward collision alert is just a warning system and does not apply the brakes. When approaching a vehicle ahead too rapidly, it may not provide you enough time to avoid a collision.

The driver accepts full responsibility for the appropriate following distance based on traffic, weather and visibility conditions.



The complete attention of the driver is always required while driving. The driver must always be ready to take action and apply the brakes.

Activation

Forward collision alert detects vehicles and operates automatically at all speeds above 3 mph and 53 mph. The system detects stationary vehicles if the speed does not exceed 50 mph.

Alerting the driver

The driver is warned by following alerts:

- Symbol  illuminates and a warning message is displayed in the Driver Information Centre when the distance to the vehicle ahead gets to small.
- Symbol  illuminates, a warning message is displayed in the Driver Information Centre and a warning chime sounds, when a collision is imminent and immediate driver's action is required.

⚠ Warning

Forward collision alert is just a warning system and does not apply the brakes. When approaching a vehicle ahead too rapidly, there may not be enough time to avoid a collision.

The driver accepts full responsibility for the appropriate following distance based on traffic, weather and visibility conditions.

The complete attention of the driver is always required while driving. The driver must always be ready to take action and apply the brakes.

Caution

The colour lighting of this control indicator does not correspond to local traffic laws on following distance. The driver bears full responsibility for maintaining safe following distance according to

applicable traffic rules, weather and road conditions etc. at all times.

Selecting the alert sensitivity

The alert sensitivity has to be set to close, normal or distant in the vehicle personalisation menu ⇨ 107.

The chosen setting will remain until it is changed. The alert timing will vary based on vehicle speed. The faster the vehicle speed, the farther away the alert will occur. Consider traffic and weather conditions when selecting the alert timing.

Deactivation

The system can only be deactivated by deactivating the active emergency braking in the vehicle personalisation ⇨ 107.

System limitations

Forward collision alert is designed to warn on vehicles, pedestrians and cyclists, but may react also to other objects.

In the following cases, forward collision alert may not detect a vehicle ahead or sensor performance is limited:

- driving on winding or hilly roads
- driving during nighttime
- weather limits visibility, such as fog, rain, or snow
- the sensor in the windscreen or the radar unit behind the front bumper are blocked by snow, ice, slush, mud, dirt etc.
- the windscreen is damaged or affected by foreign objects, e.g. stickers
- the bumper is damaged or affected by foreign objects, e.g. license plate support

Active emergency braking

Active emergency braking can help to reduce the damage and injury from crashes with vehicles and pedestrians directly ahead, when the driver does not actively take action either by manual braking or by steering. For vehicles equipped with

camera and radar, active emergency braking also detects cyclists. Before the active emergency braking applies, the driver is warned by the forward collision alert.

Forward collision alert ⇨ 257

Front pedestrian protection ⇨ 262

The feature uses various inputs (e.g. camera sensor, brake pressure, vehicle speed) to calculate the probability of a frontal collision.

Warning

This system is not intended to replace the driver's responsibility for driving the vehicle and looking ahead. It warns the driver if the vehicle is at risk of a collision with the preceding vehicle, a pedestrian or a cyclist. Just before the imminent collision, it reduces the vehicle's speed to avoid a collision or to limit its severity.


The system may not react to animals. After a sudden lane change, the system needs a certain time to detect the next preceding vehicle.

The driver must always be ready to take action and apply the brakes and steer to avoid collisions.

Functionality

Active emergency braking is equipped with a front camera and operates in forward gear in the range between walking speed and 53 mph. The system detects stationary vehicles only if the speed does not exceed 50 mph.

A precondition is that active emergency braking is not deactivated in the vehicle personalisation menu ⇨ 107.

If deactivated,  illuminates in the instrument cluster and a warning message is displayed in the Driver Information Centre


If the system has been deactivated manually, it is reactivated automatically the next time the ignition is switched on.

The system includes:

- emergency automatic braking
- forward collision alert
- front pedestrian protection

Emergency automatic braking

After activation of brake preparation system and just before the imminent collision, this function automatically applies limited braking to reduce the impact speed of the collision or prohibit a crash.

If active emergency braking is applied,  flashes in the instrument cluster.

Depending on the situation, the vehicle may automatically brake moderately or hard.

Front automatic braking can only occur if a vehicle or a pedestrian ahead is detected.

Forward collision alert ⇨ 257

Front pedestrian protection ⇨ 262

Below a speed of 19 mph, emergency automatic braking may slow down the vehicle to a complete stop. If the speed exceeds 19 mph, emergency automatic braking reduces the speed. However, the driver must apply the brake.

Emergency automatic braking may slow the vehicle to a complete stop to try to avoid a potential crash.

- Automatic transmission: If the vehicle comes to a complete stop, automatic braking is maintained for up to two seconds. Keep the brake pedal depressed to prevent the vehicle from starting off again.
- Manual transmission: If the vehicle comes to a complete stop, the engine may stall.

Operation of the function may be felt by a slight vibration in the brake pedal.

⚠ Warning

Emergency automatic braking is an emergency crash preparation feature and is not designed to avoid crashes. Do not rely on the system to brake the vehicle. Emergency automatic braking will not brake outside of its operating speed range and only responds to detected vehicles and pedestrians.

Operation conditions

Active emergency braking only works when

- the seat belts of the front seats and depending on version of the rear seats are fastened
- the brake system is operational
- Electronic Stability Control and Traction Control system are activated

Active emergency braking is automatically deactivated in the following cases:

- A spare wheel with smaller diameter is detected.
- A fault with the brake pedal switch or with the left or right brake light is detected.
- A fault in the active emergency braking system, in the electronic or in the brake system is detected.
- A severe crash, e.g., with airbag deployment was detected.

System limitations

The system performance may be degraded or not available in the following cases:

- sensor covered with snow, ice, slush, mud or dirt
- windscreen damaged or smeared, with blurred view or covered with foreign items, e.g. stickers,
- damaged or deformed front bumper or front bumper covered with foreign items, e.g. stickers

- radar unit is out of its regular position resulting from an impact of the front bumper
- front camera out of its regular position
- automatic braking not available, e.g. brake discs cooling going on
- brake pedal continuously used for a long time, e.g. on a long downhill road
- winding or hilly roads
- during initialisation of the system, e.g. after the vehicle battery has been disconnected
- sun or lights shining into the front camera lens
- adverse environmental conditions, e.g. rain, fog, or snow
- vehicle ahead creating road spray

After an impact or when damages are visible have the vehicle checked by a workshop.

The system performance may be affected by:

- electronic stability control and traction control system in operation
- vehicle battery out of normal operation voltage
- wet road reflecting lights
- close vehicles ahead
- tractors, muddy vehicles or vehicles with a trailer
- banked roads
- poor lighting conditions
- sudden lighting changes
- vehicle modifications, e.g. tyres
- vehicle overloaded

If a sensor is covered, a message is displayed indicating that the sensors have to be cleaned.


If the system is temporarily affected and no driver action is required, no message is displayed.

Complete attention is always required while driving, and be ready to take action to avoid crashes.

We recommend to deactivate the system in the vehicle personalisation in the following cases:

- when towing a trailer or caravan
- when carrying long objects on roof bars or a roof rack
- when the vehicle is being towed
- when performing any maintenance with ignition on
- when the vehicle is fitted with snow chains
- when a spare wheel is fitted that is smaller than the other wheels
- before using an automatic car wash
- before placing the vehicle on a rolling road in a workshop
- if the windscreen has been damaged close to the camera
- if the front bumper has been damaged or deformed
- if the radar unit is out of its regular position resulting from an impact of the front bumper
- if the brake lights are not working

Fault

In case the system requires a service,  is illuminated in the instrument cluster, a message is displayed in the Driver Information Centre and an audible signal is given.

If the system does not work as it should do, vehicle messages are displayed in the Driver Information Centre.

Vehicle messages ⇨ 106.

Front pedestrian protection

Front pedestrian protection may help to avoid or reduce the harm caused by front-end crashes with pedestrians when driving forward.

The system uses the front camera in the windscreen to detect a pedestrian directly ahead in your path.

Front pedestrian protection can detect and alert to pedestrians in a forward gear at speeds between 3 mph and 37 mph.

During nighttime driving, system performance is limited.

Danger

Front pedestrian braking does not provide an alert or automatically brake the vehicle, unless it detects a pedestrian.

The system may not detect pedestrians, including children, if the pedestrian is not directly ahead, not fully visible, or not standing upright.

Front pedestrian protection includes:

- detecting front pedestrian ahead
- front pedestrian alert

Front pedestrian protection is activated together with forward collision alert.

Forward collision alert ⇨ 257.

Detecting front pedestrian ahead

A pedestrian ahead up to a distance of approx. 40 m is indicated by a symbol in the instrument cluster.

Front pedestrian alert

When approaching a detected pedestrian too quickly, a warning message is displayed in the Driver Information Centre. A warning chime is provided.

Cruise control or Adaptive cruise control may be disengaged when the front pedestrian alert occurs.

System limitations

In the following cases, front pedestrian protection may not detect a pedestrian ahead or sensor performance is limited:

- driving on winding or hilly roads
- driving in the dark
- weather limits visibility, such as fog, rain, or snow
- the sensor in the windscreen or the radar unit behind the front bumper is blocked by snow, ice, slush, mud, dirt or by foreign objects, e.g. stickers
- the windscreen is damaged
- the bumper is damaged

Parking assist

General information

When attaching a trailer or bicycle carrier to the trailer hitch, the parking assist is deactivated.

⚠ Warning

The driver bears full responsibility for the parking manoeuvre.

Always check the surrounding area when driving backwards or forwards while using parking assist system.

Rear parking assist

The system warns the driver with audible signals against potentially hazardous obstacles behind the vehicle in a distance range up to 50 cm while reverse gear is engaged.

The system operates with ultrasonic parking sensors in the rear bumper.

Activation

The rear parking assist is activated when reverse gear is engaged and ignition is switched on. This is confirmed by an acoustic chime.



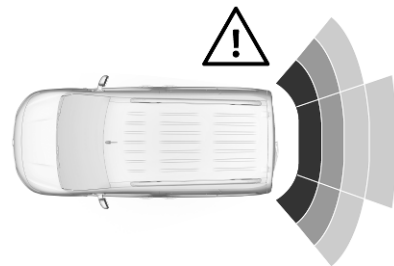
Graphic Info Display: The system is ready to operate when the LED in the parking assist button P^{PA} OFF is not illuminated.

Colour Info Display: Activate the parking assist in the vehicle personalisation ↻ 107.

Indication

Depending on which side of the vehicle is closer to an obstacle, you will hear acoustic warning signals in

the vehicle on the respective side. The interval between the sounds becomes shorter as the vehicle gets closer to that obstacle. When the distance is less than approx. 30 cm, the sound is continuous.



Additionally, the distance to rear obstacles is displayed by changing distance lines in the Info Display ↻ 102. When the obstacle is very close, ⚠ for danger is displayed.

Deactivation

The system is switched off when reverse gear is disengaged. Press P^{PA} OFF to deactivate the system manually. The LED in the button illuminates

when the system is deactivated. If the system has been deactivated manually, it is not reactivated automatically the next time the ignition is switched on.

Graphic Info Display: The system is switched off when the LED in the parking assist button P_{OFF} is illuminated.

Colour Info Display: Deactivate the parking assist in the vehicle personalisation ↻ 107. The state of the system

Front-rear parking assist

The front-rear parking assist measures the distance between the vehicle and obstacles in front and behind the vehicle. It informs and warns the driver by giving audible signals and display indication.

It uses two different acoustic warning signals for the front and rear monitoring areas, each with a different tone frequency.

The system operates with ultrasonic parking sensors in the rear and front bumper.

Activation

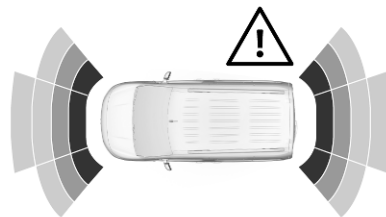
In addition to the rear parking assist, the front parking assist is triggered when an obstacle is detected in front and the speed of the vehicle is below 6 mph.

Graphic Info Display: The system is ready to operate when the LED in the parking assist button P_{OFF} is not illuminated.

Colour Info Display: Activate the parking assist in the vehicle personalisation ↻ 107.

Indication

Depending on which side of the vehicle is closer to an obstacle, you will hear acoustic warning signals in the vehicle on the respective side. The interval between the sounds becomes shorter as the vehicle gets closer to that obstacle. When the distance is less than approx. 30 cm, the sound is continuous.



Additionally, the distance to rear and front obstacles is displayed by changing distance lines in the Info Display ↻ 102.

If the vehicle stops for more than three seconds in a forward gear, if automatic transmission is in **P** or if no further obstacles are detected, no acoustic warning signals are given.

Deactivation

The system is deactivated automatically when vehicle speed exceeds 6 mph, by applying the electric parking brake or by pressing the parking assist button P_{OFF} .

Graphic Info Display: The system is switched off when the LED in the parking assist button P_{off} is illuminated.

Colour Info Display: Deactivate the parking assist in the vehicle personalisation ↻ 107.

Front-rear-lateral parking assist

The front-rear-lateral parking assist measures the distance between the vehicle and obstacles in front, behind and at the sides of the vehicle. It informs and warns the driver by giving acoustic signals and display indication.

The system operates with ultrasonic parking sensors in the rear and front bumper and on the flanks of the vehicle.

Activation

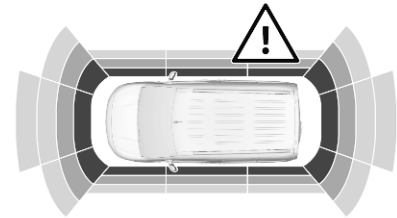
In addition to the rear parking assist and the front-rear assist, the front-rear-lateral parking assist is triggered when the system detects fixed obstacles located to one or both sides of the vehicle.

Graphic Info Display: The system is ready to operate when the LED in the parking assist button P_{off} is not illuminated.

Colour Info Display: Activate the parking assist in the vehicle personalisation ↻ 107.

Indication

Depending on which side of the vehicle is closer to an obstacle, you will hear acoustic warning signals in the vehicle on the respective side. The interval between the sounds becomes shorter as the vehicle gets closer to that obstacle. When the distance is less than approx. 30 cm, the sound is continuous.



Additionally, the distance to rear, front and lateral obstacles is displayed by changing distance lines in the Colour Info Display ↻ 102.


Deactivation

The system is deactivated automatically when vehicle speed exceeds 6 mph, by applying the electric parking brake or by pressing the parking assist button P_{off} .

Graphic Info Display: The system is switched off when the LED in the parking assist button P_{off} is illuminated.

Colour Info Display: Deactivate the parking assist in the vehicle personalisation ↗ 107.

System limitations

In the event of a fault or if the system does not work temporarily, e.g. because of high external noise level or other interference factors,  illuminates in the Driver Information Centre. A message is displayed in the Driver Information Centre and a warning chime sounds.

In the case of a permanent fault, seek the assistance of a workshop.

Warning

Under certain circumstances, various reflective surfaces on objects or clothing as well as external noise sources may cause the system to fail to detect obstacles.

Special attention must be paid to low obstacles which can damage the lower part of the bumper.

Caution


In the case of a severe failure of the vehicle with the need to stop the vehicle, the system is deactivated.

In the case of a gearbox failure, the parking assist system is not active, when reverse gear is engaged.

In the case of a loudspeaker failure, the audible signals may not be given.

Performance of the system can be reduced when sensors are covered, e.g. by ice or snow.

If a sensor is covered, a message is displayed indicating that the sensors have to be cleaned.

Performance of the parking assist system may be limited or the functionality may not be available at all if  illuminates or if the image shown on the Info Display is frozen or if the screen is black.

Performance of the parking assist system can be reduced due to heavy loading.

Special conditions apply if there are taller vehicles in the vicinity (e.g. off-road vehicles, mini vans, vans). Object identification and correct distance indication in the upper part of these vehicles cannot be guaranteed.

Objects with a very small reflection cross-section, e.g. objects of narrow size or soft materials, may not be detected by the system.

Parking assist systems do not detect objects outside the detection range, e.g. below the bumper or underneath the vehicle.

During a reverse parking manoeuvre, the system does not consider a mounted coupling ball bar. The driver has to consider this additional length.

Notice

It is possible that the sensor detects a non-existing object caused by echo disturbance from external acoustic noise or mechanical misalignments (sporadic false warnings may occur).

Make sure that the front number plate is properly mounted (not bent and no gaps to the bumper on the left or right side) and the sensors are firmly in place. The performance of the parking assist may be reduced if the license plate is bent or a license plate support is used.

Low curbs and surface irregularities, e.g. on construction zones, are not detected by the system. The driver accepts responsibility.

Advanced parking assist**⚠ Warning**

The driver bears full responsibility for accepting the parking slot suggested by the system and the parking manoeuvre.

Always check the surrounding area in all directions when using the advanced parking assist.

The advanced parking assist measures a suitable parking slot while passing, calculates the trajectory and automatically steers the vehicle while parking.

Advanced parking assist provides assistance for the following manoeuvres:

- entry into a parallel parking slot
- entry into a perpendicular parking slot
- exit from a parallel parking slot

The driver must control acceleration, braking and gear shifting, while steering is done automatically. The driver can take control at any time by gripping the steering wheel.

It may be necessary to move forwards and backwards more than once.

Instructions are given in the Info Display ↻ 102.

Advanced parking assist can only be activated when driving forwards.

Entry into a parallel parking slot**Activation**

Slow down the vehicle speed below 19 mph.

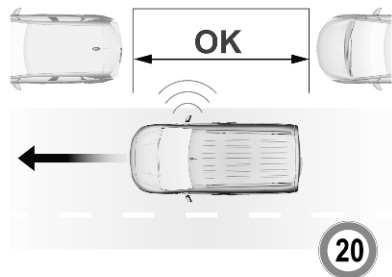
To search for a parking slot, activate the system in the Info Display ↻ 102.

Select the parallel parking slot menu.

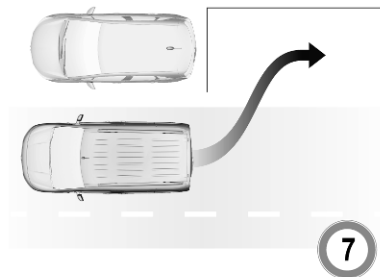
Select parking side by switching on the turn light on the respective side.

The allowed parallel distance between the vehicle and a row of parked cars is between 0.5 m and 1.5 m.

For entering into a parallel parking slot, the minimum length of the slot must be equal to the length of your vehicle plus 0.6 m. The system will not identify slots that are clearly smaller or larger than the vehicle.



When a free slot is detected, a visual feedback on the Info Display and a first acoustic signal is given. Drive slowly forwards. When the second acoustic signal is given, stop the vehicle, select reverse gear, release the steering wheel and start moving slowly. A visual feedback is given on the Info Display.



Move forwards and backwards while observing the warnings of the Parking assist until the end of manoeuvre is indicated.

Entry into a perpendicular parking slot

Activation

Slow down the vehicle speed below 19 mph.

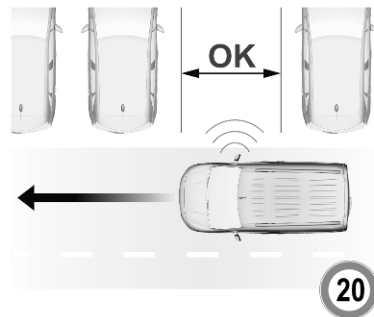
To search for a parking slot, activate the system in the Info Display ↻ 102.

Select the perpendicular parking slot menu.

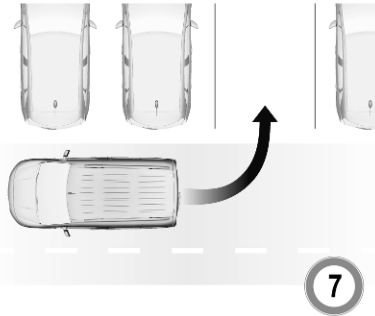
Select parking side by switching on the turn light on the respective side.

The allowed parallel distance between the vehicle and a row of parked cars is between 0.5 m and 1.5 m.

For entering into a perpendicular parking slot, the minimum width of the slot must be equal to the width of your vehicle plus 0.7 m. When several successive slots are found, the vehicle will be directed towards the last one.



When a free slot is detected, a visual feedback on the Info Display and an acoustic signal is given. Stop the vehicle, select reverse gear, release the steering wheel and start moving without exceeding 4 mph.



Move forwards and backwards as instructed by observing the warnings of the parking assist and paying attention to the acoustic signals until the end of manoeuvre is indicated. When finished, P_0 extinguishes in the instrument cluster.

During the parking manoeuvre, the system is automatically deactivated once the rear of the vehicle is within 50 cm of an obstacle.

Exiting a parallel parking slot

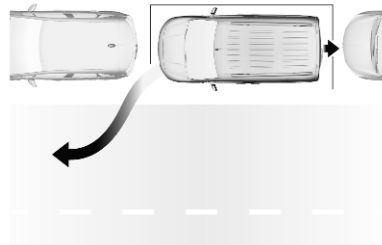
Activation

When exiting a parallel parking slot, activate the system in the Info Display \rightarrow 102.

Select the exiting a parallel parking slot menu.

Select exit side by switching on the respective turn light.

Engage reverse or forward gear, release the steering wheel and start moving without exceeding 3 mph.



Move forwards and backwards while observing the warnings of the Parking assist until the end of manoeuvre is

indicated. The manoeuvre is complete when the vehicle's front wheels are out of the parking slot. After deactivation ensure to take control over the vehicle.


Display indication

The instructions on the display show:

- general hints and warning messages
- the demand to stop the vehicle, when a parking slot is detected
- the direction of driving during the parking manoeuvre
- the demand to shift into reverse or first gear
- the demand to stop or to drive slowly
- the successful completion of the parking manoeuvre indicated by a pop-up symbol and a chime
- the cancelling of a parking manoeuvre

Deactivation

Do not use the advanced parking assist when a temporary spare wheel is mounted. The rear view camera may not work properly.

The current park assist manoeuvre is cancelled via the button to return to the previous screen in the Info Display. To deactivate the system completely, press  in the centre console.

The system is deactivated automatically:

- if the ignition is switched off
- if stalling the engine
- if no manoeuvre is started within five minutes of selection of the type of manoeuvre
- after a prolonged stop of the vehicle during a manoeuvre
- if the Electronic Stability Control is triggered
- if the speed of the vehicle exceeds the stated limit
- when the driver interrupts movement of the steering wheel

- after seven manoeuvres for entering a perpendicular parking slot (a manoeuvre consists of one rear move or one forward move)
- after ten manoeuvres for entering or exiting a parallel parking slot
- on opening a door or the load compartment
- if one of the front wheels encounters an obstacle
- parking manoeuvre successfully ended


Deactivation by the driver or by the system during manoeuvring will be indicated on the display. Additionally, an audible signal sounds.

The system is deactivated when a plug is connected to the power outlet of the trailer hitch.

Contact your dealer to switch off the system for a prolonged period.

Fault

In the event of a fault, a message is displayed in the Colour Info Display, accompanied by an audible signal.

In the event of a fault in the power steering,  illuminates and a message is displayed in the Driver Information Centre.

Notice

Advanced parking assist system may not respond to changes in the available parking space after initiating a parking manoeuvre. The system may recognize an entry, a gateway, a courtyard or even a crossing as a parking slot. Take care regarding the availability of the suggested parking slot.

Side blind spot alert

The side blind spot alert system detects and reports objects on either side of the vehicle, within a specified blind spot zone. The system displays a visual alert in each exterior mirror, when detecting objects that may not be visible in the interior and exterior mirrors.

Side blind spot alert uses some of the advanced parking assist sensors which are located in the front and rear bumper on both sides of the vehicle.

⚠ Warning


Side blind spot alert does not replace driver vision.


The system does not detect:

- vehicles outside the side blind zones which may be rapidly approaching
- pedestrians, cyclists or animals

Before changing a lane, always check all mirrors, look over the shoulder and use the turn signal.

Activation

Colour Info Display: press . Select **Driving functions** on the Info Display and then **Blind spot sensors**. Activate the function.

 illuminates continuously green in the instrument cluster to confirm the function.

Functionality



When the system detects a vehicle in the side blind zone while driving forwards, an LED will illuminate in the relevant exterior mirror.

The LED comes on immediately when being passed.

The LED comes on after a delay when passing another vehicle slowly.

Operation conditions

The following conditions must be fulfilled for proper operation:

- all vehicles are moving in the same direction and in adjacent lanes
- the speed of your vehicle is between 7 and 87 mph
- passing a vehicle with a speed difference of less than 6 mph
- another vehicle is passing with a speed difference of less than 15 mph
- the traffic flow is normal
- driving on a straight or slightly curved road
- the vehicle is not pulling a trailer
- the sensors are not covered by mud, ice or snow
- the warning zones in the door mirrors or the detection zones on front and rear bumper are not covered with adhesive labels or other objects

No alert will be given in the following situations:

- in the presence of non-moving objects, e.g. parked vehicles, barriers, street lamps, road signs
- in very dense traffic, when moving vehicles might be confused with a stationary object
- with vehicles moving in the opposite direction
- driving on a winding road or a sharp corner
- when passing or being passed by a very long vehicle, e.g. lorry, coach, which is at the same time detected at the rear in the blind spot angle and present in the driver's forward field of vision
- when passing too quickly

Deactivation


The system is deactivated in the vehicle personalisation ↗ 107. ^{AV} extinguishes in the instrument cluster. Additionally, an acoustic signal sounds.

The state of the system is stored when switching off the ignition.

The system is automatically deactivated when towing an electrically connected trailer.

Due to adverse weather conditions such as heavy rain, false detections may occur.

Fault

In the event of a fault, ^{AV} flashes for a few moments in the instrument panel, accompanied by  and a display message. Have the cause of the fault remedied by a workshop.

Passenger side camera

The passenger side camera monitors the side of the vehicle.



The camera is mounted at the bottom of the exterior mirror on the passenger side.

The area displayed by the camera is limited. The distance of the image that appears on the display differs from the actual distance.

Camera with view to the rear

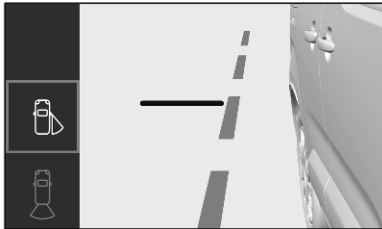
The camera shows the blind spot area of the passenger side.

The passenger side view is displayed in the rear view display ↗ 105.

Switching on

The camera is switched on when the vehicle is running in forward gear and the passenger side view is selected from the rear view display.

Guidelines



The line represents a distance of about 4 m beyond the edge of vehicle's rear bumper.

Switching off

The camera is deactivated when another view type is selected.

System limitations

The passenger side camera may not operate properly when:

- the surrounding is dark
- the beam of headlights is shining directly into the camera lenses
- weather limits visibility, such as fog, rain, or snow
- the camera lenses are blocked by snow, ice, slush, mud, dirt. Clean the lense, rinse with water, and wipe with a soft cloth
- there are extreme temperature changes

Panoramic view system

This system allows views of the vehicle's surroundings to be displayed as a nearly 180° picture in the Info display, like a bird's eye view.

⚠ Warning

The panoramic view system does not replace driver vision. It will not display children, pedestrians,

cyclists, crossing traffic, animals, or any other objects outside of the camera view area, e. g. below the bumper, or underneath the vehicle.

Do not drive or park the vehicle using only the panoramic view system.

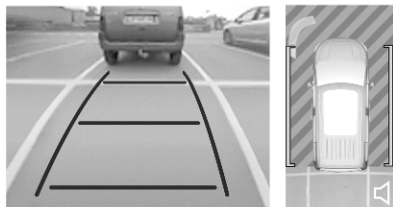
Always check the surrounding of the vehicle before and during driving.

Displayed images may be further or closer than they appear. The area displayed is limited and objects that are close to either edge of the bumper or under the bumper are not displayed on the screen.

Depending on the load of the vehicle, the inclination of the vehicle may be changed including the view of the camera.

The system uses:

- rear camera, installed in the tailgate
- ultrasonic parking sensors in the rear bumper



The screen in the Info display is divided into two parts. On the right there is a view from above the vehicle, and on the left there is the view from the rear displayed. The parking sensors complete the information on the view from above the vehicle.

Change the volume of the acoustic signals by pressing \triangleleft in the right lower zone of the display.

Activation

Panoramic view system is activated by:

- engaging reverse gear
- driving up to 6 mph

Functionality

Different views can be selected in the left part of the display. Change the type of view at any time during a manoeuvre by pressing the touch field in the left lower zone of the display:

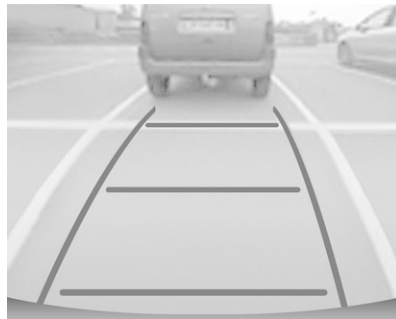
- **Standard view**
- **AUTO Mode**
- **Zoom view**
- **180° view**

The display is immediately updated with the type of view selected.

AUTO Mode is activated by default. In this mode, the system selects the best view, standard or zoom, to display according to the information from the parking sensors.

The state of the system is not kept in memory when the ignition is switched off.

Rear view / Standard view



The area behind the vehicle is displayed in the screen. The vertical lines represent the width of the vehicle with mirrors unfolded. The direction of the lines changes with the position of the steering wheel.

The first horizontal line represents a distance of about 30 cm beyond the edge of vehicle's rear bumper. The upper horizontal lines represent distances of about 1 and 2 m beyond the edge of your vehicle's rear bumper.

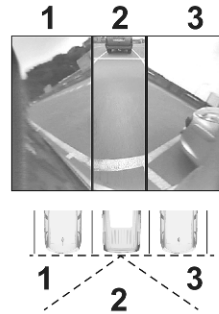
This view is available in **AUTO Mode** or in the view selection menu.

Rear zoom view / Zoom view



The camera records the vehicle's surroundings during the manoeuvre in order to reconstruct a view from above the rear of the vehicle in its near surroundings, allowing the vehicle to be manoeuvred around obstacles nearby. This view is available with **AUTO Mode** or in the view selection menu.

Rear side view / 180° view



The 180° view facilitates reversing out of a parking bay, making it possible to see the approach of vehicles, pedestrians and cyclists. This view is not recommended for carrying out a complete manoeuvre. It is made up of three areas: left 1, centre 2 and right 3. This view is available from the view selection menu only.

Deactivation

Panoramic view system is deactivated when:

- driving faster than 6 mph
- seven seconds after disengaging reverse gear
- by pressing the icon ← in the left upper corner of the touch screen and then ✕
- opening the tailgate
- attaching a trailer or a bike carrier

System limitations

Caution

For optimal operation of the system, it is important to keep the lenses of all cameras always clean. For the rear view camera, there is a washer nozzle which will be activated when the rear window washer is operating.

If manually cleaning the lenses of the cameras, rinse the lenses with water and wipe with a soft cloth.

Do not clean the lenses with a steam-jet or high-pressure jet cleaner.

The panoramic view system may not operate properly when:

- The surrounding is dark.
- The sun or the beam of headlights is shining directly into the camera lenses.
- Weather limits visibility, such as fog, rain, or snow.
- The camera lenses are blocked by snow, ice, slush, mud, dirt.
- The vehicle is towing an electrically connected trailer, bicycle carrier, etc.
- The vehicle had an accident. Contact a workshop.
- There are extreme temperature changes.

Caution

It is very important that any repair to the panoramic view system is performed accurately according to

Vauxhall specifications. Otherwise, the system may not work properly and there is a risk of unexpected behaviour and / or messages from the system.

Rear view camera

Depending on version, camera is mounted above the license plate in the tailgate / left rear door or at the top of the left rear door.

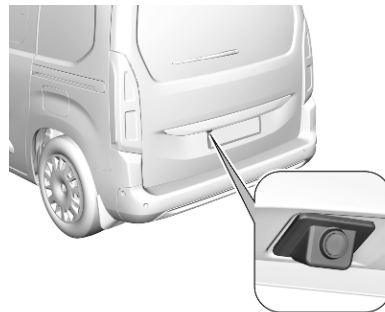
⚠ Warning


The rear view camera does not replace driver vision. Note that objects that are outside the camera's field of view and the parking assist sensors, e.g. below the bumper or underneath the vehicle, are not displayed.

Do not reverse or park the vehicle using only the rear view camera.

Always check the surrounding of the vehicle before and during driving.

Camera above the license plate on the tailgate / left rear door



The view of the camera is displayed in the Info Display  102.

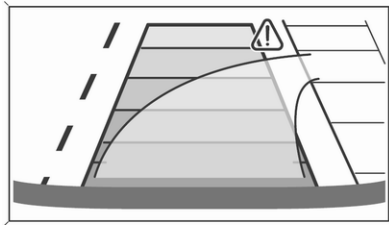
The area displayed by the camera is limited. The distance of the image that appears on the display differs from the actual distance.

Switching on

Rear view camera is automatically activated when reverse gear is engaged.

Guidelines

Dynamic guidelines are horizontal lines at one metre intervals projected onto the picture to define the distance to displayed objects.



Trajectory lane of the vehicle is shown in accordance with the steering angle.

Switching off

The camera is switched off when a forward gear is engaged.

Camera at top of the left rear door



The view of the camera is displayed in the rear view display ↗ 105.

Switching on

The rear view camera is automatically switched on.

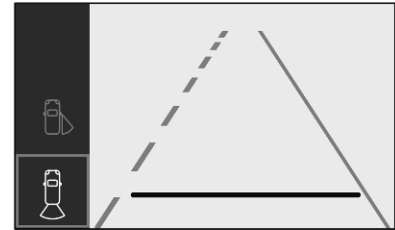
The standard rear view is activated when a forward gear is engaged.

The close rear view is activated when selected via "□" in the rear view display or when the reverse gear is engaged.

When operating with a trailer, the close rear view is no longer operable.

Guidelines

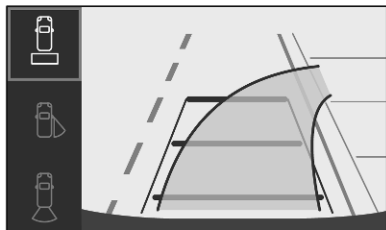
Standard rear view



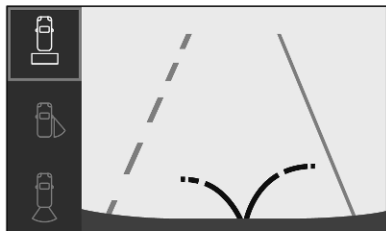
The horizontal line represents a distance of about 4 m beyond the edge of vehicle's rear bumper.

Close rear view

The lower horizontal line represents a distance of about 30 cm beyond the edge of vehicle's rear bumper. The upper horizontal lines represent a distance of about 1 m and 2 m.



Trajectory lane of the vehicle is shown in accordance with the steering angle.



Additionally the opening radius of the rear doors are shown in the rear view display.

Switching off

The rear view camera is switched off when the rear view display is switched off.

System limitations

The rear view camera may not operate properly when:

- the surrounding is dark
- the beam of headlights is shining directly into the camera lenses
- weather limits visibility, such as fog, rain, or snow
- the camera lenses are blocked by snow, ice, slush, mud, dirt. Clean the lense, rinse with water, and wipe with a soft cloth
- the tailgate will be opened
- the vehicle is towing an electrically connected trailer, bicycle carrier, etc.

- the vehicle had a rear end accident
- there are extreme temperature changes

Traffic sign assistant

⚠ Warning

The actual traffic sign always takes priority over the traffic sign displayed in the Driver Information Centre.

Speed limit

Using the camera at the top of the windscreen and the vehicle's integrated navigation system, this system provides speed limits and end of speed limits in the Driver Information Centre.

The system can be activated or deactivated in the vehicle personalisation ↻ 107.

If the system is activated but does not detect a speed limit sign, the following sign is displayed:



If the vehicle exceeds the speed limit by at least 3 mph, the speed limit displayed flashes about ten seconds.

Speed limiter ⇨ 248.

Cruise control ⇨ 246.

Adaptive cruise control ⇨ 251.

Updating navigation map data

To maintain the performance of the system, the navigation map should be updated in periodical intervals. A navigation map update is available twice per year.

Further information is available in the Infotainment system section.

Other traffic signs

The system detects traffic signs and displays them in specific page of the Driver Information Centre.



This system can be activated or deactivated in the vehicle personalisation ⇨ 107.

Driver Information Centre ⇨ 99.

System limitations

Traffic sign assistant may not operate properly when:

- Driving on winding or hilly roads.
- Driving during nighttime.
- Driving with snow chains.
- Driving with a trailer.
- The area of the windscreen, where the front camera is located, is not clean or affected by foreign items, e.g. stickers.
- The visibility is limited because of the weather, such as fog, rain, or snow.
- The sun is shining directly into the camera lens.

- Traffic signs are completely or partially covered or difficult to discern.
- Traffic signs are incorrectly mounted or damaged.
- Traffic signs do not comply with the Vienna Convention on Road Signs and Signals.
- The navigation map data is outdated.

Caution

The system is intended to help the driver within a defined speed range to recognise certain traffic signs. Do not ignore traffic signs which are not displayed by the system.

Do not let this special feature tempt you into taking risks when driving.


Always adapt speed regarding road, traffic and weather conditions.

The driver assistance systems do not relieve the driver from full responsibility for vehicle operation.

When driving abroad make sure the vehicle uses the speed unit of the respective country. If necessary, select the correct units in the Info Display.

Lane keep assist

Lane keep assist supports the driver to avoid unintended leaving of the lane. The front camera observes road edges, as well as the lane markings between which the vehicle is driving. If the vehicle approaches a road edge or a lane marking, the steering wheel is gently turned so that the vehicle turns back into the lane. The driver will notice a turning movement of the steering wheel. Turn steering wheel in same direction, if the system does not steer sufficiently. Turn steering wheel gently into opposite direction, if lane change is intended.

When the system steers to correct the trajectory of the vehicle,  flashes yellow in the Driver Information Centre. Lane keep assist does not continuously steer the vehicle.

Unintended lane departure is not assumed by the system when the turn lights are operated and during few seconds after turn lights have been switched off.

If the system detects that the steering wheel is not held permanently, it interrupts the correction.

A lane departure warning in the Driver Information Centre alerts when the system cannot hold the vehicle within the lane and immediate driver's action is required.

Notice

The system may be switched off if it detects lanes which are too narrow, too wide or too curved.



Following preconditions have to be fulfilled that the system corrects:

- vehicle speed must be between 40 mph and 112 mph
- the turn lights are not activated


- the electronic stability control is activated and not in operation
- no plug is connected to the power outlet of the trailer hitch
- no dynamic driving, i.e. pressure on the brake or accelerator pedal
- roads with good lane markings
- no temporary spare wheel is used
- the vehicle is not driven in a tight corner
- no system fault is present which prevents corrections

Activation



If the system is activated, the LED in the button  is not illuminated. To activate the system when the system is deactivated, press .

Deactivation

To deactivate the system, press  until LED in the button is illuminated.

Recommended deactivation



It is recommended to deactivate the system in the following situations:

- Road surface in poor condition
- Unfavourable climatic conditions
- Slippery surfaces, e.g., ice

The system is not designed for driving in the following situations:

- Driving on a speed circuit
- Driving with a trailer
- Driving on a rolling stand
- Driving on unstable surfaces

Fault

In the event of a fault,  and  appear in the instrument panel, accompanied by a display message and a warning chime. **C**Seek the assistance of a workshop.

System limitations

The system performance may be affected by:

- covered camera by snow, ice, slush, mud, dirt, or affected by windscreen damage or foreign items, e.g. stickers
- close vehicles ahead
- banked roads
- winding or hilly roads
- poor lighting conditions
- sudden lighting changes
- shining sun directly into the camera lens
- adverse environmental conditions, e.g. heavy rain, fog, or snow
- vehicle modifications, e.g. tyres
- roads with poor lane markings

A warning message may appear when the vehicle is travelling in a long straight lane on a smooth road surface even if the driver is holding the steering wheel properly.

Deactivate the system if the system is disturbed by tar marks, shadows, road cracks, temporary or construction lane markings, or other road imperfections.

Warning

Always keep your attention on the road and maintain proper vehicle position within the lane, otherwise vehicle damage, injury or death could occur.

The system may not keep the vehicle in the lane or give an alert, even if a lane marking is detected.

The steering of the system may not be sufficient to avoid a lane departure.

The system may not detect hands-off driving due to external influences (road condition and surface, weather etc). The driver

has full responsibility to control the vehicle and is always required to keep the hands on the steering wheel while driving.

Using the system while towing a trailer or on slippery roads could cause loss of control of the vehicle and a crash. Switch the system off.

Driver alert

The driver alert system monitors the driving time and the vigilance of the driver. Monitoring the vigilance of the driver is based on the trajectory variations of the vehicle compared to the lane markings.

The system cannot replace the need for vigilance on the part of the driver. Taking a break is recommended as soon as feeling tired or at least every two hours. Do not take the steering wheel when feeling tired.

Activation or Deactivation

The system can be activated or deactivated in the vehicle personalisation ↗ 107.

The state of the system stays in memory when the ignition is switched off.

Driving time alert

The driver gets notified by a pop-up reminder symbol 📌 in the Driver Information Centre simultaneously with an acoustic alert if the driver has not taken a break after 2 hours of driving at a speed above 40 mph. The alert is repeated hourly until the vehicle is stopped, no matter how vehicle speed evolves.

The counting of driving time alert is reset if one of the following conditions is met:

- The vehicle has been stationary for more than 15 minutes with the engine running.
- The ignition has been switched off for a few minutes.
- The driver's seat belt has been unfastened and the driver's door is open.

Notice

If the vehicle speed drops below 40 mph, the system is paused. The driving time is counted again once the speed is above 40 mph.

Driver drowsiness detection

The system monitors the driver's level of vigilance. A camera at the top of the windshield detects variations in trajectory compared to the lane markings. This system is particularly suited to fast roads (speed higher than 40 mph).

If the trajectory of the vehicle suggests a certain level of drowsiness or inattention by the driver, the system triggers the first level of alert. The driver is notified by a message and an audible signal is given.

After three first level alerts, the system triggers a new alert with a message, accompanied by a more pronounced audible signal.

In certain driving conditions (poor road surface or strong winds), the system may give alerts independent of the driver's level of vigilance.

The driver drowsiness detection is reinitialised when the ignition has been switched off for a few minutes or the speed remains below 40 mph for a few minutes.

System limitations

In the following situations, the system may not operate properly or even not operate at all:

- poor visibility caused by inadequate lighting of the roadway, falling snow, heavy rain, dense fog etc.
- dazzle caused by headlamps of oncoming vehicles, low sun, reflections on damp roads, leaving a tunnel, alternating shade and light etc.
- no lane markings detected or multiple lane markings due to roadworks
- close vehicles ahead
- winding roads or narrow roads

- advanced lane keep assist is active
- covered camera by snow, ice, slush, mud, dirt, or affected by windscreen damage or foreign items, e.g. stickers

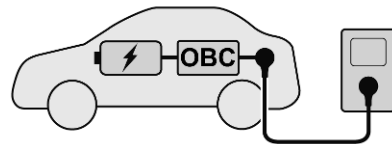
Charging

General information

⚠ Warning

Persons with a pacemaker should consult a doctor for possible precautions.

Charging the vehicle's high voltage battery depends upon several factors:



- high voltage battery of the vehicle
- internal on-board charger (OBC)
- charging cable
- external charging device

The charging cable connects the vehicle with an external charging device providing electric power. This

may be a domestic electrical outlet, a Green'Up socket, a wall box or a public charging station.

The high voltage battery is charged with direct current (DC) only. When charging the vehicle with alternating current (AC), AC has to be converted into DC. This is done by the vehicle's onboard charger. The onboard charger is available with 7.4 kW (single-phase) and 11 kW (3-phase).

If the vehicle is charged at a public DC charging station, no DC conversion is required. The high voltage battery can be directly charged with DC provided by the DC charging station.

The speed of charging the vehicle's high voltage battery depends upon the weakest element of the charging chain. To achieve the maximum charging speed, charging cable and charging device have to be attuned to each other.

Notice

Make sure that the charging cable used fits to the vehicle's onboard charger.

Charging types ⇨ 284.

Charging cable ⇨ 291.

Electric power consumption and range

The electric power consumption (combined) is within a range of 22.5 to 19.8 kWh/100 km, CO₂ emission 0 g/km.

The range is up to 174 miles for Combo-e Life and 170 miles for Combo-e Cargo.

For the values specific to your vehicle, refer to the EEC Certificate of Conformity provided with your vehicle or other national registration documents.

The determination of electric power consumption is regulated by directive R (EC) No. 715/2007 and No. 2017/1151 (in the latest applicable version).

Charging types

There are different types of charging the vehicle's high voltage battery.

Charging at wallboxes



A wallbox is a charging unit for private households. It provides a charging cable which has to be connected to the vehicle's charging port. Some wallboxes do not provide a charging cable. In this case, a separate charging cable is required which has to be connected to both the wallbox and the charging port of the vehicle.

Charging time may take approx. 5 hours with a charging power of 11 kW or 7.5 hours with a charging power of 7.4 kW.

Charging at charging stations

Charging stations may provide alternating current (AC) or direct current (DC). Charging time may vary depending on the charging station, DC charging stations provide the fastest charging. To charge the

vehicle's battery, the charging cable of the charging station has to be connected to the charging port of the vehicle.



- AC charging station: Charging time may take approx. 5 hours with a charging power of 11 kW or 7.5 hours with a charging power of 7.4 kW.



- DC charging station: Up to approx. 80% of battery capacity may be charged in approx. 30 minutes at a charging power of 100 kW.

Charging at domestic electrical outlets



The vehicle's high voltage battery can be charged at a domestic electrical outlet. Connect the charging cable to the vehicle's charging port and to the domestic electrical outlet.

Charging time may take approx. 30 hours with a charging power of 1.8 kW.

Charging cable

Depending on the charging type, different charging cables are used.

⚠ Warning

Improper use of portable charging cables may cause a fire, electrical shock, or burns, and may result in damage to property, serious injury, or death.

- Do not use extension cables, multi-outlet power strips, splitters, grounding adaptors, surge protectors, or similar devices.
- Do not use an electrical socket that is worn or damaged, or one that will not hold the plug firmly in place.
- Do not immerse the charging cable into any liquid.
- Do not use an electrical socket that is not properly grounded.
- Do not use an electrical socket that is on a circuit with other electrical loads.

⚠ Warning

Read all the safety warnings and instructions before using this product. Failure to follow the warnings and the instructions may result in electric shock, fire, and / or serious injury.

Never leave children unattended near the vehicle while the vehicle is charging and never allow children to play with the charging cable.

If the plug provided does not fit the electrical outlet, do not modify the plug. Arrange for a qualified electrician to inspect the electrical outlet.

Do not put fingers into the electric vehicle connector.

⚠ Danger

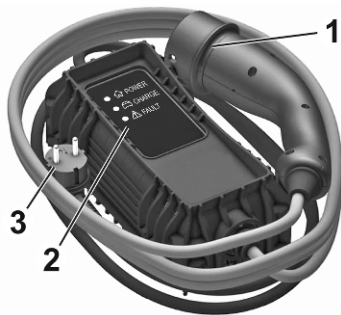
There is a risk of electric shock that may cause personal injury or death.

Do not use the charging cable if any part of the charging cable is damaged.

Do not open or remove the charging cable cover.

Service by qualified personnel only. Connect the charging cable to a properly grounded outlet with cables that are not damaged.

Basic domestic cable (mode 2) / enhanced domestic cable (mode 2)



1. Vehicle plug
2. Status indicators
3. Wall plug

Basic domestic cables (mode 2) are used for charging at domestic electrical outlets. A basic domestic cable (mode 2) consists of a vehicle plug, a control box and a plug for the domestic electrical outlet. The control box has an intergrated charge controller and several LEDs indicating the charging status.

Enhanced domestic cables (mode 2) are similar to basic domestic cables (mode 2). However, the charging performance of enhanced domestic cables (mode 2 charging) is better than the charging performance of basic domestic cables (mode 2). Enhanced domestic cables (mode 2) are used at Green'Up sockets which have to be installed by a certified electrician at the customer's site.

Charging cable status indicators

After plugging in the charging cable, it will perform a quick self test and all status indicators illuminate for a

moment. For the functions of the status indicators, refer to the manual of the charging cable manufacturer.

Important information about portable electric vehicle charging

- Charging an electric vehicle can stress a building's electrical system more than a typical household appliance.
- Before you plug in to any electrical outlet, have a qualified electrician inspect and verify the electrical system (electrical outlet, wiring, junctions and protection devices) for heavy-duty service at a 10 A continuous load.
- Electrical outlets may wear out with normal usage or be damaged over time, making them unsuitable for electric vehicle charging.
- Check the electrical outlet / plug while charging and discontinue use if the electrical outlet / plug is hot, then have the electrical outlet serviced by a qualified electrician.

- When outdoors, plug into an electrical outlet that is weather-proof while in use.
- Mount the charging cable to reduce strain on the electrical outlet / plug.

Mode 3 charging cable



1. Vehicle plug
2. Plug for wall box / AC charging station

Mode 3 charging cables are used for charging at wall boxes and AC charging stations. A mode 3 charging cable provides a vehicle plug and a plug for the wall box / AC charging

station. Wall boxes / AC charging stations may provide an integrated mode 3 charging cable. For more information on the mode 3 charging cable, refer to the manual of the charging cable manufacturer.

Mode 4 charging cable

Notice

Only use DC charging cables shorter than 30 metres.

Mode 4 charging cables are used for DC charging. Since mode 4 charging cables are integrated within DC charging stations, they only provide a vehicle plug.

Charging

⚠ Warning

Persons with a pacemaker or similar devices should consult a doctor for possible precautions.

If in doubt, during charging do not remain inside or near the vehicle, near the charging cable or the charging unit.

In order to ensure the compatibility of plug and outlet, different labels are used. The labels are located on the inside of the vehicle's charging port flap. Make sure to connect only a cable of the same type.



Type 2 plug or outlet used for AC charging



FF plug or outlet used for DC charging

⚠ Warning

Avoid any entry of fluids into the charging port of the vehicle, the vehicle plug of the charging cable and the domestic electrical outlet.

When charging at a public AC charging station / public DC charging station, follow the instructions for the use of the respective charging station. Public AC charging stations may not provide an integrated charging cable. In this case, a portable mode 3 charging cable is required.

⚠ Warning

When charging at a domestic electrical outlet, only use an outlet which is properly grounded and protected by a 30 mA differential switch.

Only use a domestic electrical outlet protected by a circuit breaker adapted to the amperage of the electrical circuit.

Have a qualified electrician check the electrical installation to be used. The installation has to be in compliance with national standards and compatible with the vehicle.

When using a dedicated domestic electrical outlet, have it installed by a qualified electrician.

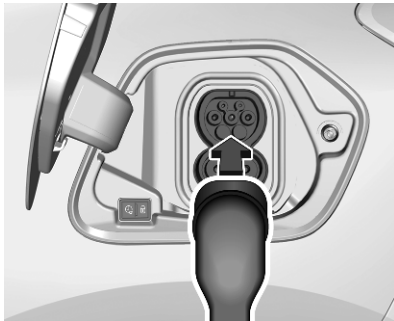
Make sure that the electrical outlet, the plug and the cable do not support the weight of the control box.

1. Shift into **P** and switch off the vehicle.



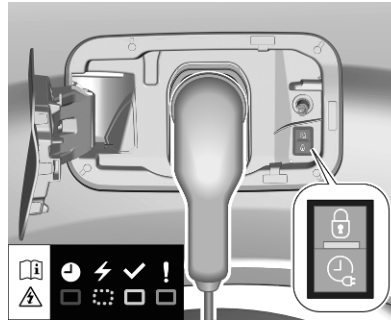
2. Push the charging port flap to release it.
3. If necessary, take the charging cable out of the load compartment.
4. If necessary, plug in the plug of the charging cable into the corresponding port of the external power source.

Charging cable ↗ 291.

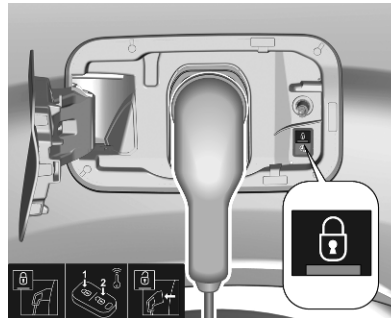



5. Plug in the vehicle plug of the charging cable into the charging port of the vehicle.

Charging status ↗ 291.



The start of charging is indicated by the green flashing of the status indicator at the charging port and at the control box of the charging cable if available.



Once charging, the vehicle plug will be locked to the charging port and cannot be disconnected while charging is active.  indicator illuminates.


Charging types ↗ 284.


Cancelling the charging process

Notice

At public charging stations, the cancelling and subsequent resuming of the charging process may cause additional costs.

Once the charging process has started, only the driver's door can be unlocked without cancelling the charging process. Therefore, activate the driver's door only function in the vehicle personalisation.

Press  on the remote control to cancel the charging process at any time.

Press  twice to cancel the charging process at any time if the function **driver's door only** is activated in the vehicle personalisation.

Central locking system ↗ 10.

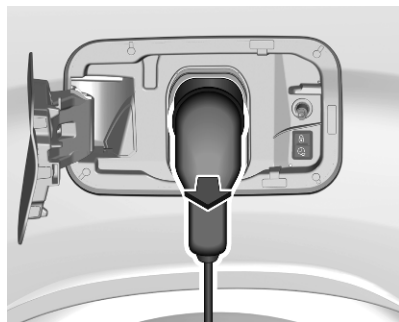
Vehicle personalisation ⇨ 107.

Stop charging

The high voltage battery is fully charged if the status indicator on the charging port permanently illuminates green.

1. Unlock the vehicle before removing the vehicle plug from the charging port.

If the vehicle is already unlocked, lock the vehicle and unlock it again.



2. Disconnect the vehicle plug of the charging cable from the charging port within 30 seconds after unlocking.
3. Close the charging port flap by pressing firmly in the centre to latch properly.
4. Disconnect the charging cable from the external power source.
5. If necessary, store the charging cable in the load compartment.

While the charging cable is plugged into the vehicle, the vehicle cannot be driven.

Programmable charging

By default, charging starts as soon as the charging cable is connected to the charging port of the vehicle. It is also possible to schedule charging using the Info Display.


Programmable charging is only possible when charging at a domestic electrical outlet / Green'Up socket or a wall box.

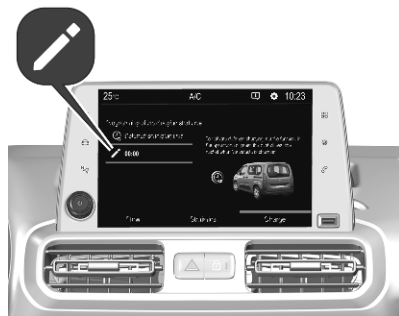
Programmable charging is also available via the MyVauxhall App.


Notice

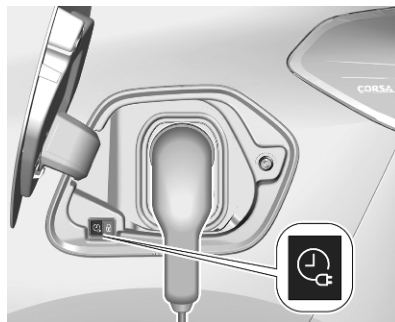
On vehicles equipped with the **Multimedia** infotainment system, programmable charging can only be used via the MyVauxhall App.




1. Press .
2. Select **Charge**.



3. Press .
4. Define the number of hours and minutes after which the loading process starts.
5. Press **OK**.
6. Plug in the vehicle.



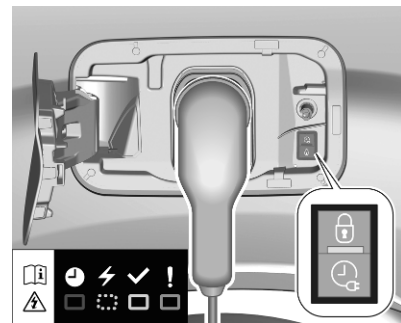
7. Within one minute, press  to activate programmable charging.
8. Depending on version, lock the vehicle.

The status indicator illuminates blue indicating that programmable charging is active.

Charging  287.

Charging status  291.

Charging status



If the vehicle is plugged in and the ignition is switched off, the charging status indicator indicates the following:

- Illuminates white: welcome lighting when charging port flap is opened
- Illuminates green: charging complete
- Flashes green: charging in process
- Illuminates red: charging fault
- Illuminates blue: programmable charging active

A charging fault has occurred if the vehicle is plugged in and the charging status indicator is off.

Further charging status indicators are located on the control box of the basic domestic cable (mode 2) / enhanced domestic cable (mode 2).

Charging cable ⇨ 285.

Programmable charging ⇨ 290.

Fuel

Fuel for petrol engines

The petrol engines are compatible with bio-fuels that conform to current and future European standards and can be obtained from filling stations:



Petrol that meets the EN228 standard, mixed with a biofuel meeting the EN15376 standard.

Use fuel with the recommended octane rating. A lower octane rating can reduce engine power and torque and slightly increases fuel consumption.

Caution

Do not use fuel or fuel additives that contain metallic compounds such as manganese-based additives. This may cause engine damage.

Caution

Use of fuel with a lower octane rating than the lowest possible rating could lead to uncontrolled combustion and engine damage.

The engine specific requirements regarding octane rating are given in the engine data overview ⇨ 350. A country-specific label at the fuel filler flap can supersede the requirement. In certain countries, the use of a particular fuel, e.g. a specific octane rating, may be required to ensure proper engine operation.

Fuel for diesel engines

The diesel engines are compatible with bio-fuels that conform to current and future European standards and can be obtained from filling stations:



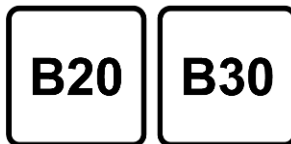
Diesel fuel that meets standard EN590 mixed with a biofuel that meets standard EN14214 (possibly containing up to 7 % Fatty Acid Methyl Ester)



Diesel fuel that meets standard EN16734 mixed with a biofuel that meets standard EN14214 (possibly containing up to 10% Fatty Acid Methyl Ester)



Paraffinic diesel fuel that meets standard EN15940 mixed with a biofuel that meets standard EN14214 (possibly containing up to 7% Fatty Acid Methyl Ester).



The use of B20 or B30 fuel meeting standard EN16709 is possible in your diesel engines. However, this use, even occasional, requires strict

application of the special servicing conditions referred to as "Arduous conditions".

For more information, contact a dealer or a qualified workshop.

Caution

The use of any other type of (bio) fuel (vegetable or animal oils, pure or diluted, domestic fuel etc.) is strictly prohibited (risk of damage to the engine and fuel system).

Notice

The only diesel additives authorised for use are those that meet the B715000 standard.

Low temperature operation

At temperatures below 0 °C, some diesel products with biodiesel blends may clog, freeze or gel, which may affect the fuel supply system. Starting and engine operation may not work properly. Make sure to fill winter grade diesel fuel at ambient temperatures below 0 °C.

Arctic grade diesel fuel can be used at extremely low temperatures below -20 °C. Using this fuel grade in warm or hot climates is not recommended and may cause engine stalling, poor starting or damage on the fuel injection system.

Refuelling

⚠ Danger

Before refuelling, switch off ignition and any external heaters with combustion chambers.

Follow the operating and safety instructions of the filling station when refuelling.

⚠ Danger

Fuel is flammable and explosive. No smoking. No naked flames or sparks.

If you can smell fuel in your vehicle, have the cause of this remedied immediately by a workshop.

A label with symbols at the fuel filler flap is indicating the allowed fuel types. In Europe the pump nozzles of the filling stations are marked with these symbols. Refuel only the allowed fuel type.

Caution

In case of misfuelling, do not switch on ignition.

Fuel filler flap is located at left rear side of vehicle.



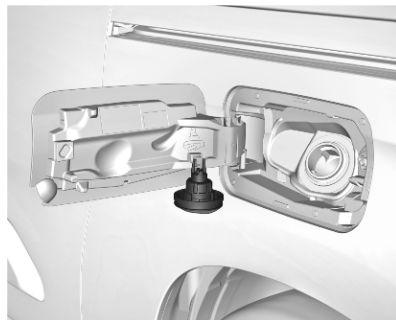
If the vehicle is equipped with an electronic key system, the fuel filler flap can only be opened if the vehicle

is unlocked. Depending on the version, release the fuel filler flap by pushing the flap or pulling at the right bottom corner.

Petrol and diesel refuelling

Depending on the version, place the key in the lock and unlock the cap.

To open, turn the cap slowly anticlockwise.



The fuel filler cap can be attached to the hook on the fuel filler flap.

Place the nozzle in straight position to the filler neck and press with slight force to insert.

To refuel, switch on pump nozzle.

After the automatic cut-off, the tank can be topped up by operating the pump nozzle a maximum of two more times.

Caution

Wipe off any overflowing fuel immediately.

To close, turn the fuel filler cap clockwise until it clicks.

Close the flap and allow it to engage.

Fuel filler cap

Only use genuine fuel filler caps.

Diesel-engined vehicles have special fuel filler caps.

Fuel consumption - CO₂-Emissions

The fuel consumption (combined) is within a range of 47 to 65 mpg.

The CO₂ emission is within a range of 137 to 106 g/km.

General information

For the values specific to your vehicle, refer to the EEC Certificate of Conformity provided with your vehicle or other national registration documents.

The determination of fuel consumption is regulated by directive R (EC) No. 715/2007 and No. 2017/1151 (in the latest applicable version).

The specification of CO₂ emission is also a constituent of the directive.

The figures given must not be taken as a guarantee for the actual fuel consumption of a particular vehicle. Furthermore, fuel consumption is dependent on personal driving style as well as road and traffic conditions.

All values are based on the EU base model with standard equipment.

The calculation of fuel consumption takes into account the vehicle's kerb weight, ascertained in accordance with the regulations. Optional equipment may result in slightly

higher fuel consumption and CO₂ emission levels and a lower maximum speed.

Trailer hitch

General information

Only use towing equipment that has been approved for your vehicle.

Entrust retrofitting of towing equipment to a workshop. It may be necessary to make changes that affect the cooling system, heat shields or other equipment.

The bulb outage detection function for trailer brake light cannot detect a partial bulb outage e.g. in case of four bulbs with a power of 5 W each, the function only detects lamp outage when only a single 5 W lamp remains or none remain.

Fitting of towing equipment could cover the opening of the towing eye. If this is the case use the coupling ball bar for towing. Always keep the coupling ball bar in the vehicle to have it on hand if needed.

Driving characteristics and towing tips

Before attaching a trailer, lubricate the coupling ball. However, do not do so if a stabiliser, which acts on the coupling ball, is being used to reduce snaking movements.

During trailer towing do not exceed a speed of 50 mph. A maximum speed of 60 mph is only appropriate if an oscillation damper is used and the permissible gross trailer weight does not exceed the vehicle's curb weight.

For trailers with low driving stability and caravan trailers, the use of an oscillation damper is strongly recommended.

If the trailer starts snaking, drive more slowly, do not attempt to correct the steering and brake sharply if necessary.

When driving downhill, drive in the same gear as if driving uphill and drive at a similar speed.

Adjust tyre pressure to the value specified for full load ↗ 354.

Trailer towing

Trailer loads

The permissible trailer loads are vehicle and engine-dependent maximum values which must not be exceeded. The actual trailer load is the difference between the actual gross weight of the trailer and the actual coupling socket load with the trailer coupled.

The permissible trailer loads are specified in the vehicle documents. In general, they are valid for inclines up to 12%.

The permissible trailer load applies up to the specified incline and at sea level. Since engine power decreases as altitude increases due to the air becoming thinner, therefore reducing climbing ability, the permissible gross train weight also decreases by 10% for every 1000 metres of altitude. The gross train weight does not have to be reduced when driving on roads with slight inclines (less than 8%, e.g. motorways).

The permissible gross train weight must not be exceeded. This weight is specified on the identification plate ↗ 347.

Vertical coupling load

The vertical coupling load is the load exerted by the trailer on the coupling ball. It can be varied by changing the weight distribution when loading the trailer.

The maximum permissible vertical coupling load is specified on the towing equipment identification plate and in the vehicle documents.

Always aim for the maximum vertical coupling load, especially in the case of heavy trailers. The vertical coupling load should never fall below 25 kg.

Rear axle load

When the trailer is coupled and the towing vehicle fully loaded, the permissible rear axle load (see identification plate or vehicle documents) may be exceeded by 60 kg, the gross vehicle weight rating must not be exceeded. If the permissible rear axle load is exceeded, a maximum speed of 60 mph applies.

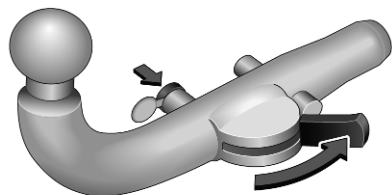
Towing equipment

Depending on version the vehicle can be fitted with a detachable or a fixed coupling ball bar.

Type A

Caution
When operating without a trailer, remove the coupling ball bar.

Fitting the coupling ball bar



1. Place the key in the lock and unlock the coupling ball bar. Move the lever to the rear position.



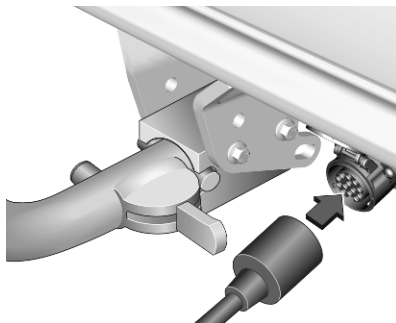
- Clean the contact points with a soft clean cloth.



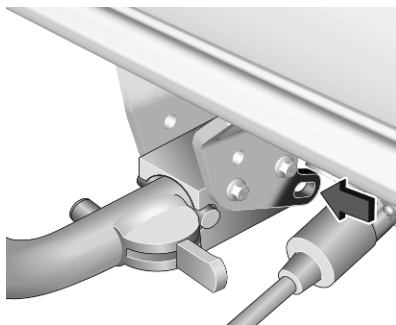
- Insert the coupling ball bar in the opening and push firmly up to the stop.

Secure the coupling ball bar correctly by moving the lever to the locked position, shown in the picture.

- Lock the coupling ball bar by turning the key. Remove the key and close the protective flap.
- Attach the trailer.
- Fold the socket forward.



- Connect the trailer plug to the socket.



- Attach the breakaway stopping cable to the eye on the carrier.

⚠ Warning

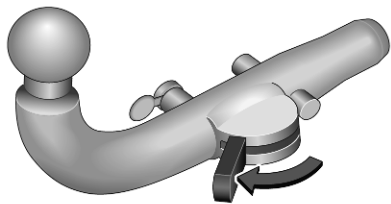
Towing a trailer is permitted only when a coupling ball bar is fitted correctly. If the coupling ball bar does not engage correctly, seek the assistance of a workshop.

Dismounting coupling ball bar

- Disconnect the trailer plug.
- Unfasten the breakaway stopping cable.
- Remove the trailer.
- Open the protective flap and unlock the coupling ball bar with the key.

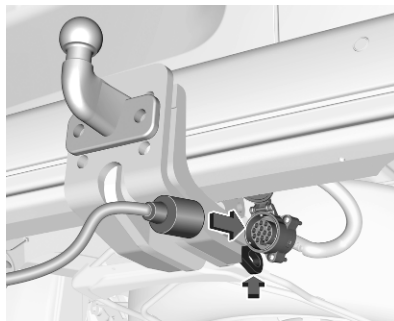


5. Move the lever of the coupling ball bar to the rear position. Remove the coupling ball bar by pulling it.



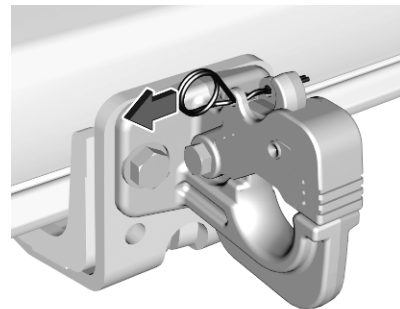
6. Move the lever of the coupling ball bar to the front position.

Type B

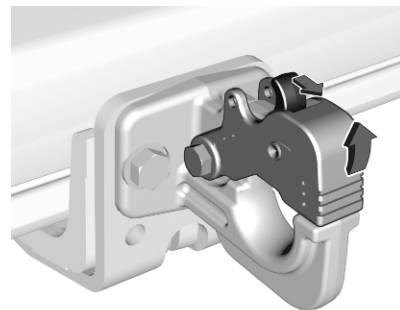


1. Connect the trailer plug to the socket and fasten the breakaway stopping cable to the eye on the carrier.
2. Attach the trailer.

Type C

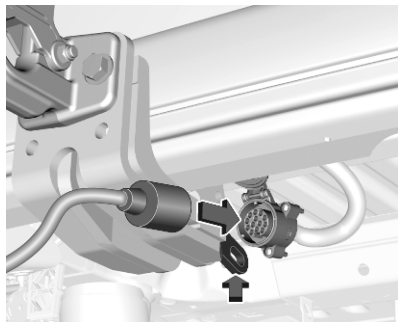


1. Remove the safety splint.



2. Pull the lever and open the towing ring.

3. Attach the trailer, close the towing ring and fix the splint.



4. Connect the trailer plug to the socket and attach the breakaway stopping cable to the eye on the carrier.

Trailer stability assist

If the system detects snaking movements, engine power is reduced and the vehicle / trailer combination is selectively braked until the snaking ceases. While system is working keep steering wheel as still as possible.

Trailer stability assist is a function of the Electronic Stability Control ↪ 242.

Vehicle care

General Information	301
Accessories and vehicle modifications	301
Vehicle storage	302
End-of-life vehicle recovery	304
Vehicle checks	304
Performing work	304
Bonnet	305
Engine oil	306
Engine coolant	307
Washer fluid	308
Brakes	308
Brake fluid	308
Vehicle battery	309
High voltage battery	311
Diesel fuel system bleeding	312
Wiper blade replacement	312
Bulb replacement	313
Halogen headlights	313
LED headlights	315
Front fog lights	315
Front turn lights	316
Tail lights	317
Side turn lights	319

Number plate light	320
Interior lights	320
Electrical system	320
Fuses	320
Vehicle tools	321
Tools	321
Wheels and tyres	321
Winter tyres	321
Tyre designations	322
Tyre pressure	322
Tyre deflation detection system	323
Tread depth	324
Changing tyre and wheel size	325
Wheel covers	325
Tyre chains	325
Tyre repair kit	326
Wheel changing	329
Spare wheel	330
Jump starting	334
Towing	336
Towing the vehicle	336
Towing another vehicle	337
Appearance care	338
Exterior care	338
Interior care	340
Floor mats	340

General Information

Accessories and vehicle modifications

We recommend the use of genuine parts and accessories and factory approved parts specific for your vehicle type. We cannot assess or guarantee reliability of other products - even if they have a regulatory or otherwise granted approval.

Any modification, conversion or other changes made to standard vehicle specifications (including, without limitation, software modifications, modifications of the electronic control units) may invalidate the warranty offered by Vauxhall. Furthermore, such changes may affect driver assistance systems, may impact fuel consumption, CO₂ emissions and other emissions of the vehicle and cause the vehicle to no longer conform to the operating permit, impacting the validity of your vehicle registration.

Caution

Access to the diagnostic socket associated with the on-board electronics is reserved for qualified technicians and approved tools.

Caution

When transporting the vehicle on a train or on a recovery vehicle, the mud flaps might be damaged.

Cold protection covers

In order to prevent the accumulation of snow at the radiator cooling fan, it is recommended to install removable protection covers.

The protection covers must be professionally installed, consult a workshop.

Caution

The cold protection covers must be removed when one of the following conditions occurs:

- The ambient temperature is above 10 °C.
- The vehicle is towing a trailer.
- The vehicle is driven at speeds above 75 mph.

Vehicle storage**Storage for a long period of time**

If the vehicle is to be stored for several months:

- Wash the vehicle.
- Have the wax in the engine compartment and underbody checked.
- Clean and preserve the rubber seals.
- Fill up fuel tank completely.
- Change the engine oil.
- Drain the washer fluid reservoir.

- Check the coolant antifreeze and corrosion protection.
 - Adjust tyre pressure to the value specified for full load.
1. Park the vehicle in a dry, well ventilated place. Engage first or reverse gear or set selector lever to **P**. Prevent the vehicle from rolling.
 2. Do not apply the parking brake.
 3. Switch off ignition and all electrical consumers.
 4. Wait four minutes.
 5. Open the bonnet, close all doors and lock the vehicle.
 6. Lift the plastic cover of the vehicle battery's positive terminal in the engine compartment.
 7. Raise the lever fully and remove clamp from the terminal.

Storage for a long period of time (electric vehicle)

If the vehicle is to be stored for several months:

- Wash and wax the vehicle.
- Have the wax in the engine compartment and underbody checked.
- Clean and preserve the rubber seals.
- Drain the washer fluid reservoir.
- Check the coolant antifreeze and corrosion protection.
- Adjust tyre pressure to the value specified for full load.
- Park the vehicle in a dry, well ventilated place. Engage first or reverse gear or set selector lever to **P**. Prevent the vehicle from rolling.
- Do not apply the parking brake.
- Open the bonnet, close all doors and lock the vehicle.

Up to four weeks

Plug in the charging cable.

Four weeks to twelve months

- Discharge the high voltage battery until 30 percent remain on the battery range indicator (battery symbol) on the instrument cluster.
- Do not plug in the charging cable.
- Always store the vehicle in a place with temperatures between -10°C and 30°C .
- Vehicle storage at extreme temperatures may cause damage to the high voltage battery.
- Remove the black negative (-) cable from the 12 V vehicle battery and attach a trickle charger to the vehicle battery terminals or keep the 12 V vehicle battery cables connected and trickle charge from the positive (+) and negative (-) terminals in the engine compartment.
- Every three months, check the battery's state of charge. If the state of charge is below 30 percent, recharge the battery to 30 percent.

Putting back into operation

When the vehicle is to be put back into operation:

1. Connect the clamp to the positive terminal of the vehicle battery in the engine compartment.
2. Initialise the power windows ⇨ 27.
 - Check tyre pressure.
 - Fill up the washer fluid reservoir.
 - Check the engine oil level.
 - Check the coolant level.
 - Fit the number plate if necessary.

Putting back into operation (electric vehicle)

When the vehicle is to be put back into operation:

- Connect the clamp to the negative terminal of the vehicle battery. Initialise the power windows ⇨ 27.
- Check tyre pressure.
- Fill up the washer fluid reservoir.
- Check the coolant level.
- Fit the number plate if necessary.

End-of-life vehicle recovery

Information on end-of-life vehicle recovery centres and the recycling of end-of-life vehicles is available on our website, where legally required. Only entrust this work to an authorised recycling centre.



High voltage battery

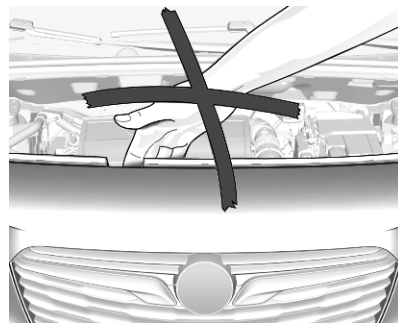
The high voltage battery is designed for the life of the vehicle if the recommendations are followed. If it becomes necessary to replace the high voltage battery, contact a workshop for instructions on its disposal. Improper disposal carries

the risk of severe burns, electric shock, and damage to the environment.

Recommendations ⇨ 311.

Vehicle checks

Performing work



Warning

Only perform engine compartment checks when the ignition is off.

The cooling fan may start operating even if the ignition is off.

⚠ Danger

The ignition system uses extremely high voltage. Do not touch.

Electric vehicle**⚠ Danger**

Never try to perform maintenance work on high voltage components yourself. You may be injured and the vehicle may be damaged. Service and repair of these high voltage components should only be performed by a trained service technician with proper knowledge and tools. Exposure to high voltage may cause shock, burns, and even death. The high voltage

components in the vehicle can only be serviced by technicians with special training.

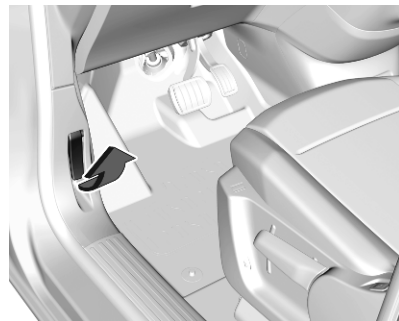
High voltage components are identified by labels. Do not remove, open, take apart, or modify these components. High voltage cable or wiring has orange covering. Do not probe, tamper with, cut, or modify high voltage cable or wiring.

Caution

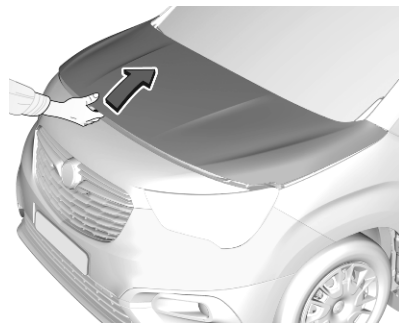
Even small amounts of contamination to the liquids can cause damage to vehicle systems. Do not allow contaminants to contact the fluids, reservoir caps, or dipsticks.

Bonnet**Opening**

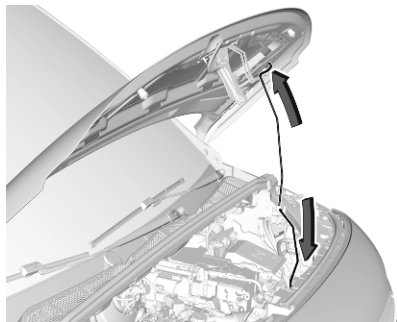
Open the left front door.



Pull the release lever and return it to its original position.



Push the safety catch upwards and open the bonnet.



Secure the bonnet support.

Closing

Before closing the bonnet, press the support into the holder.

Lower the bonnet and let it fall into the latch from a low height (20-25 cm). Check that the bonnet is engaged.

Caution

Do not press the bonnet into the latch to avoid dents.

Engine oil

Check the engine oil level manually on a regular basis to prevent damage to the engine. Ensure that the correct specification of engine oil is used.

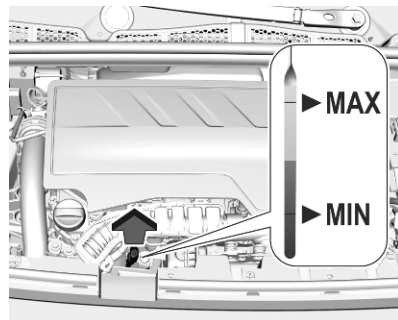
Recommended fluids and lubricants ⇨ 345.

The maximum engine oil consumption is 0.6 l per 600 miles.

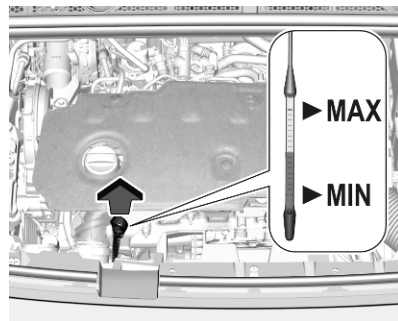
Check with the vehicle on a level surface. The engine must be at operating temperature and switched off for at least five minutes.

Caution

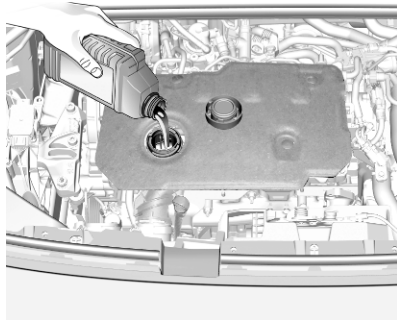
It is the owner's responsibility to maintain the proper level of an appropriate quality engine oil in the engine.



Pull out the dipstick, wipe it clean, reinsert it fully, pull out and read the engine oil level.



Different dipsticks are used depending on engine variant.



When the engine oil level has dropped to the **MIN** mark, top up the engine oil.

We recommend the use of the same grade of engine oil that was used at last change.

The engine oil level must not exceed the **MAX** mark on the dipstick.

Caution

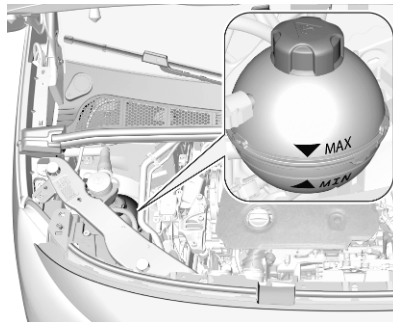
Overfilled engine oil must be drained or suctioned out. If the engine oil exceeds the maximum level, do not start the vehicle and contact a workshop.

Capacities ⇨ 353.

Fit the cap on straight and tighten it.

Engine coolant

Coolant level BEV



If the coolant level is at the **MIN** mark or below, seek the assistance of a workshop to have the engine coolant topped up.

Caution

Using the wrong engine coolant can cause severe damages to the high voltage battery. Only experienced mechanics are allowed to open the coolant reservoir and to top up coolant.

Propulsion types ⇨ 4.

Coolant level ICE

The factory filled coolant provides freeze protection down to approx. -37 °C.

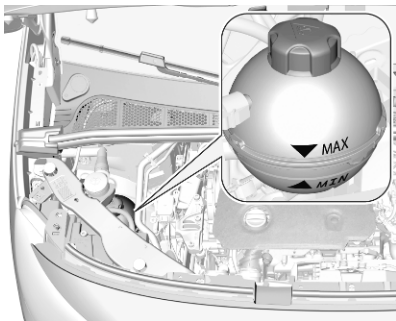
Caution

Only use approved antifreeze.

Coolant and antifreeze ⇨ 345.

Caution

Too low a coolant level can cause engine damage.

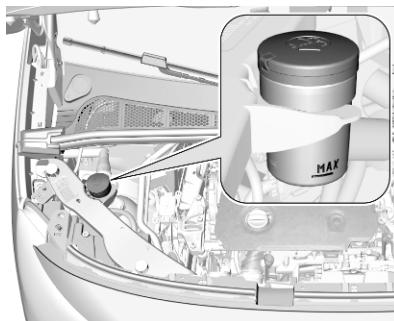


If the cooling system is cold, the coolant level should be above the **MIN** mark. Top up if the level is low.

⚠ Warning

Allow the engine to cool before opening the cap. Carefully open the cap, relieving the pressure slowly.

To top up, use a 1:1 mixture of released coolant concentrate mixed with clean tap water. If no coolant concentrate is available, use clean tap water. Install the cap tightly. Have the coolant concentration checked and have the cause of the coolant loss remedied by a workshop.

Washer fluid

Fill with clean water mixed with a suitable quantity of approved windscreen washer fluid which contains antifreeze.

The washer fluid level has to be underneath the **MAX** mark.

Caution

Only washer fluid with a sufficient antifreeze concentration provides protection at low temperatures or a sudden drop in temperature.

Washer fluid ⇨ 345.

Brakes

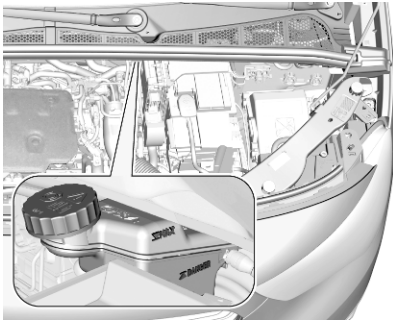
In the event of minimum thickness of the brake lining, a squealing noise sounds during braking.

Continued driving is possible but have the brake lining replaced as soon as possible.

Once new brake linings are installed, do not brake unnecessarily hard for the first few journeys.

Brake fluid**⚠ Warning**

Brake fluid is poisonous and corrosive. Avoid contact with eyes, skin, fabrics and painted surfaces.



The brake fluid level must be between the **DANGER** and **MAX** marks.

If fluid level is below **DANGER**, seek the assistance of a workshop.

Brake and clutch fluid ↻ 345.

Vehicle battery

The vehicle battery is maintenance-free provided that the driving profile allows sufficient charging of the battery. Short-distance-driving and frequent engine starts can discharge the battery. Avoid the use of unnecessary electrical consumers.



Batteries do not belong in household waste. They must be disposed of at an appropriate recycling collection point.

Laying up the vehicle for more than four weeks can lead to battery discharge. Disconnect the clamp from the negative terminal of the vehicle battery.

Ensure the ignition is switched off before connecting or disconnecting the vehicle battery.

Battery discharge protection ↻ 118.

Replacing the vehicle battery

Notice

Any deviation from the instructions given in this section may lead to temporary deactivation or disturbance of the stop-start system.

When the vehicle battery is being replaced, please ensure that there are no open ventilation holes in the vicinity of the positive terminal. If a ventilation hole is open in this area, it must be closed off with a dummy cap, and the ventilation in the vicinity of the negative terminal must be opened.

Ensure that the battery is always replaced by the same type of battery.

The vehicle battery has to be replaced by a workshop.

Stop-start system ↻ 222.

Charging the vehicle battery

⚠ Warning

On vehicles with stop-start system, ensure that the charging potential does not exceed 14.6 V when using a battery charger. Otherwise the vehicle battery may be damaged.

Jump starting ↻ 334.

Discharge protection

Battery voltage

When the vehicle battery voltage is running low, a warning message will appear in the Driver Information Centre.

When the vehicle is being driven, the load reduction function temporarily deactivates certain functions, e.g. the heated rear window.

The deactivated functions are reactivated automatically as soon as conditions permit.

Idle boost

If charging of the vehicle battery is required due to battery condition, the power output of the generator must be increased. This will be achieved by an idle boost which may be audible.

A message appears in the Driver Information Centre.

Power outlet

The power outlets are deactivated in the event of low vehicle battery voltage.

Warning label



Meaning of symbols:

- No sparks, naked flames or smoking.
- Always shield eyes. Explosive gases can cause blindness or injury.
- Keep the vehicle battery out of reach of children.
- The vehicle battery contains sulphuric acid which could cause blindness or serious burn injuries.

- See the Owner's Manual for further information.
- Explosive gas may be present in the vicinity of the vehicle battery.

Power saving mode

This mode deactivates electrical consumers to avoid excessive discharging of the vehicle battery. These consumers, such as the infotainment system, windscreen wipers, low beam headlights, courtesy light, etc. can be used for a total maximum time of about 40 minutes after ignition is switched off.

Changing into power saving mode

When power saving mode is activated, a message appears in the Driver Information Centre indicating **Power saving mode**.

An active telephone call using the hands-free option will be maintained for around 10 minutes longer.

Deactivating power saving mode

Power saving mode is deactivated automatically when the engine is restarted. Run the engine for a sufficient charge:

- for less than 10 minutes to use the consumers for approx. 5 minutes
- for more than 10 minutes to use the consumers for up to approx. 30 minutes

Heating functionalities**Notice**

Individual heating functionalities, such as heated seats or heated steering wheel, may be temporarily unavailable in the event of electrical loading constraints. Functions will be resumed after some minutes.

High voltage battery

To preserve the range and the durability of the high voltage battery, the following is recommended:

- Whenever possible do not charge the high voltage battery more than 80%.
- Do not completely discharge the high voltage battery.
- Do not store the vehicle for a long period of non-use (more than twelve hours) when the high voltage battery has a low or high charge level. Prefer a charge level between 20 and 40%.
- Limit the use of fast charging.
- Do not expose the vehicle to temperatures below -30 °C and above 60 °C for more than 24 hours.
- Avoid charging the vehicle at low temperatures (except if the vehicle ran more than 20 minutes) or above 30 °C.

- Do not use the high voltage battery as a generator of energy.
- Do not use a generator to recharge the high voltage battery.

Vehicle storage ⇨ 302.

Leakage

Damage to the high voltage battery could result in the leakage of toxic gases or fluids either immediately or later. The following is recommended:

- Always inform the fire and emergency services in the event of an incident, that the vehicle is equipped with a high voltage battery.
- Never touch the liquids leaking from the high voltage battery.
- Do not inhale the gases emitted by the high voltage battery which are toxic.

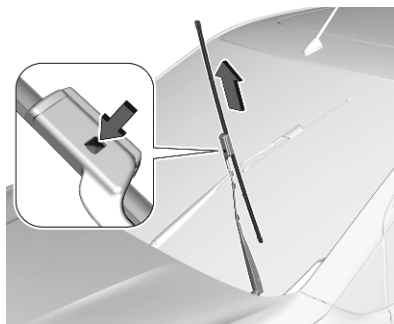
- Move away from the vehicle in the event of incident or accident, the gases emitted being flammable and could cause a fire.
- Too low a coolant level must be topped up and the cause of the coolant loss remedied by a workshop.

Diesel fuel system bleeding

If the tank has been run dry, the diesel fuel system must be bled. Switch on the ignition three times for 15 seconds at a time. Then crank the engine for a maximum of 40 seconds. Repeat this process after no less than five seconds. If the engine fails to start, seek the assistance of a workshop.

Wiper blade replacement

Windscreen



Switch off the ignition.

Within one minute after switching off the ignition, operate the wiper lever to position the wiper blades vertically on the windscreen.

Lift the wiper arm until it stays in the raised position, press button to disengage the wiper blade and remove.

Attach the wiper blade to the wiper arm and push until it engages.

Lower the wiper arm carefully.

Rear window



Lift the wiper arm. Disengage the wiper blade as shown in the illustration and remove.

Attach the wiper blade slightly angled to the wiper arm and push until it engages.

Lower the wiper arm carefully.

Bulb replacement

Before replacing a bulb, ensure that all exterior and interior lights and the ignition are switched off. All doors have to be closed.

Only hold a new bulb at the base. Do not touch the bulb glass with bare hands.

Use only the same bulb type for replacement.

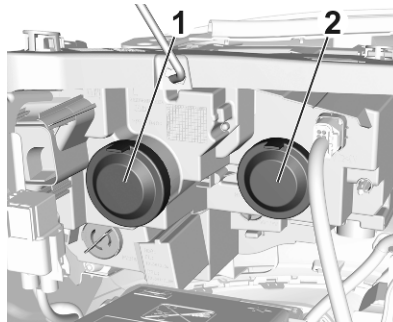
Replace headlight bulbs from within the engine compartment.

Bulb check

After a bulb replacement switch on the ignition, operate and check the lights.

Halogen headlights

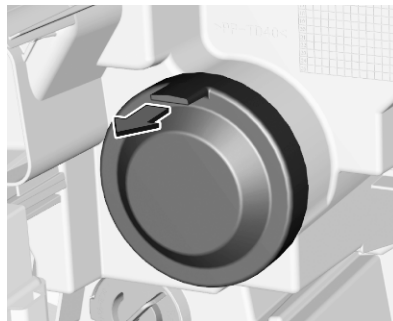
Halogen headlights with separate bulbs for low beam and high beam.



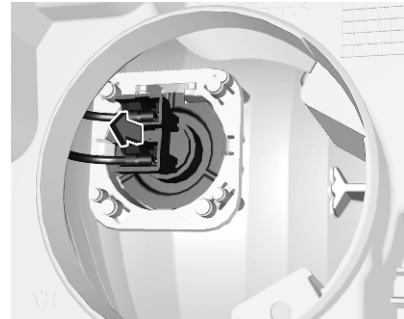
Low beam (1) outer bulb

High beam (2) inner bulb

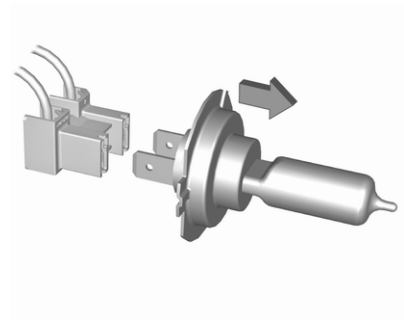
Low beam (1)



1. Remove the protective cover by pulling.

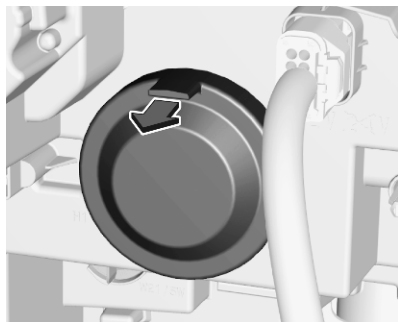


2. Withdraw the bulb socket from the reflector housing.



3. Detach the bulb from the bulb socket and replace the bulb.
4. Insert the bulb socket into the reflector housing.
5. Fit the protective cover on.

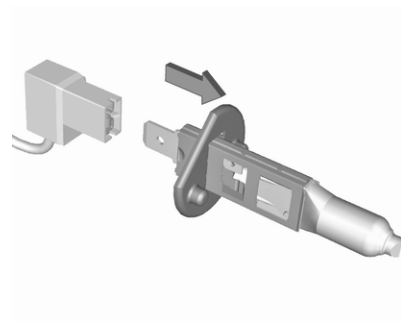
High beam (2)



1. Remove the protective cover by pulling.

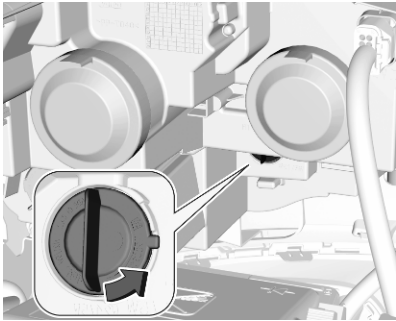


2. Disengage the spring clip from the retainer by moving it to the righthand side. Swivel the spring clip downwards.
Withdraw the bulb socket from the reflector housing.

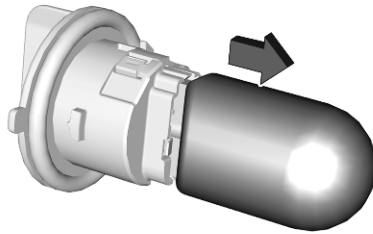


3. Detach the bulb from the bulb socket and replace the bulb.
4. Insert the bulb socket into the reflector housing.
5. Fit the protective cover on.

Sidelight / daytime running light with bulbs



1. Rotate the bulb socket anticlockwise to disengage and withdraw from the reflector.



2. Remove the bulb from the bulb socket by pulling.
3. Replace and insert the new bulb into the bulb socket.
4. Insert the bulb socket into the light assembly and turn clockwise.

Sidelight / daytime running light with LEDs

In case of defective LEDs, have them replaced by a workshop.

LED headlights

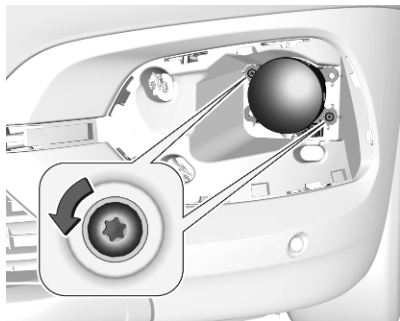
Daytime running lights are designed as LEDs and can not be changed.

Have lights repaired by a workshop in case of failure.

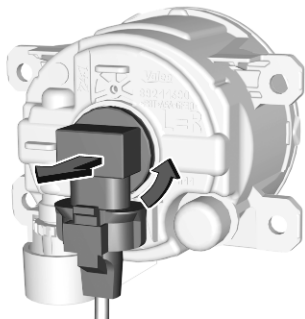
Front fog lights



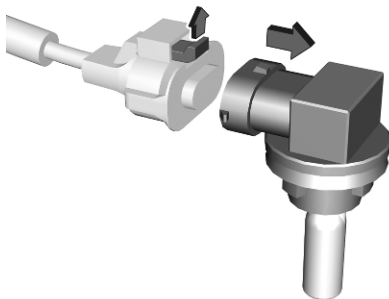
1. Wrap a cloth around the tip of a flat screwdriver to prevent paint damage. Insert the screwdriver in the recess at the edge of the cover. Release the cover by levering it out carefully.



2. Unscrew and remove the two screws and remove the light assembly to the front.

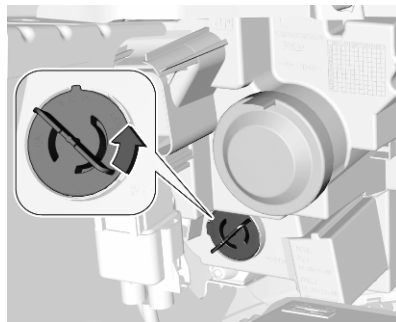


3. Turn the bulb socket anticlockwise and remove it from the light assembly.

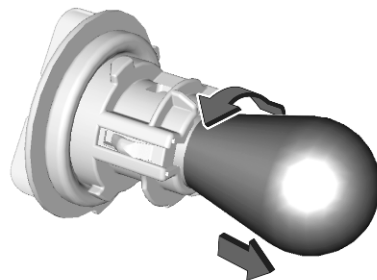


4. Disengage the plug connector by pulling the retaining lug.
5. Remove and replace the bulb unit and attach the plug connector. Note that the bulb and the socket are one unit and have to be changed together.
6. Insert the bulb socket into the light assembly by turning clockwise and engage.
7. Mount the light assembly by tightening the two screws.
8. Attach and engage the cover.

Front turn lights



1. Rotate the bulb socket anticlockwise to disengage and withdraw from the reflector.



2. Slightly press down the bulb, turn it anticlockwise and remove it from the socket.
3. Replace and insert the new bulb into socket by turning clockwise.
4. Insert the bulb socket into the reflector and turn clockwise.

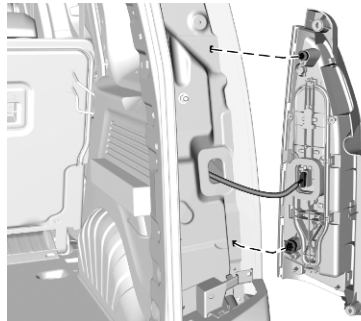
Tail lights

Light assembly in the body

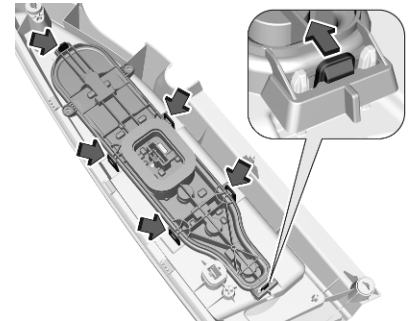
Vehicle with tailgate



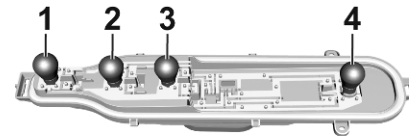
1. Unscrew and remove the two screws.



2. Carefully withdraw the tail light assembly from recess and remove. Take care that the cable duct remains in position.
3. Detach the cable from the retainer.

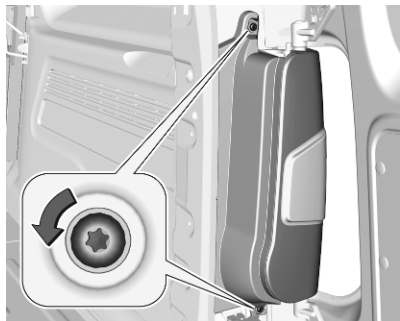


4. Press the retaining lug backwards, pull the bulb carrier and disengage the remaining retaining lugs.

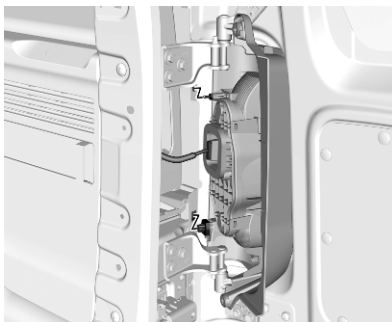


5. Push the bulb slightly down, turn it and remove it from the bulb carrier. Replace the bulb:
Rear fog light (1)
Reversing light (2)
Turn light / hazard warning flasher (3)
Tail light / brake light (4)
6. Attach the bulb carrier to the light assembly.
7. Attach the cable to the retainer.
8. Attach the light assembly to the vehicle body and tighten both screws.

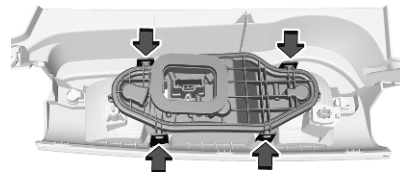
Vehicle with rear doors



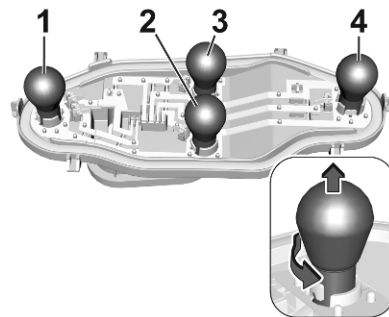
1. Unscrew and remove the two screws.



2. Carefully withdraw the tail light assembly from recess and remove. Take care that the cable duct remains in position.
3. Detach the cable from the retainer.



4. Disengage the retaining lugs to remove the bulb carrier.



5. Push the bulb slightly down, turn it and remove it from the bulb carrier. Replace the bulb:

Tail light / brake light (1)

Turn light / hazard warning flasher
(2) outer bulb

Reversing light (3) inner bulb

Rear fog light (4)

6. Attach the bulb carrier to the light assembly.
7. Attach the cable to the retainer.
8. Attach the light assembly to the vehicle body and tighten both screws.

3rd-brake light

The 3rd-brake light is designed as LED and can not be changed.

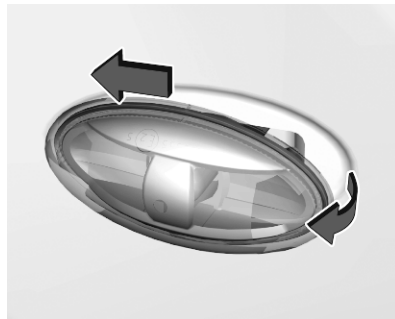
Have lights repaired by a workshop in case of failure.

Bulb check

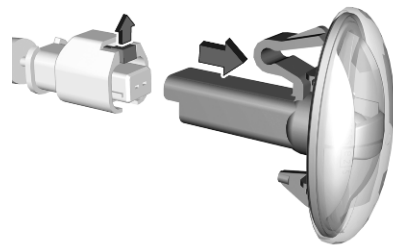
Switch on the ignition, operate and check all lights.

Side turn lights

To replace the bulb, remove the lamp housing:



1. Slide the lamp housing forward and remove it at the back.



2. Press the retaining lug upwards and remove the bulb socket from the plug connector.
3. Replace the complete unit.
4. Insert left end of the lamp, slide to the left and insert right end.

Number plate light



1. Insert a screwdriver in the recess of the cover and remove it.



2. Pull the bulb from the bulb holder and replace it.
3. Attach the cover.

Interior lights

Have the following bulbs replaced by a workshop:

- courtesy light, reading lights
- load compartment light
- instrument panel illumination

Electrical system

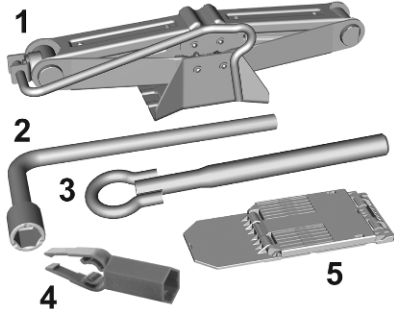
Fuses

A defective fuse must be replaced by a workshop.

Vehicle tools

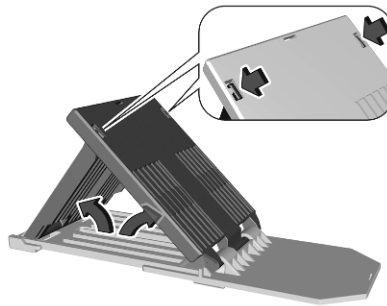
Tools

The tool box is located either underneath the driver seat or the passenger seat. The jack is located underneath the passenger seat.



The tool box consists:

- Jack
- Towing eye
- Tool to access the headlights
- Wrench
- Wheel bolt cover remover
- Choke



To use the chock, fold apart and stick together.

Wheels and tyres

Tyre condition, wheel condition

Drive over edges slowly and at right angles if possible. Driving over sharp edges can cause tyre and wheel damage. Do not trap tyres on the kerb when parking.

Regularly check the wheels for damage. Seek the assistance of a workshop in the event of damage or unusual wear.

Winter tyres

Winter tyres improve driving safety at temperatures below 7 °C and should therefore be fitted on all wheels.

In accordance with country-specific regulations, affix the speed sticker in the driver's field of view, if the tyre speed code is below the maximum speed of the vehicle.

All tyre sizes are permitted as winter tyres ⇨ 354.

Tyre designations

E.g. **225/55 R 18 98 V**

225 : tyre width, mm

55 : cross-section ratio (tyre height to tyre width), %

R : belt type: Radial

RF : type: RunFlat

18 : wheel diameter, inches

98 : load index e.g. 98 is equivalent to 750 kg

V : speed code letter

Speed code letter:

Q : up to 100 mph

S : up to 112 mph

T : up to 118 mph

H : up to 130 mph

V : up to 150 mph

W : up to 168 mph

Choose a tyre appropriate for the maximum speed of your vehicle.

Refer to the EEC Certificate of Conformity provided with your vehicle or other national registration documents. Optional equipment could reduce the maximum speed of the vehicle.

Directional tyres

Directional tyres should be mounted so that they rotate in the correct direction. The proper rotation direction is indicated by a symbol (e.g. an arrow) on the sidewall.

Tyre pressure

Check the pressure of cold tyres at least every 14 days and before any long journey. Do not forget the spare wheel. This also applies to vehicles with tyre pressure monitoring system.



Tyre pressure ⇨ 354.

The tyre pressure information label on the left door frame indicates the original equipment tyres and the correspondent tyre pressures.

The tyre pressure data refers to cold tyres. It applies to summer and winter tyres.

Always inflate the spare tyre to the pressure specified for full load.

Incorrect tyre pressures will impair safety, vehicle handling, comfort and fuel economy and will increase tyre wear.

Tyre pressures differ depending on various options. For the correct tyre pressure value, follow the procedure below:

1. Depending on the vehicle variant, i.e. Combo CARGO or Combo LIFE, identify the payload ⇨ 354.
2. Identify the respective tyre.

The tyre pressure tables show all possible tyre combinations ⇨ 354.

For the tyres approved for your vehicle, refer to the EEC Certificate of Conformity provided with your vehicle or other national registration documents.

The driver is responsible for correct adjustment of tyre pressure.

⚠ Warning

If the pressure is too low, this can result in considerable tyre warm-up and internal damage, leading to tread separation and even to tyre blow-out at high speeds.

⚠ Warning

For specific tyres the recommended tyre pressure as shown in the tyre pressure table may exceed the maximum tyre pressure as indicated on the tyre. Never exceed the maximum tyre pressure as indicated on the tyre.

Temperature dependency

The tyre pressure depends on the temperature of the tyre. During driving, tyre temperature and pressure increase. Tyre pressure values provided on the tyre information label and tyre pressure chart are valid for cold tyres, which means at 20 °C.

The pressure increases by nearly 1.5 psi for a 10 °C temperature increase. This must be considered when warm tyres are checked.

Tyre deflation detection system

The tyre deflation detection system continually checks the rotation speed of all four wheels and warns on low tyre pressure condition once vehicle is driving. This is achieved by comparing tyre rolling circumference with reference values and further signals.

If a tyre loses pressure the control indicator (⚠) illuminates, a warning chime is given and a warning message is displayed in the Driver Information Centre.

In this case reduce speed, avoid sharp cornering and strong braking. Stop at next safe opportunity and check tyre pressure.

Control indicator (⚠) ⇨ 96.

After adjusting tyre pressure initialise system to extinguish the control indicator and restart system.

Caution

Deflation detection system warns just about low tyre pressure condition and does not replace regular tyre maintenance by the driver.

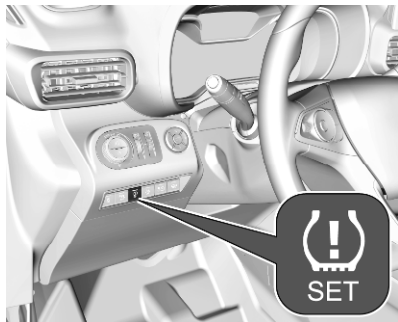
In case of a system malfunction a message is displayed in the Driver Information Centre. Set correct tyre pressure and reinitialise system. If the failure continues to be displayed, contact a workshop. The system is inoperable when ABS or ESC has a

malfunction or a temporary spare wheel is used. Once the road tyre has been refitted, check the tyre pressure with cold tyres and initialise the system.

System initialisation

After tyre pressure correction or wheel change, the system must be initialised to learn new circumference reference values:

1. Always ensure that all four tyres have correct tyre pressure ↪ 354.
2. Apply parking brake.



3. Initialise the deflation detection system: If the vehicle has a graphic info display, press C_{SET} for three seconds. If the vehicle has a colour info display, the initialisation is done in the vehicle personalisation ↪ 107.
4. Reset is confirmed by pop-up indication.

After initialisation system automatically calibrates to new tyre pressures during driving. After longer drive the system will adopt and monitor new pressures.

Always check tyre pressure with cold tyres.

System has to be reinitialised when:

- Tyre pressure has been changed
- Load condition has been changed
- Wheels have been swapped or exchanged

The system will not warn instantaneously on a tyre blow out or a rapid deflation. This is due to required calculation time.

Tread depth

Check tread depth at regular intervals.

For safety reasons, it is recommended that the tread depth of the tyres on one axle should not vary by more than 2 mm.



The legally permissible minimum tread depth (1.6 mm) has been reached when the tread has worn down as far as one of the tread wear indicators (TWI). Their position is indicated by markings on the sidewall.

If there is more wear at the front than the rear, swap round front wheels and rear wheels periodically. Ensure that the direction of rotation of the wheels remains the same.

Tyres age, even if they are not used. We recommend tyre replacement every six years.

Changing tyre and wheel size

If tyres of a different size than those fitted at the factory are used, it may be necessary to reprogramme systems and make other vehicle modifications.

Have the label with tyre pressures replaced.

⚠ Warning

The use of unsuitable tyres or wheels may lead to accidents and will invalidate the vehicle operating permit.

Wheel covers

Wheel covers and tyres that are factory approved for the respective vehicle and comply with all of the relevant wheel and tyre combination requirements must be used.

If the wheel covers and tyres used are not factory approved, the tyres must not have a rim protection ridge.

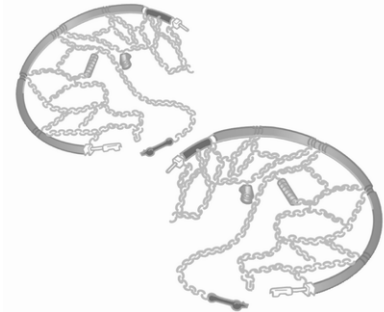
Wheel covers must not impair brake cooling.

⚠ Warning

Use of unsuitable tyres or wheel covers could lead to sudden pressure loss and thereby accidents.

Vehicles with steel wheels: When using locking wheel nuts, do not attach wheel covers.

Tyre chains



Tyre chains are only permitted on the front wheels.

Always use fine mesh chains that add no more than 9 mm to the tyre tread and the inboard sides (including chain lock).

⚠ Warning

Damage may lead to tyre blowout.

Tyre chains are permitted on all tyre sizes allowed for the vehicle.

Temporary spare wheel

The use of tyre chains is not permitted on the temporary spare wheel.

Tyre repair kit

Minor damage to the tyre tread can be repaired with the tyre repair kit.

Do not remove foreign bodies from the tyres.

Tyre damage exceeding 4 mm or that is at tyre's sidewall cannot be repaired with the tyre repair kit.

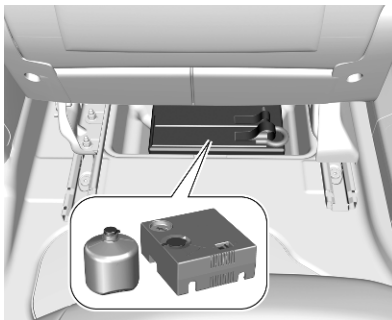
Depending on version, there are two different tyre repair kits (Type A and Type B).

⚠ Warning

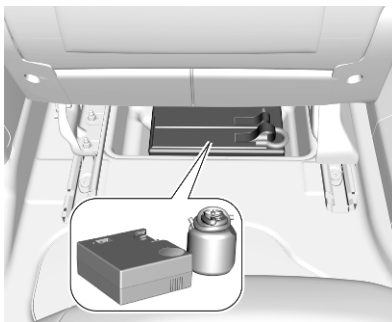
Do not drive faster than 50 mph.
Do not use for a lengthy period.
Steering and handling may be affected.

In the case of a flat tyre:

Apply the parking brake and engage first gear, reverse gear or **P**.



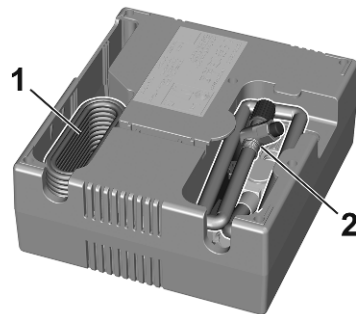
Type A



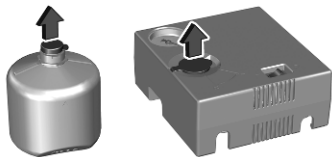
Type B

The tyre repair kit is located in the storage compartment underneath the passenger front seat.

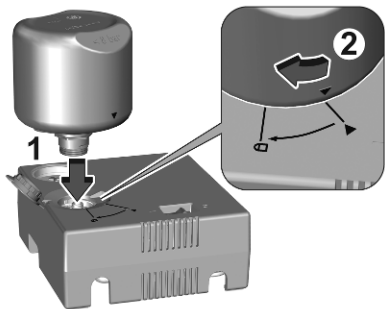
1. Remove the sealant bottle and the compressor.
2. Pull speed limit label from sealant bottle and place it in driver's visible area.



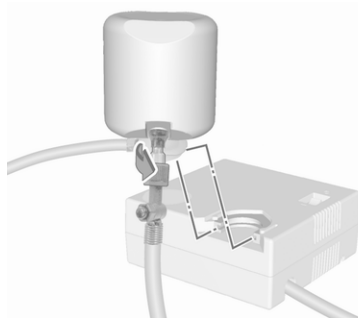
3. Remove the electrical connection cable (1) and air hose (2) from the storage compartments on the underside of the compressor.



4. Type A: Open sealant bottle and lift the lid.

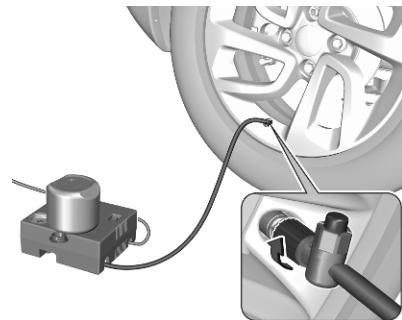


5. Type A: First, insert sealant bottle into the compressor and align the triangle symbols. Then, push down sealant bottle and turn it to the lock position.

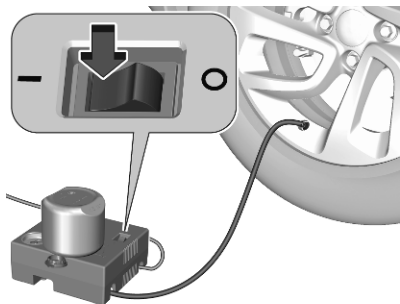


Type B: Screw the compressor air hose to the connection on the sealant bottle.

6. Type B: Fit the sealant bottle into the bracket on the compressor.
 7. Set the compressor near the tyre in such a way that the sealant bottle is upright.
 8. Unscrew valve cap from defective tyre.



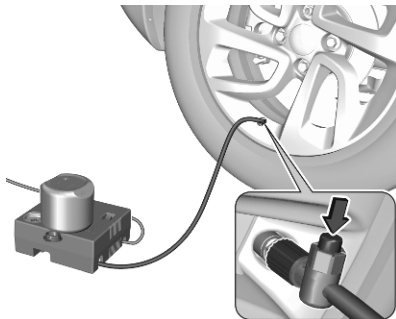
9. Screw the filler hose to the tyre valve.
 10. The switch on the compressor must be set to O.
 11. Connect the compressor plug to the 12 V power outlet or cigarette lighter socket ⇨ 83.
 To avoid discharging the vehicle battery, we recommend to use the tyre repair kit only when the combustion engine is running or when the electric engine is ready.



12. Set the rocker switch on the compressor to I. The tyre is filled with sealant.
13. The compressor pressure gauge briefly indicates up to 600 kPa (6 bar) whilst the sealant bottle is emptying (approx. 30 seconds). Then the pressure starts to drop.
14. All of the sealant is pumped into the tyre. Then the tyre is being inflated.
15. The prescribed tyre pressure should be obtained within ten minutes.
Tyre pressure ⇨ 354.

When the correct pressure is obtained, switch off the compressor.

If the prescribed tyre pressure is not obtained within ten minutes, remove the tyre repair kit. Move the vehicle one tyre rotation. Reattach the tyre repair kit and continue the filling procedure for ten minutes. If the prescribed tyre pressure is still not obtained, the tyre is too badly damaged. Seek the assistance of a workshop.



Drain excess tyre pressure with the button on the air hose.

Do not run the compressor longer than ten minutes.

16. Detach the tyre repair kit. Remove sealant bottle from compressor. Screw the filler hose to the free connection of the sealant bottle. This prevents sealant from escaping. Stow tyre repair kit in load compartment.
17. Remove any excess sealant using a cloth.
18. Continue driving immediately so that sealant is evenly distributed in the tyre. Drive between 13 mph and 37 mph. After driving approx. 3 miles but no more than ten minutes, stop and check tyre pressure. Screw compressor air hose directly onto tyre valve when doing this. Fill tyre as described before. Drain excess tyre pressure with the button on the air hose.
If tyre pressure hasn't decreased under 200 kPa (2 bar), set it to the correct value. Otherwise the vehicle must not be used. Seek assistance of a workshop.
Repeat the checking procedure once more after driving further 6 miles but no more than ten

minutes to check that there is no more loss of pressure.

If the tyre pressure has fallen below 200 kPa (2 bar), the vehicle must not be used. Seek the assistance of a workshop.

19. Stow away tyre repair kit in load compartment.

Notice

The driving characteristics of the repaired tyre are severely affected, therefore have this tyre replaced.

If unusual noise is heard or the compressor becomes hot, turn compressor off for at least 30 min.

The built-in safety valve opens at a pressure of seven bar (102 psi).

Note the expiry date of the kit. After this date its sealing capability is no longer guaranteed. Pay attention to storage information on sealant bottle.

Replace the used sealant bottle. Dispose of the bottle as prescribed by applicable laws.

The compressor and sealant can be used from approx. -30 °C.

Wheel changing

Make the following preparations and observe the following information:

- Park the vehicle on a level, firm and non-skid surface. The front wheels must be in the straight-ahead position.
- Apply the parking brake and engage first gear, reverse gear or **P**.
- Place a chock under the wheel diagonally opposite the wheel to be changed.
- If the ground on which the vehicle is standing is soft, a solid board (approx. 1 cm thick) should be placed under the jack.
- Take heavy objects out of the vehicle before jacking up.
- No people or animals may be in the vehicle when it is jacked-up.
- Never crawl under a jacked-up vehicle.
- Do not start the vehicle when it is raised on the jack.
- Before screwing in the wheel bolts, clean them.

⚠ Warning

Do not grease wheel bolts.

Tightening torques

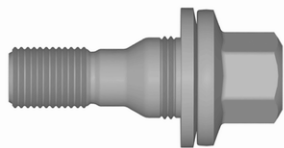
⚠ Warning

Ensure to use always the correct wheel bolts if changing the wheels. When installing the spare wheel for temporary usage, the bolts for alloy wheel rims can also be used.

Caution

If the vehicle is equipped with alloy wheel rims, tighten the wheel bolts manually at least for the first five turns.

Depending on the wheel rim material, two different bolts are available.



Tightening torque for alloy wheel rims is 115 Nm.

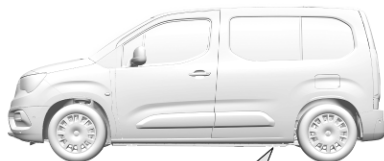


Tightening torque for steel wheel rims is 115 Nm.

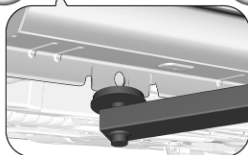
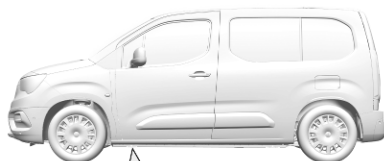
Use the correct wheel bolts for the respective wheel rims.

Jacking positions

The jacking positions shown refer to the use of lifting arms and accessory jacks used for changing winter / summer tyres.



The rear arm position of the lifting platform is centrally under the relevant vehicle jacking point.



The front arm position of the lifting platform is centrally under the relevant vehicle jacking point.

Spare wheel

The spare wheel can be classified as a temporary spare wheel depending on the size compared to the other mounted wheels and country regulations. In this case a permissible maximum speed applies, even though no label at the spare wheel indicates this.

If there is a label on the spare wheel, the permissible speed still depends on the country regulations.

Only mount one temporary spare wheel. Take curves slowly. Do not use for a long period of time.

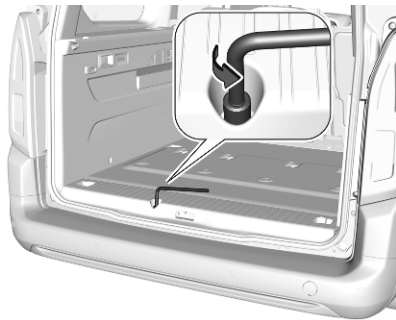
Caution

The use of a spare wheel that is smaller than the other wheels or in combination with winter tyres could affect driveability. Have the defective tyre replaced as soon as possible.

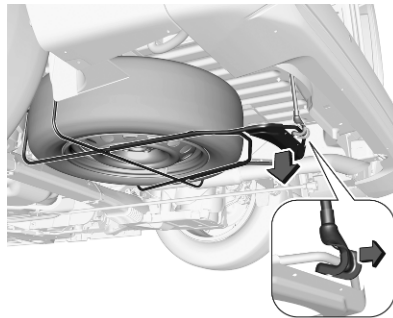
The spare wheel is located in a holder beneath the vehicle floor.

Vehicle tools ⇨ 321.

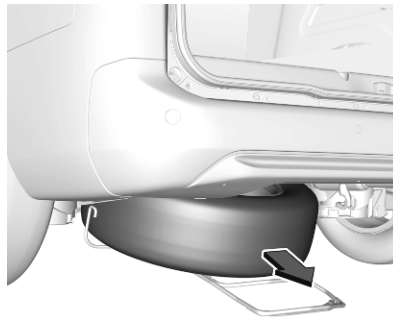
1. Depending on the version, open the tailgate or the rear doors ⇨ 16, ⇨ 18.



2. Fit the wheel wrench on one hexagon bolt. Turn it anticlockwise until the spare wheel holder is low enough allow the catch to be unhooked.



3. Lift the spare wheel holder and unhook the catch.
Lower the spare wheel holder.



4. Remove the spare wheel.

5. Change the wheel.
6. Position the damaged wheel with the outside down in the spare wheel holder.
7. Lift the spare wheel holder and engage in the catch. The open side of the catch must point in the direction of travel.
8. Close the spare wheel holder by turning the hexagon bolt clockwise using the wheel wrench.
9. Stow wheel wrench in the storage.
10. Close the tailgate or the rear doors.

Only mount one temporary spare wheel. The permissible maximum speed on the label on the temporary spare wheel is only valid for the factory-fitted tyre size.

Fitting the spare wheel

Make the following preparations and observe the following information:

- Park the vehicle on a level, firm and non-skid surface. The front wheels must be in the straight-ahead position.

- Apply the parking brake and engage first gear, reverse gear or **P**.
- Place a chock under the wheel diagonally opposite the wheel to be changed.
- Remove the spare wheel.
- Never change more than one wheel at once.
- Use the jack only to change wheels in case of puncture, not for seasonal winter or summer tyre change.
- The jack is maintenance-free.
- If the ground on which the vehicle is standing is soft, a solid board (approx. 1 cm thick) should be placed under the jack.
- Take heavy objects out of the vehicle before jacking up.
- No people or animals may be in the vehicle when it is jacked-up.
- Never crawl under a jacked-up vehicle.
- Do not start the vehicle when it is raised on the jack.

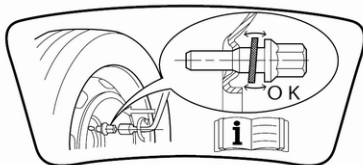
- Before screwing in the wheel bolts, clean them.

⚠ Warning

Do not grease wheel bolts.

⚠ Warning

Ensure to use always the correct wheel bolts if changing the wheels. When installing the spare wheel for temporary usage, the bolts for alloy wheel rims can also be used.



- Note that the spare wheel is secured by the conical contact of each bolt if the wheel bolts for the alloy wheel rims are used. In this case, the washers do not come into contact with the spare wheel.

1. Disengage wheel bolt caps with the wheel bolt cover remover. Steel wheel rims with cover: Pull off the wheel cover.



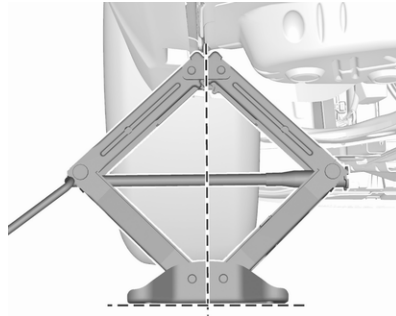
2. Attach the wheel wrench and loosen each wheel bolt by half a turn.

The wheels might be protected by locking wheel nuts. To loosen these specific nuts first attach the

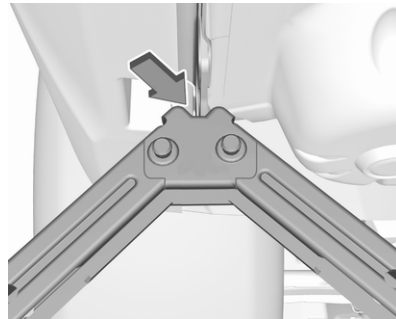
adapter onto the head of the nut before installing the wheel wrench. The adapter is located in the tool box.



3. Ensure the jack is correctly positioned under the relevant vehicle jacking point.



4. Set the jack to the necessary height. Position it directly below the jacking point in a manner that prevents it from slipping.



Ensure that the edge of the body fits into the notch of the jack.



With the jack correctly aligned jack up until wheel is clear of the ground.

5. Unscrew the wheel nuts.
6. Change the wheel.
7. Screw on the wheel nuts.
8. Lower the vehicle and remove jack.
9. Install the wheel wrench ensuring that it is located securely and tighten each bolt in a crosswise sequence. Tightening torque is 115 Nm.

10. Align the valve hole in the wheel cover with the tyre valve before installing.
Install wheel nut caps.
11. Stow the replaced wheel, the vehicle tools and the adapter for the locking wheel nuts.
12. Check the tyre pressure of the installed tyre and the wheel nut torque as soon as possible.

Jump starting

Do not start with quick charger.

A vehicle with a discharged vehicle battery can be started using jump leads and the vehicle battery of another vehicle.

Caution

Never jump start another vehicle with an electric vehicle.

⚠ Warning

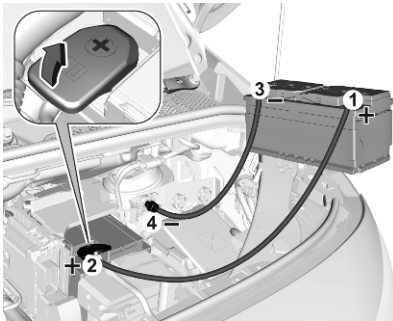
Be extremely careful when starting with jump leads. Any deviation from the following instructions can lead to injuries or damage caused by battery explosion or damage to the electrical systems of both vehicles.

⚠ Warning

Avoid contact of the battery with eyes, skin, fabrics and painted surfaces. The fluid contains sulphuric acid which can cause injuries and damage in the event of direct contact.

- Never expose the vehicle battery to naked flames or sparks.
- A discharged vehicle battery can already freeze at a temperature of 0 °C. Defrost the frozen battery before connecting jump leads.
- Wear eye protection and protective clothing when handling a battery.
- Use a booster battery with the same voltage (12 V). Its capacity (Ah) must not be much less than that of the discharged vehicle battery.
- Use jump leads with insulated terminals and a cross section of at least 16 mm² (25 mm² for diesel engines).

- Do not disconnect the discharged vehicle battery from the vehicle.
- Switch off all unnecessary electrical consumers.
- Do not lean over the vehicle battery during jump starting.
- Do not allow the terminals of one lead to touch those of the other lead.
- The vehicles must not come into contact with each other during the jump starting process.
- Apply the parking brake, transmission in neutral, automatic transmission in **P**.



Open the positive terminal protection caps of both vehicle batteries.

Lead connection order:

1. Connect the red lead to the positive terminal of the booster battery.
2. Connect the other end of the red lead to the positive terminal of the discharged battery.
3. Connect the black lead to the negative terminal of the booster battery.
4. Connect the other end of the black lead to a vehicle grounding point of your vehicle in the engine compartment.

Route the leads so that they cannot catch on rotating parts in the engine compartment.

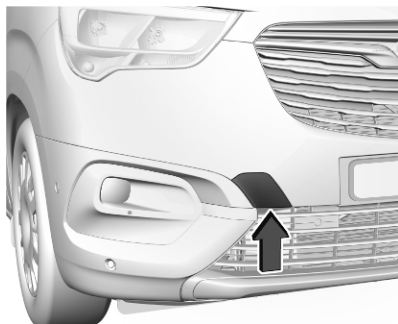
To start the engine:

1. Start the engine of the vehicle providing the jump.
2. After five minutes, start the other engine. Start attempts should be made for no longer than 15 s at an interval of 1 min.

3. Allow both engines to idle for approx. three minutes with the leads connected.
4. Switch on electrical consumers e.g. headlights, heated rear window of the vehicle receiving the jump start.
5. Reverse above sequence exactly when removing leads.

Towing

Towing the vehicle



Wrap a cloth around the tip of a flat screwdriver to prevent paint damage. Insert the screwdriver in the slot at the lower part of the cap. Release the cap carefully.

The towing eye is stowed with the vehicle tools ⇨ 321.



Screw in the towing eye as far as it will go until it stops in a horizontal position.

Attach a tow rope – or better still a tow rod – to the towing eye.

The towing eye must only be used for towing and not for recovering the vehicle.

Switch on ignition to release steering wheel lock and to permit operation of brake lights, horn and windscreen wiper.

Caution

Deactivate the driver assistance systems like active emergency braking ⇨ 258, otherwise the vehicle may automatically brake during towing.

Switch the selector lever to neutral.
Release the parking brake.

Caution

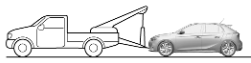
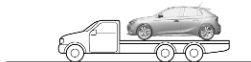
Never tow a vehicle equipped with All Wheel Drive (AWD) with the front or rear tyres on the road. If you tow a vehicle equipped with AWD while the front or rear tyres are rolling on the road, the drive system in the vehicle could be severely damaged. When towing vehicles equipped with AWD, all four tyres must not be in contact with the road.

Caution

Drive slowly. Do not drive jerkily. Excessive tractive force can damage the vehicle.

When the engine is not running, considerably more force is needed to brake and steer.

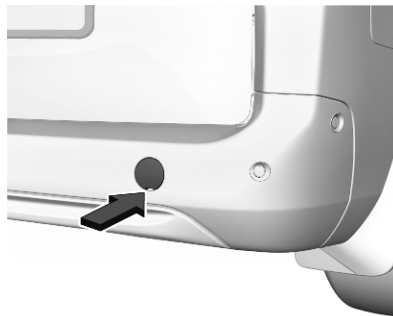
To prevent the entry of exhaust gases from the towing vehicle, switch on the air recirculation and close the windows.



When towing an electric vehicle or a vehicle equipped with an automatic transmission, transport the vehicle on a platform or tow it with the front wheels lifted.

Seek the assistance of a workshop. After towing, unscrew the towing eye. Insert cap with the flange into the recess and fix cap by pushing.

Towing another vehicle



Wrap a cloth around the tip of a flat screwdriver to prevent paint damage. Insert the screwdriver in the slot at the lower part of the cap. Release the cap carefully.

The towing eye is stowed with the vehicle tools ⇨ 321.



Screw in the towing eye as far as it will go until it stops in a horizontal position.

The lashing eye at the rear underneath the vehicle must never be used as a towing eye.

Attach a tow rope – or better still a tow rod – to the towing eye.

The towing eye must only be used for towing and not for recovering a vehicle.

Caution

Drive slowly. Do not drive jerkily. Excessive tractive force can damage the vehicle.

After towing, unscrew the towing eye. Insert cap with the upper flange into the recess and fix cap by pushing.

Appearance care

Exterior care

Locks

The locks are lubricated at the factory using a high quality lock cylinder grease. Use a de-icing agent only when absolutely necessary, as this has a degreasing effect and impairs lock function. After using a de-icing agent, have the locks regreased by a workshop.

Washing

The paintwork of your vehicle is exposed to environmental influences.

Bird droppings, dead insects, resin, pollen and the like should be cleaned off immediately, as they contain aggressive constituents which can cause paint damage.

If using a vehicle wash, comply with the vehicle wash manufacturer's instructions. The windscreen wiper and rear window wiper must be

switched off. Remove antenna and external accessories such as roof racks etc.

If you wash your vehicle by hand, make sure that the insides of the wheel housings are also thoroughly rinsed out.

Wax painted parts of the vehicle regularly.

Clean edges and folds on opened doors and the bonnet as well as the areas they cover.

Clean bright metal mouldings with a cleaning solution approved for aluminium to avoid damages.

Caution

Always use a cleaning agent with a pH value of 4 to 9.

Do not use cleaning agents on hot surfaces.

Do not clean the engine compartment with a steam-jet or high-pressure jet cleaner.

Thoroughly rinse and leather-off the vehicle. Rinse leather frequently. Use separate leathers for painted and glass surfaces: remnants of wax on the windows will impair vision.

Have the door hinges of all doors greased by a workshop.

Exterior lights

Headlight and other light covers are made of plastic. Do not use any abrasive or caustic agents, do not use an ice scraper, and do not clean them dry.

Polishing and waxing

Polishing is necessary only if the paint has become dull or if solid deposits have become attached to it.

Plastic body parts must not be treated with wax or polishing agents.

Windows and wiper blades

Switch off wipers before handling in their areas.

Use a soft lint-free cloth or chamois leather together with window cleaner and insect remover.

When cleaning the rear window from inside, always wipe in parallel to the heating element to prevent damage.

For mechanical removal of ice, use a sharp-edged ice scraper. Press the scraper firmly against the glass so that no dirt can get under it and scratch the glass.

Clean smearing wiper blades with a soft cloth and window cleaner. Also make sure to remove any residues such as wax, insect residues and similar from the window.

Ice residues, pollution and continuous wiping on dry windows will damage or even destroy the wiper blades.

Glass panel

Use a soft lint-free cloth or chamois leather together with window cleaner to clean the glass panel.

Wheels and tyres

Do not use high-pressure jet cleaners.

Clean rims with a pH-neutral wheel cleaner.

Rims are painted and can be treated with the same agents as the body.

Paintwork damage

Rectify minor paintwork damage with a touch-up pen before rust forms. Have more extensive damage or rust areas repaired by a workshop.

Underbody

Some areas of the vehicle underbody have a PVC undercoating while other critical areas have a durable protective wax coating.

After the underbody is washed, check the underbody and have it waxed if necessary.

Bitumen / rubber materials could damage the PVC coating. Have underbody work carried out by a workshop.

Before and after winter, wash the underbody and have the protective wax coating checked.

Liquid gas system

Danger

Liquid gas is heavier than air and can collect in sink points.

Take care when performing work at the underbody in a pit.

For painting work and when using a drying booth at a temperature above 60 °C, the liquid gas tank must be removed.

Do not make any modifications to the liquid gas system.

Towing equipment

Do not clean the coupling ball bar with a steam-jet or high-pressure jet cleaner.

Interior care

Interior and upholstery

Only clean the vehicle interior, including the instrument panel fascia and panelling, with a dry cloth or interior cleaner.

Clean the leather upholstery with clear water and a soft cloth. In case of heavy soiling, use leather care.

The instrument cluster and the displays should only be cleaned using a soft damp cloth. If necessary use a weak soap solution.

Clean fabric upholstery with a vacuum cleaner and brush. Remove stains with an upholstery cleaner.

Clothing fabrics may not be colourfast. This could cause visible discolourations, especially on light-coloured upholstery. Removable stains and discolourations should be cleaned as soon as possible.

Clean seat belts with lukewarm water or interior cleaner.

Caution

Close Velcro fasteners as open Velcro fasteners on clothing could damage seat upholstery.

The same applies to clothing with sharp-edged objects, like zips or belts or studded jeans.

Plastic and rubber parts

Plastic and rubber parts can be cleaned with the same cleaner as used to clean the body. Use interior cleaner if necessary. Do not use any other agent. Avoid solvents and petrol in particular. Do not use high-pressure jet cleaners.

Floor mats

Warning

If a floor mat has the wrong size or is not properly installed, it can interfere with pedals, what can cause unintended acceleration or increased stopping distance which can cause a crash and injury.

Use the following guidelines for proper floor mat usage.

- The original equipment floor mats were designed for this vehicle. If the floor mats need to be replaced, it is recommended to buy certified floor mats which fit properly and are fixed by the

retainers on the driver side.
Always check that the floor mats do not interfere with the pedals.

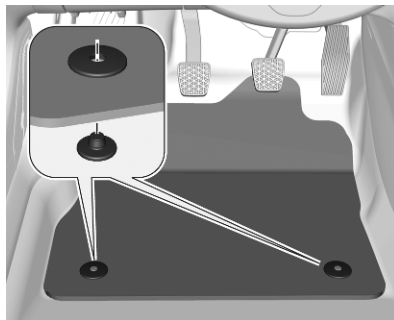
- Use the floor mat with the correct side up. Do not turn it over.
- Do not place anything on top of the driver side floor mat.
- Use only a single floor mat on the driver side.

Inserting and removing the floor mats

The driver side floor mat is held in place by two retainers.

To install the floor mat:

1. Move the seat backwards as far as possible.



2. Align slots in the mat with the retainers, as shown.
3. Push the mat to the floor.

Removing

1. Move the seat backwards as far as possible.
2. Remove the mat.

Service and maintenance

General information	342
Service information	342
Recommended fluids, lubricants and parts	345
Recommended fluids and lubricants	345

General information

Service information

In order to ensure economical and safe vehicle operation and to maintain the value of your vehicle, it is of vital importance that all maintenance work is carried out at the proper intervals as specified.

The detailed, up-to-date service schedule for your vehicle is available at the workshop.

Severe operating conditions exist if one or more of the following circumstances occur frequently: Cold starting, stop and go operation, e.g. for taxis and police vehicles, trailer operation, mountain driving, driving on poor and sandy road surfaces, increased air pollution, presence of airborne sand and high dust content, driving at high altitude and large variations of temperature.

Under these severe operating conditions, certain service work may be required more frequently than the regular service interval indicated in

the service display. Contact a workshop for customised service schedules.

Service display ⇨ 89.

Service intervals – Combo Life

Engine code	EB2ADT	DV5RC DV5RCf DV5RD DV5RE	DV6D	Electric vehicle
Country group 1	12,000 miles / 1 year	19,000 miles / 1 year ¹⁾		25000 miles / 2 years ²⁾

1) Unless otherwise indicated in the service display.

2) Initial service interval is 12,500 miles / 1year

Service intervals – Combo Cargo

Engine code	EB2ADT EB2ADTS	DV5RC DV5RD DV5RE	DV6FE DV6FD	DV6D	Electric vehicle
Country group 1	12,000 miles / 1 year	25,000 miles / 2 years	16,000 miles / 1 year		25,000 miles / 2 years ²⁾

2) Initial service interval is 12,500 miles / 1year

Country Group 1:

Andorra, Austria, Belgium, Cyprus, Denmark, Finland, France, Germany, Greece, Iceland, Italy, Liechtenstein, Luxembourg, Malta, Monaco, Netherlands, Norway, Portugal, Republic of Ireland, San Marino, Spain, Sweden, Switzerland, United Kingdom.

Country Group 2:

Bosnia-Herzegovina, Bulgaria, Croatia, Czech Republic, Estonia, Hungary, Latvia, Lithuania, North Macedonia, Poland, Romania, Slovakia, Slovenia.

Country Group 3:

Albania, Kosovo, Montenegro, New Zealand, Serbia.

Country Group 4:

Israel, Lesotho, South Africa, Swaziland, Turkey.

Country Group 5:

Russia.

Country Group 6:

All other countries which are not listed in the previous country groups.

Confirmations

Confirmation of service is recorded in the Service and warranty booklet. The date and mileage is completed with the stamp and signature of the servicing workshop.

Make sure that the Service and warranty booklet is completed correctly as continuous proof of service is essential if any warranty or goodwill claims are to be met, and is also a benefit when selling the vehicle.

Recommended fluids, lubricants and parts

Recommended fluids and lubricants

Only use products that meet the recommended specifications.

Warning

Operating materials are hazardous and could be poisonous. Handle with care. Pay attention to information given on the containers.

Engine oil

Engine oil is identified by its quality and its viscosity. Quality is more important than viscosity when selecting which engine oil to use. The engine oil quality ensures e.g. engine cleanliness, wear protection and engine oil aging control, whereas viscosity grade gives information on the engine oil's thickness over a temperature range.

Select the appropriate engine oil based on its quality and on the minimum ambient temperature ⇨ 349.

Topping up engine oil

Caution

In case of any spilled engine oil, wipe it up and dispose of it properly.

Engine oils of different manufacturers and brands can be mixed as long as they comply with the required engine oil quality and viscosity.

Select the appropriate engine oil based on its quality and on the minimum ambient temperature ⇨ 349.

Additional engine oil additives

The use of additional engine oil additives could cause damage and invalidate the warranty.

Engine oil viscosity grades

The SAE viscosity grade gives information of the thickness of the engine oil.

Multigrade engine oil is indicated by two figures, e.g. SAE 5W-30. The first figure, followed by a W, indicates the low temperature viscosity and the second figure the high temperature viscosity.

Select the appropriate viscosity grade depending on the minimum ambient temperature ⇨ 349.

All of the recommended viscosity grades are suitable for high ambient temperatures.

Coolant and antifreeze

Use only antifreeze approved for the vehicle. Consult a workshop.

The system is factory filled with coolant designed for excellent corrosion protection and frost protection down to approx. -37 °C. This concentration should be maintained all year round. The use of additional coolant additives that

intend to give additional corrosion protection or seal against minor leaks can cause function problems. Liability for consequences resulting from the use of additional coolant additives will be rejected.

Washer fluid

Use only washer fluid approved for the vehicle to prevent damage of wiper blades, paintwork, plastic and rubber parts. Consult a workshop.

Brake fluid

Over time, brake fluid absorbs moisture which will reduce braking effectiveness. The brake fluid should therefore be replaced at the specified interval.

AdBlue

Only use AdBlue to reduce the nitrogen oxides in the exhaust emission ↪ 227.

Technical data

Vehicle identification	347
Vehicle identification number ..	347
Identification plate	347
Engine identification	348
Vehicle data	349
Recommended fluids and lubricants	349
Engine data	350
Vehicle dimensions	352
Capacities	353
Tyre pressures	354

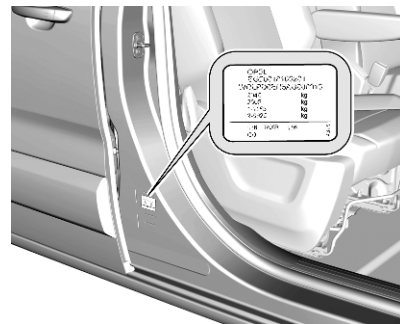
Vehicle identification

Vehicle identification number

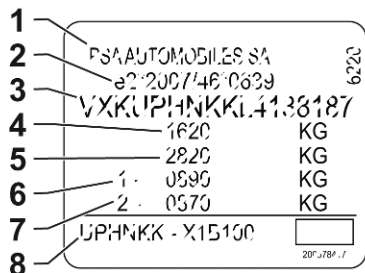


The Vehicle Identification Number may be embossed on the instrument panel, visible through the windscreen.

Identification plate



The identification plate is located on the front left or right door frame. The layout and position differ for some export countries.



Information on identification label:

- 1 : manufacturer
- 2 : type approval number
- 3 : vehicle identification number
- 4 : permissible gross vehicle weight rating in kg
- 5 : permissible gross train weight in kg
- 6 : maximum permissible front axle load in kg
- 7 : maximum permissible rear axle load in kg
- 8 : manufacturer address, vehicle-specific or country-specific data

The combined total of front and rear axle loads must not exceed the permissible gross vehicle weight.

Vehicle's kerb weight depends on the specification of the vehicle, e.g. optional equipment and accessories. Refer to the EEC Certificate of Conformity provided with your vehicle or other national registration documents.

The technical data is determined in accordance with European Community standards. We reserve the right to make modifications. Specifications in the vehicle documents always have priority over those given in this manual.

Engine identification

The technical data tables show the engine identifier code.

Engine data ↷ 350.

To identify the respective engine, refer to the engine power in the EEC Certificate of Conformity provided with your vehicle or other national registration documents.

Vehicle data

Recommended fluids and lubricants

Required engine oil quality

Country groups ⇨ 342

Countries included in country groups 1 to 3 and 5

	EB2ADT	
	EB2ADTS	EC5F
	DV5RC	DV6D
	DV5RCf	DV6DR
	DV5RD	DV6FD
	DV5RE	DV6FE
Vauxhall Original engine oil	B71 2010 / B71 2312	B71 2312

Engine EC5F: B71 2290, B71 2296 or B71 300 may also be used.

Engine oil viscosity grades

	B71 2010	B71 2312	B71 2302	B71 2297
Engine oil viscosity grade	SAE 0W-20	SAE 0W-30	SAE 0W-30	SAE 5W-30

Engine data

	D12XHL F12XHL	F12XHT	Z16XU	D15DTL	D15DT
Engine identifier code					
Sales designation	1.2 Turbo	1.2	1.6	1.5 Turbo	1.5 Turbo
Engineering code	EB2ADT	EB2ADTS	EC5F	DV5RE	DV5RD
Piston displacement [cm ³]	1199	1199	1587	1499	1499
Engine power [kW]	81	96	85	56	75
at rpm	5500	5500	5750	3500	3500
Torque [Nm]	205	230	150	230	250
at rpm	1750	1750	4000	1750	1750
Fuel type	Petrol	Petrol	Petrol	Diesel	Diesel
Octane rating RON ¹⁾²⁾					
recommended	95	95	95	-	-
possible	98	-	-	-	-

1) A country specific label at the fuel filler flap can supersede the engine specific requirement.

2) In certain countries, the use of a particular fuel, e.g. a specific octane rating, may be required to ensure proper engine operation.

Engine identifier code	F15DT	D15DTH	B16DTL	A16DT	B16DT	Electric vehicle
Sales designation	1.5 Turbo	1.5 Turbo	1.6 Turbo	1.6 Turbo	1.6 Turbo	–
Engineering code	DV5RCf	DV5RC	DV6FE	DV6D DV6DR	DV6FD	–
Piston displacement [cm ³]	1499	1499	1560	1560	1560	–
Engine power [kW]	75	96	55	68	74	100
at rpm	3750	3750	3500	4000	3750	–
Torque [Nm]	240	300	210	230	255	260
at rpm	1750	1750	1750	1750	1750	–
Fuel type	Diesel	Diesel	Diesel	Diesel	Diesel	–

Vehicle dimensions

Size	L1	L2
Length [mm]	4403	4753
Width without exterior mirrors [mm]	1848	1848
Width with exterior mirrors [mm]	2107	2107
Combo LIFE Height without roof railing [mm]	1800 - 1807	1812 - 1818
Combo LIFE Height with roof railing [mm]	1837 - 1844	1843 - 1849
Combo-e LIFE Height with roof railing [mm]	1841	1880
Combo Height without roof railing [mm]	1796 - 1851	1815 - 1821
Combo Height with roof railing [mm]	1797 - 1998	1845 - 1857
Combo-e Height with roof railing [mm]	1796 - 1860	1812 - 1860
Wheelbase [mm]	2785	2975 / 2977
Turning circle diameter [m]	10.8 / 11	11.5 / 11.8

Capacities

Engine oil

Engine	DV5RC DV5RCf DV5RD DV5RE	EB2ADT EB2ADTS	DV6D DV6FE DV6FD	EC5F
including filter [l]	3.95 ³⁾ 5.3 ⁴⁾	3.5	3.75	3.25
between MIN and MAX [l]	1	1		1.5

3) Combo LIFE

4) Combo

Fuel tank

Petrol / diesel, refilling quantity [l] 60 / 50

AdBlue tank

AdBlue, refilling quantity [l] 17

Tyre pressures**Combo CARGO**

Payload 650 kg

Tyres	Vehicle with up to 3 people		With full load	
	front [kPa/bar] ([psi])	rear [kPa/bar] ([psi])	front [kPa/bar] ([psi])	rear [kPa/bar] ([psi])
195/65 R16	260/2,6 (38)	290/2,9 (42)	260/2,6 (38)	320/3,2 (46)
205/60 R16	250/2,5 (36)	250/2,5 (36)	250/2,5 (36)	320/3,2 (46)
215/65 R16	260/2,6 (38)	280/2,8 (41)	260/2,6 (38)	300/3,0 (44)

Payload 1000 kg

Tyres	Vehicle with up to 3 people		With full load	
	front	rear	front	rear
	[kPa/bar] ([psi])	[kPa/bar] ([psi])	[kPa/bar] ([psi])	[kPa/bar] ([psi])
205/60 R16	250/2,5 (36)	290/2,9 (42)	250/2,5 (36)	290/2,9 (42)
215/65 R16	260/2,6 (38)	280/2,8 (41)	260/2,6 (38)	300/3,0 (44)

Combo LIFE

Tyres	Vehicle with up to 3 people		With full load	
	front	rear	front	rear
	[kPa/bar] ([psi])	[kPa/bar] ([psi])	[kPa/bar] ([psi])	[kPa/bar] ([psi])
195/65 R16	260/2,6 (38)	290/2,9 (42)	260/2,6 (38)	320/3,2 (46)
205/60 R16	240/2,4 (35)	240/2,4 (35)	260/2,6 (38)	320/3,2 (46)
205/60 R17	250/2,5 (36)	250/2,5 (36)	260/2,6 (38)	320/3,2 (46)

Customer information

Customer information	356
Declaration of conformity	356
REACH	357
Software update	357
Registered trademarks	359
Vehicle data recording and privacy	359
Emergency call data recording and privacy	359
Event data recorders	360
Radio Frequency Identification (RFID)	363

Customer information

Declaration of conformity

Radio transmission systems

This vehicle has systems that transmit and / or receive radio waves subject to Directive 2014/53/EU and The Radio Equipment Regulations 2017 by the United Kingdom. The manufacturers of the systems listed below declare conformity with Directive 2014/53/EU and The Radio Equipment Regulations 2017. The full text of the EU declaration of conformity for each system is available at the following internet address: www.opel.com/conformity.

Importer is Vauxhall Motors Limited, MP UK 1-101-135, Chalton House, Luton Road, Chalton, Luton, Bedfordshire, LU4 9TT, United Kingdom.

**Infotainment system
Multimedia Navi Pro**
Continental

LCIE Bureau Veritas-Site de Fontenay aux Roses, 33 avenue du général Leclerc, 92260 Fontenay aux Roses, France

Operation frequency (MHz)	Maximum output (dBm)
2400.0 - 2483.5	2.2
2400.0 - 2483.5	15

Infotainment system Radio

Clarion

244 rue du Pré à Varois, 54670 Custines, France

Operation frequency:
2400 - 2480 MHz

Maximum output: 4 dBm

Infotainment system Multimedia

Robert Bosch Car Multimedia GmbH
Robert-Bosch-Straße 200, 31139 Hildesheim, Germany

Operation frequency (MHz)	Maximum output (dBm)
2402.0 - 2480.0	17
2412.0 - 2472.0	4.15

Antenna module

Yokowo Manufacturing of America, LLC

28221 Beck Road, Unit A-21

Wixom, MI 48394, USA

Operation frequency: N/A

Maximum output: N/A

ASK Automotive Pvt. Ltd.

Unit 2 Plot No. 30-31, Fathepur-Nawada, Manesar, Gurugram, Haryana 122050, India

Operation frequency: N/A

Maximum output: N/A

Radio remote control transmitter

Hülsbeck & Fürst GmbH & Co. KG
Steeger Straße 17

42551 Velbert, Germany

Operation frequency: 433.92 MHz

Maximum output: 10 dBm

Radio remote control receiver

Delphi European, Middle Eastern & African Regional Offices Customer Technology

Center Avenue de Luxembourg, L-4940 Bascharage, G.D. of Luxembourg

Operation frequency: 119 - 128.6

Maximum output:
16 dB μ A/m @ 10 m

Electronic key transmitter

Valeo

43 Rue Bayen, 75017 Paris, France

Operation frequency: 433.92 MHz

Maximum output: 10 dBm

Immobiliser

KOSTAL of America, Inc.

350 Stephenson Hwy, Troy MI 48083, USA

Operation frequency: 125 kHz

Maximum output: 5 dB μ A/m at 10 m

ICASA type approval numbers

List of all Independent Communications Authority of South Africa (ICASA) type approval numbers:

TA-2016/121, TA-2016/3261, TA-2017/2387, TA-2017/2745, TA-2013/430, TA-2017/1106, TA-2016/929, TA-2017/3180

REACH

Registration, Evaluation, Authorisation and Restriction of Chemicals (REACH) is a European Union regulation adopted to improve the protection of human health and the environment from the risks that can be posed by chemicals. Visit www.opel.com for further information and for access to the Article 33 communication.

Software update

The Infotainment system can download and install selected software updates over a wireless connection.

Notice

The availability of these over-the-air vehicle software updates varies by vehicle and country. Find more information on our website.

Remote device management and remote software and firmware updates

As an integral part of the service related to the performance of subscribed connected service contracts, necessary device management and necessary software and firmware updates related to the software and firmware for the named connected service will be performed remotely, in particular by using over-the-air technology.

For this, a secure radio network connection between the vehicle and the device management server will be established when ignition is switched on and a mobile network is available. Depending on the equipment of the vehicle, connection configuration must be set to **Connected vehicle** to allow the establishment of the radio network connection.

Irrespective of a valid connected service subscription, remote product security or product safety related device management and software and firmware updates will be performed when the processing is necessary for the compliance with a legal obligation to which the manufacturer is subject (e.g. applicable product liability law, emergency call regulation) or when the processing is necessary in order to protect the vital interests of the respective vehicle users and passengers.

The establishment of a secure radio network connection and the related remote updates are not affected by privacy settings and will be performed in principal after an initiation by the vehicle user following a respective notification.

The system is able to notify receipt of an update as soon as it is connected to an exterior Wi-Fi network or a mobile network. Large updates are downloaded only via the Wi-Fi network.

The availability of an update is notified on the Info Display at the end of a trip with an option of immediate installation or postponement of installation.

The installation time is variable and can take several minutes with a maximum of about 30 minutes. A notification will give an estimate of the duration and a description of the update.

Updates can be checked manually via the Info Display. Follow the on-screen prompts in the respective menu.

Info Display ⇨ 102.

Notice

Steps for downloading and installing updates may vary by vehicle.

For safety reasons and because it requires sustained attention by the driver, the installation must be carried out with the ignition on without starting the engine. The installation cannot be carried out in the following cases:

- engine running
- emergency call in progress

- insufficient vehicle battery charge
- charging the vehicle's high voltage battery

Notice

During the installation process, the vehicle may not be operational.

If the update has failed, seek the assistance of a workshop.

Registered trademarks

Apple Inc.

Apple CarPlay™ is a trademark of Apple Inc.

App Store® and iTunes Store® are registered trademarks of Apple Inc.

iPhone®, iPod®, iPod touch®, iPod nano®, iPad® and Siri® are registered trademarks of Apple Inc.

Bluetooth SIG, Inc.

Bluetooth® is a registered trademark of Bluetooth SIG, Inc.

DivX, LLC

DivX® and DivX Certified® are registered trademarks of DivX, LLC.

Google Inc.

Android™ and Google Play™ Store are trademarks of Google Inc.

Verband der Automobilindustrie e.V.
AdBlue® is a registered trademark of the VDA.

Vehicle data recording and privacy

Emergency call data recording and privacy

Data processing

All processing of personal information by the emergency call function complies with the framework for protection of personal information established by regulation 2016/679 (GDPR) and directive 2002/58/EC of the European Parliament and the Council, and in particular, seeks to protect the vital interests of the data subject, in accordance with article 6.1, paragraph d) of regulation 2016/679.

The processing of personal information is strictly limited to the requirements of the emergency call function used with the European emergency call number.

The emergency call function is only able to collect and process the following data relating to the vehicle: chassis number, type (passenger

vehicle or light commercial vehicle), fuel type or power source, three most recent locations and direction of travel, number of passengers and a timestamped log file recording technical data related to the system's operation.

The recipients of the processed data are the emergency call handling centres designated by the relevant national authorities in the territory in which they are located, enabling priority routing and handling of calls to the emergency number.

Data storage

Data contained in the system's memory is not accessible from outside the system until a call is made. The system is not traceable and is not continuously monitored in its normal operation mode.

The data in the system's internal memory is automatically and continuously erased. Only the vehicle's three most recent locations, necessary for the normal functioning of the system, are stored.

When an emergency call is triggered, the data log is stored for no more than 13 hours.

Access to data

You have the right to access the data and, if necessary, submit a request to rectify, erase or restrict the processing of any personal information not processed in accordance with the provisions of Regulation 2016/679 (GDPR). Third parties to which data has been communicated shall be notified of any rectification, erasure or restriction carried out in accordance with the aforementioned directive, unless doing so would be impossible or require a disproportionate effort.

You also have the right to lodge a complaint with the relevant data protection authority.

If you want to claim your above-mentioned rights please contact us per email at privacyrights@mpsa.com.

For more information regarding our contact details please take a look at our Privacy & Cookies Policy on our website.

Event data recorders

Electronic control units are installed in your vehicle. Control units process data which is received by vehicle sensors and other components, or which they generate themselves or exchange amongst themselves. Some control units are necessary for the safe functioning of your vehicle, others assist you while you drive (driver assistance systems), while others provide comfort or infotainment functions.

The following contains general information about data processing in the vehicle. You will find additional information as to which specific data is uploaded, stored and passed on to third parties and for what purpose in your vehicle under the key word Data Protection closely linked to the references for the affected functional characteristics in the relevant

Owner's Manual or in the general terms of sale. These are also available online.

Operating data in the vehicle

Control units process data for operation of the vehicle.

This data includes, e.g.:

- vehicle status information (e.g. speed, movement delay, lateral acceleration, wheel rotation rate, "seat belts fastened" display)
- ambient conditions (e.g. temperature, rain sensor, distance sensor)

As a rule such data is transient, not stored for longer than an operational cycle, and only processed on board the vehicle itself. Control units often include data storage (including the vehicle key). This is used to allow information to be documented temporarily or permanently on vehicle condition, component stress, maintenance requirements and technical events and errors.

Depending on technical equipment level, the data stored is as follows:

- system component operating states (e.g. fill level, tyre pressure, battery status)
- faults and defects in important system components (e.g. lights, brakes)
- system reactions in special driving situations (e.g. triggering of an airbag, actuation of the stability control systems)
- information on events damaging the vehicle
- for electric vehicles the amount of charge in the high-voltage battery, estimated range

In special cases (e.g. if the vehicle has detected a malfunction), it may be necessary to save data that would otherwise just be volatile.

When you use services (e.g. repairs, maintenance), the operating data saved can be read together with the vehicle identification number and used when necessary. Staff working for the service network (e.g. garages, manufacturers) or third parties (e.g.

breakdown services) can read the data from the vehicle. The same applies to warranty work and quality assurance measures.

Data is generally read via the OBD (On-Board Diagnostics) port prescribed by law in the vehicle. The operating data which is read out, documents the technical condition of the vehicle or individual components and assists with fault diagnosis, compliance with warranty obligations and quality improvement. This data, in particular information on component stress, technical events, operator errors and other faults, is transmitted to the manufacturer where appropriate, together with the vehicle identification number. The manufacturer is also subject to product liability. The manufacturer potentially also uses operating data from vehicles for product recalls. This data can also be used to check customer warranty and guarantee claims.

Fault memories in the vehicle can be reset by a service company when carrying out servicing or repairs or at your request.

Comfort and infotainment functions

Comfort settings and custom settings can be stored in the vehicle and changed or reset at any time.

Depending on the equipment level in question, these include

- seat and steering wheel position settings
- chassis and air conditioning settings
- custom settings such as interior lighting

You can input your own data in the infotainment functions for your vehicle as part of the selected features.

Depending on the equipment level in question, these include

- multimedia data such as music, videos or photos for playback in an integrated multimedia system
- address book data for use with an integrated hands-free system or an integrated navigation system

- input destinations
- data on the use of online services

This data for comfort and infotainment functions can be stored locally in the vehicle or be kept on a device that you have connected to the vehicle (e.g. a smartphone, USB stick or MP3 player). Data that you have input yourself can be deleted at any time.

This data can only be transmitted out of the vehicle at your request, particularly when using online services in accordance with the settings selected by you.

Smartphone integration, e.g. Android Auto or Apple CarPlay

If your vehicle is equipped accordingly, you can connect your smartphone or another mobile device to the vehicle so that you can control it via the controls integrated in the vehicle. The smartphone image and sound can be output via the multimedia system in this case. At the same time, specific information is transmitted to your smartphone. Depending on the type of integration,

this includes data such as position data, day / night mode and other general vehicle information. For more information, please see the operating instructions for the vehicle / infotainment system.

Integration allows selected smartphone apps to be used, such as navigation or music playback. No further integration is possible between smartphone and vehicle, in particular active access to vehicle data. The nature of further data processing is determined by the provider of the app used. Whether you can define settings, and if so which ones, is dependent on the app in question and your smartphone's operating system.

Online services

If your vehicle has a radio network connection, this allows data to be exchanged between your vehicle and other systems. The radio network connection is made possible by means of a transmitter device in your vehicle or a mobile device provided by you (e.g. a smartphone). Online functions can be used via this radio network connection. These include online services and applications / apps provided to you by the manufacturer or other providers.

Proprietary services

In the case of the manufacturer's online services, the relevant functions are described by the manufacturer in an appropriate location (e.g. Owner's Manual, the manufacturer's website) and the associated data protection information is provided. Personal data may be used to provide online services. Data exchange for this purpose takes place via a protected connection, e.g. using the manufacturer's IT systems provided for the purpose. Collection,

processing and use of personal data for the purposes of preparation of services take place solely on the basis of legal permission, e.g. in the case of a legally prescribed emergency communication system or a contractual agreement, or by virtue of consent.

You can activate or deactivate the services and functions (which are subject to charges to some extent) and, in some cases, the vehicle's entire radio network connection. This does not include statutory functions and services such as an emergency communication system.

Third party services

If you make use of online services from other providers (third parties), these services are subject to the liability and data protection and usage conditions of the provider in question. The manufacturer frequently has no influence over the content exchanged in this regard.

Therefore, please note the nature, scope and purpose of the collection and use of personal data within the scope of third party services provided by the service provider in question.

Radio Frequency Identification (RFID)

RFID technology is used in some vehicles for functions such as tyre pressure monitoring and immobiliser. It is also used in connection with conveniences such as radio remote controls for door locking / unlocking and starting. RFID technology in Vauxhall vehicles does not use or record personal information or link with any other Vauxhall system containing personal information.

Index

A

Accessories and vehicle modifications 301
 Active emergency braking.... 99, 258
 Adaptive cruise control..... 98, 251
 AdBlue..... 96, 227
 Adjustable air vents 214
 Advanced parking assist..... 267
 Airbag and belt tensioners 92
 Airbag deactivation 49, 93
 Airbag label..... 44
 Airbag system 44
 Air conditioning regular operation 216
 Air conditioning system 204
 Air intake 215
 Air vents..... 214
 Antilock brake system 238
 Antilock brake system (ABS) 95
 Anti-theft alarm system 20
 Anti-theft locking system 20
 Appearance care..... 338
 Armrest..... 36
 Ashtrays 85
 Audio..... 131, 165, 181, 194
 Automatic anti-dazzle 25
 Automatic crash notification..... 108
 Automatic light control 111
 Automatic locking 14

Automatic transmission 233
 Autostop..... 97, 222

B

Battery discharge protection 118
 BlueInjection..... 227
 Bluetooth audio streaming. 134,
 168, 181, 196
 Bluetooth connection. 150, 172,
 183, 198
 Bonnet 305
 Brake and clutch system 94
 Brake assist 241
 Brake fluid 308, 345
 Brakes 238, 308
 Breakdown..... 336
 Bulb replacement 313

C

Capacities 353
 Cargo management system 66
 Car wash mode..... 230
 Catalytic converter 226
 Central locking system 10
 Centre console lighting 117
 Centre console storage 61
 Changing tyre and wheel size ... 325
 Charging..... 287
 Charging cable..... 285
 Charging cable connected..... 97
 Charging status..... 291

Charging system	93
Charging types.....	284
Child locks	14
Child restraint installation locations	54
Child restraints.....	50
Child restraint systems	50
Child surveillance mirror.....	25
Cigarette lighter	85
Climate control systems.....	203
Clock.....	83
Control indicators.....	90
Control of the vehicle	218
Controls.....	79
Convex shape	23
Coolant and antifreeze.....	345
Cruise control	98, 246
Cupholders	57
Curtain airbag system	48
D	
DAB.....	131, 165, 194
Danger, Warnings and Cautions ...	4
Daytime running lights	113
Declaration of conformity.....	356
DEF.....	227
Deflation detection system.....	96
Descent control system	95, 243
Diesel exhaust fluid.....	227
Diesel fuel system bleeding	312

Door open	99
Doors.....	15, 16, 18
Drive modes.....	237
Driver alert.....	282
Driver assistance systems.....	246
Driver Information Centre.....	99
Driving characteristics and towing tips	296
Driving hints.....	218

E

Electric adjustment	23
Electrical system.....	320
Electric drive unit	230
Electric parking brake.....	94, 238
Electric parking brake fault.....	94
Electronic climate control system	207
Electronic key system.....	8
Electronic Stability Control and Traction Control system....	95, 242
Emergency call.....	108
Emergency call data recording and privacy.....	359
End-of-life vehicle recovery	304
Engine coolant	307
Engine coolant temperature	96
Engine coolant temperature gauge	88
Engine data	350
Engine exhaust	226

Engine identification.....	348
Engine oil	306, 345, 349
Engine oil level monitor.....	88
Engine oil pressure	97
Entry lighting	117
Event data recorders.....	360
Exhaust filter.....	96, 226
Exit lighting	117
Exterior care	338
Exterior light	98
Exterior lighting.....	110
Exterior mirrors.....	23
External devices.....	134, 168, 196

F

First aid.....	72
First aid kit	72
Fixed air vents	215
Floor mats.....	340
Folding front passenger seat.....	34
Folding mirrors	24
Folding seats.....	37, 38
Footwell storage.....	61
Forward collision alert.....	257
Front airbag system	47
Front fog lights	98, 114, 315
Front passenger seat Table position.....	34
Front pedestrian protection.....	262
Front seats.....	32

Front storage.....	58
Front turn lights	316
Fuel.....	292
Fuel consumption - CO ₂ - Emissions	295
Fuel for diesel engines	293
Fuel for petrol engines	292
Fuel gauge	87
Fuses	320

G

Gauges.....	86
Gear shifting.....	95
General information.....	283, 296
Glass panel	30
Glovebox	57

H

Halogen headlights	313
Hand brake.....	238
Hazard warning flashers	113
Headlight flash	112
Headlight range adjustment	113
Headlights.....	110
Headlights when driving abroad	113
Head restraints	31
Head-up display.....	103
Heated mirrors	24
Heated rear window	29
Heated steering wheel	79
Heated windscreen.....	29

Heating	36
Heating and ventilation system	203
High beam	98, 111
High beam assist.....	98, 111
High voltage battery.....	304, 311
High voltage battery gauge.....	87
Hill start assist	241
Horn	80

I

Identification plate	347
Ignition switch positions	218
Immobiliser	23
Indicators.....	86
Inductive charging.....	84
Info Display.....	102
Installing seats.....	38
Instrument panel illumination control	115
Instrument panel overview	77
Interior care	340
Interior lighting.....	115
Interior lights	116, 320
Interior mirrors.....	25
Introduction	3

J

Jump starting	334
---------------------	-----

K

Keys	6
Keys, locks.....	6

L

Ladder flap.....	62
Lane keep assist.....	95, 280
Lashing eyes	65
LED headlights.....	98, 315
Lighting features.....	117
Light switch	110
Load compartment	18, 62
Load compartment cover	63
Load compartment grille.....	69
Loading.....	34, 37, 38
Loading information	73
Low beam.....	98
Low fuel	97

M

Malfunction indicator light	93
Manual anti-dazzle	25
Manual transmission	236
Misted light covers	115
Multimedia.....	107, 155
Multimedia Navi Pro.....	107, 119

N

Navigation.....	137
New vehicle running-in	218
Number plate light	320

- O**
- Object detection systems..... 263
 - Odometer 86
 - Oil, engine..... 345, 349
 - Outside temperature 82
 - Overhead console 59
 - Overload indicator..... 74, 95
 - Overrun cut-off 222
- P**
- Panoramic view system..... 273
 - Parking 225
 - Parking assist 263
 - Parking brake..... 94, 238
 - Parking heater..... 211
 - Parking lights 115
 - Particulate filter..... 226
 - Passenger side camera..... 272
 - Pedestrian safety alert..... 80
 - Pedestrian safety alert fault..... 98
 - Performing work 304
 - Peripheral lighting..... 118
 - Phone..... 150, 172, 183, 198
 - Phone projection..... 134, 168
 - Power button..... 219
 - Power indicator gauge..... 88
 - Power outlets 83
 - Power windows 27
 - Preheating 96
 - Programmable charging..... 290
- Propulsion types**..... 4
- Puncture**..... 330
- R**
- Radio..... 185
 - Radio Frequency Identification (RFID)..... 363
 - Radio remote control 7
 - Rain sensor..... 98
 - RDS..... 131, 165, 181, 194
 - REACH..... 357
 - Reading lights 116
 - Rear doors 16
 - Rear fog light 98, 114, 317
 - Rear view camera 276
 - Rear view display..... 26, 105
 - Rear windows 29
 - Rear window wiper and washer . . 82
 - Recommended fluids and lubricants 345, 349
 - Reduced engine power..... 97
 - Refuelling 294
 - Regenerative braking..... 241
 - Registered trademarks..... 359
 - Removing seats..... 38
 - Reversing lights 115
 - Ride control systems..... 242
 - Roadside assistance..... 108
 - Roller blinds 30
 - Roof..... 30
- Roof load**..... 73
- Roof rack** 72
- S**
- Safety net 67
 - Seat adjustment 33
 - Seat belt reminder 92
 - Seat belts 41
 - Seat folding 34
 - Seat heating..... 36
 - Seat position 32
 - Second row seats 37
 - Selective catalytic reduction..... 227
 - Selective ride control..... 244
 - Service 216, 342
 - Service display 89
 - Service information 342
 - Service vehicle soon 93
 - Side airbag system 48
 - Side blind spot alert..... 99, 270
 - Sidelights..... 110
 - Side turn lights 319
 - Sliding door 15
 - Sliding side door..... 15
 - Software update..... 357
 - SOS..... 108
 - Spare wheel 330
 - Speech recognition... 148, 170, 183, 198
 - Speed limiter..... 99, 248

Speedometer	86
Starting and operating.....	218
Starting the engine	220
Steering.....	218
Steering wheel adjustment	79
Steering wheel controls	79
Stop engine.....	94
Stop-start system.....	222
Storage.....	57
Storage compartments.....	57
Sunvisor lights	116
Sun visors	30
Symbols	4
System check.....	94

T

Tachometer	87
Tailgate.....	18
Tail lights	317
Temperature preconditioning.....	212
Third row seats	38
Three-point seat belt	42
Tools	321
Touchscreen Radio.....	177
Tow bar.....	296
Towing.....	296, 336
Towing another vehicle	337
Towing equipment	297
Towing the vehicle	336

Traffic Announcements.....	131, 165, 181, 194
Traffic sign assistant.....	278
Trailer coupling.....	296
Trailer stability assist	300
Trailer towing	296
Tread depth	324
Trip odometer	86
Turn lights	91, 114
Tyre chains	325
Tyre deflation detection system ..	323
Tyre designations	322
Tyre pressure	322
Tyre pressures	354
Tyre repair kit	326

U

Ultrasonic parking assist.....	263
Underseat storage	60
Upholstery.....	340
USB devices.....	134, 168, 181, 196
USB port.....	83
Using this manual	3

V

Vauxhall Connect.....	108
Vehicle battery	309
Vehicle checks.....	304
Vehicle data.....	349
Vehicle data recording and privacy.....	360

Vehicle dimensions	352
Vehicle identification number	347
Vehicle jack.....	321
Vehicle locator lighting.....	118
Vehicle messages	106
Vehicle personalisation	107
Vehicle ready.....	97
Vehicle security.....	20
Vehicle specific data	3
Vehicle storage.....	302
Vehicle tools.....	321
Ventilation.....	211

W

Warning chimes	106
Warning lights.....	86
Warning triangle	71
Washer fluid	308
Wheel changing	329
Wheel covers	325
Wheels and tyres	321
Windows.....	26
Windscreen.....	26
Windscreen wiper and washer	80
Winter tyres	321
Wiper blade replacement	312

Copyright by Vauxhall Motors Ltd.

The information contained in this publication is effective as of the date indicated below. Vauxhall Motors Ltd. reserves the right to make changes to the technical specifications, features and design of the vehicles relative to the information contained in this publication, as well as changes to the publication itself.

Edition: February 2023, Vauxhall Motors Ltd.

Printed on chlorine-free bleached paper.

ID-VCBEORIE2302-en

